UNDERSTANDING
AND USING

ENGLISH
GRAMMAR

Third Edition

Workbook

Betty Schrampfer Azar

Chief contributor: Rachel Spack Koch
Contributors: Susan Jamieson
Barbara Andrews
Jeanie Francis
Donald A. Azar

Longman
# CONTENTS

PREFACE ........................................................................................................... xi
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ......................................................................................... xiii

## Chapter 1  OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Verb tenses</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Verb tenses</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Spelling of -ing and -ed forms</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Chapter 2  PRESENT AND PAST, SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE

1. The simple present and the present progressive ............................................ 5
2. Stative vs. progressive verbs ........................................................................... 6
3. The simple present and the present progressive ............................................ 7
4. Pronunciation of -ed ...................................................................................... 8
5. Irregular verbs ................................................................................................ 9
6. Simple past of irregular verbs ....................................................................... 11
7. Simple past of irregular verbs ....................................................................... 12
8. Simple past of irregular verbs ....................................................................... 13
9. Simple past of irregular verbs ....................................................................... 14
10. Troublesome verbs: raise/rise, set/sit, lay/lie ............................................. 14
11. The simple past and the past progressive ................................................... 15
12. The simple past and the past progressive ................................................... 16
13. The simple past and the past progressive ................................................... 17

## Chapter 3  PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

1. The present perfect ....................................................................................... 18
2. Using since and for ....................................................................................... 19
3. The simple past and the present perfect ..................................................... 20
4. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive ............................ 20
5. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive ............................ 21
6. The simple past and the past perfect ........................................................... 22
7. The simple past and the past perfect ........................................................... 23
8. The present perfect progressive and the past perfect progressive .......... 25

## Chapter 4  FUTURE TIME

1. Will vs. be going to ....................................................................................... 26
2. Expressing the future in time clauses .......................................................... 27
3. Using the present progressive to express future time ............................... 29
4. Future progressive ....................................................................................... 29
5. The future perfect and the future perfect progressive ............................... 30
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 5</th>
<th>ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME AND SUMMARY OF VERB TENSES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRACTICE</td>
<td>PAGE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Adverb clauses of time ................................................................. 31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Adverb clauses of time ................................................................. 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time .............................................. 32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Verb tense review ........................................................................ 33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Verb tense review ........................................................................ 34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Verb tense review ........................................................................ 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Verb tense review ........................................................................ 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Test A: Verb tenses ................................................................. 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Test B: Verb tenses ................................................................. 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 6</th>
<th>SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Preview: subject–verb agreement ................................................... 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es ....................................... 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Basic subject–verb agreement ............................................................ 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Subject–verb agreement: using expressions of quantity ......................... 43</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Subject–verb agreement: using there + be and some irregularities ............ 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Subject–verb agreement ................................................................. 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 7</th>
<th>NOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Final -s/-es ................................................................. 46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Plural nouns ................................................................. 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Irregular foreign plurals ........................................................ 47</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Possessive nouns ............................................................... 48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Using apostrophes ................................................................. 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Using nouns as modifiers ......................................................... 49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Using nouns as modifiers ......................................................... 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Count and noncount nouns ........................................................ 51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Using articles ................................................................. 53</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Expressions of quantity ........................................................... 55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Using a few/few; a little/little .................................................. 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Using of in expressions of quantity ............................................. 56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Using one, each, every ............................................................ 58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 8</th>
<th>PRONOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Personal pronouns ................................................................. 59</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Pronoun agreement ................................................................. 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Reflexive pronouns ................................................................. 60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Pronoun agreement ................................................................. 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Forms of other ................................................................. 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Nouns and pronouns ............................................................... 64</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Test A: Nouns and pronouns ........................................................ 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Test B: Nouns and pronouns ........................................................ 67</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 9</th>
<th>MODALS, PART 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Verb forms with modal auxiliaries ................................................. 69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Making polite requests ............................................................... 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Using would you mind ............................................................... 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Must (not) and (do not) have to .................................................. 71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Verb form review: have to .......................................................... 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 10 MODALS, PART 2
1. Degrees of certainty: must and may/might/could .............................. 78
2. Forms of modals ........................................................................... 79
3. Making conclusions: must and must not ....................................... 80
4. Ability: can and could ................................................................. 81
5. Repeated action: would ............................................................... 82
6. Would rather ............................................................................... 83
7. Test A: Modals and phrasal modals ............................................... 84
8. Test B: Modals and phrasal modals ............................................... 86

Chapter 11 THE PASSIVE
1. Forming the passive .................................................................... 88
2. Forming the passive: questions, negative, and affirmative .......... 89
3. Forming the passive .................................................................... 89
4. Using the passive: transitive vs. intransitive verbs ....................... 91
5. Forming the passive .................................................................... 91
6. Active vs. passive ........................................................................ 92
7. Using the by-phrase .................................................................... 93
8. Indirect objects as passive subjects ........................................... 94
9. Active and passive ...................................................................... 94
10. The present participle vs. the past participle ............................... 96
11. The present participle vs. the past participle ............................... 97
12. Passive modals .......................................................................... 97
13. Passive modals .......................................................................... 98
14. Passive modals .......................................................................... 99
15. Static passive ............................................................................. 101
16. Static passive ............................................................................. 102
17. Static passive + prepositions ...................................................... 103
18. Present vs. past participles ......................................................... 104
19. The passive with get .................................................................. 105
20. The passive with get .................................................................. 106
21. Participial adjectives .................................................................. 107
22. Participial adjectives .................................................................. 108
23. Verb form review: active and passive ....................................... 109
24. Test A: The passive ................................................................... 112
25. Test B: The passive ................................................................... 114

Chapter 12 NOUN CLAUSES
1. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word ....... 116
2. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word ....... 116
3. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word ....... 117
4. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word ....... 118
5. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word ....... 119
PRACTICE

6. Changing yes/no and information questions to noun clauses ........................................ 120
7. Question words and **whether** followed by infinitives .............................................. 122
8. **That**-clauses .................................................................................................................. 123
9. Using the **fact that** ......................................................................................................... 123
10. Quoted speech ............................................................................................................... 124
11. Reported speech ............................................................................................................. 126
12. Reported speech ............................................................................................................. 126
13. Reported speech ............................................................................................................. 127
14. Using the subjunctive ..................................................................................................... 129
15. Using **-ever** words ...................................................................................................... 130
16. Test A: Noun clauses ..................................................................................................... 131
17. Test B: Noun clauses ..................................................................................................... 133

Chapter 13 ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

1. Basic patterns of adjective clauses ................................................................................ 135
2. Basic patterns of adjective clauses ................................................................................ 136
3. Basic patterns of adjective clauses ................................................................................ 137
4. Adjective clause patterns ................................................................................................ 138
5. Adjective clauses: using **whose** .................................................................................. 138
6. Adjective clauses: using **where** and **when** ............................................................. 139
7. Adjective clauses ............................................................................................................. 139
8. Adjective clauses: subject–verb agreement ................................................................... 140
9. Punctuating adjective clauses ........................................................................................ 140
10. Punctuating adjective clauses ....................................................................................... 141
11. Punctuating adjective clauses ....................................................................................... 142
12. Punctuating adjective clauses ....................................................................................... 143
13. Expressions of quantity in adjective clauses ............................................................... 143
14. Adjective phrases ........................................................................................................... 143
15. Punctuating adjective phrases ....................................................................................... 144
16. Adjective phrases ........................................................................................................... 144
17. Adjective phrases ........................................................................................................... 145
18. Error analysis: adjective clauses and phrases ............................................................... 146
19. Test A: Adjective clauses ............................................................................................... 147
20. Test B: Adjective clauses ............................................................................................... 149

Chapter 14 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 1

1. Gerunds as objects of prepositions ................................................................................ 151
2. Gerunds as objects of prepositions ................................................................................ 152
3. Verbs followed by gerunds ............................................................................................. 152
4. Special expressions followed by **-ing** ........................................................................ 153
5. Gerund vs. infinitive ........................................................................................................ 153
6. Verbs followed by infinitives ........................................................................................ 154
7. Verbs followed by infinitives ........................................................................................ 155
8. Gerund vs. infinitive ........................................................................................................ 156
9. Gerund vs. infinitive ........................................................................................................ 157
10. Gerund vs. infinitive ....................................................................................................... 158
11. Gerund vs. infinitive ....................................................................................................... 160
12. Gerund vs. infinitive ....................................................................................................... 161
13. Gerund vs. infinitive ....................................................................................................... 162
14. Using **it + infinitive** ................................................................................................... 163
Chapter 15  GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. In order to</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Adjectives followed by infinitives</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Too vs. very</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Using too and enough</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Passive infinitives</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Passive gerunds</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Passive infinitives and gerunds</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Using a possessive to modify a gerund</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Gerunds and infinitives</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Using verbs of perception</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Let, help, and causative verbs</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Verb form review</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Verb form review</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Verb form review</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Test A: Gerunds and infinitives</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Test B: Gerunds and infinitives</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 16  COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Parallel structure</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Parallel structure: use of commas</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Parallel structure</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Parallel structure</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Paired conjunctions: subject-verb agreement</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Paired conjunctions</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 17  ADVERB CLAUSES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Adverb clauses</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Periods and commas</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Using adverb clauses to show cause-and-effect relationships</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Using even though vs. because</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Direct contrast: while and whereas</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. If-clauses</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Using whether or not and even if</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Using in case and in the event that</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Using unless vs. if and only if</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Adverb clauses of condition</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Using only if vs. if: subject-verb inversion</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Summary: adverb clauses</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 18 REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTICE</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Reduction of adverb clauses to modifying phrases.</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Modifying phrases</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Verb forms in adverb clauses and modifying phrases</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Modifying phrases</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Modifying phrases with <em>upon</em></td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Modifying phrases</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Modifying phrases</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Test A: Connecting ideas</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Test B: Connecting ideas</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 19 CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONNECTIVES</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>Because</em> vs. <em>because of</em></td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>Because</em> vs. <em>therefore</em></td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Showing cause and effect</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Periods and commas.</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>Such ... that</em> and <em>so ... that</em></td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>Such ... that</em> and <em>so ... that</em></td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>So that</em></td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Cause and effect</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Showing contrast: punctuation</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>Despite</em>/<em>in spite of</em> vs. <em>even though</em>/<em>although</em></td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Using <em>in spite of</em>/<em>despite</em> and <em>even though</em>/<em>though</em>/<em>although</em></td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Direct contrast</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Cause and effect; showing contrast</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Using <em>otherwise</em></td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Expressing conditions</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Test A: Connecting ideas</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Test B: Connecting ideas</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 20 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SENTENCES</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Conditional sentences: present/future</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Conditional sentences: past time</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Conditional sentences: present/future and past time</td>
<td>224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Conditional sentences</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Using progressive forms and &quot;mixed time&quot; in conditional sentences</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Using progressive forms and &quot;mixed time&quot; in conditional sentences</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Omitting <em>if</em></td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Omitting <em>if</em></td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Implied conditions</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Review: conditional sentences</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Review: conditional sentences</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. <em>As if/as though</em></td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Using <em>wish</em></td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Using <em>wish</em></td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Conditionals</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Test A: Conditional sentences</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Test B: Conditional sentences</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Subjects, verbs, and objects</td>
<td>A1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs</td>
<td>A1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Identifying prepositions</td>
<td>A2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Sentence elements</td>
<td>A2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td>A2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td>A3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mid-sentence adverbs</td>
<td>A3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Linking verbs</td>
<td>A4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Linking verbs; adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td>A5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Review: basic question forms</td>
<td>A6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Yes/no and information questions</td>
<td>A7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Yes/no and information questions</td>
<td>A8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Information questions</td>
<td>A10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Information questions</td>
<td>A11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Negative questions</td>
<td>A12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Tag questions</td>
<td>A13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Contractions</td>
<td>A13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Using <em>not</em> and <em>no</em></td>
<td>A14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Avoiding “double negatives”</td>
<td>A15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Beginning a sentence with a negative word</td>
<td>A15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Preposition combinations</td>
<td>A15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Preposition combinations</td>
<td>A16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Preposition combinations</td>
<td>A16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Preposition combinations</td>
<td>A17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Preposition combinations</td>
<td>A18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Preposition combinations</td>
<td>A19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PHRASAL VERBS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Practice</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>A29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INDEX**

**ANSWER KEY**
This ELT Workbook is a place for students to explore and practice English grammar on their own. It is a place where they can test and fine-tune their understandings of English structures and improve their abilities to use English meaningfully and correctly.

It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts found in Understanding and Using English Grammar, Third Edition, a classroom teaching text for students of English as a second or foreign language, as well as in the accompanying Chartbook, a reference grammar with no exercises.

The Workbook is designed not only for students who desire the opportunity for independent study of English grammar, but also as a resource for teachers who need exercise material for additional classwork, homework, testing, or individualized instruction.

The answers to ALL of the practices are given in the back of the book in an Answer Key. The Answer Key is on perforated pages so that it can be detached to construct a separate booklet. If teachers desire to use the Workbook as a classroom teaching text, the Answer Key can be removed at the beginning of the term.

A note on changes from the previous edition: The Workbook that accompanied the previous edition of Understanding and Using English Grammar had both self-study (answers given) and guided study (no answers given) practices. This Workbook has only self-study practices. The guided study practices that involved communicative, interactive, and/or task-based activities are now in the main teaching text, and other guided study practices from the previous edition have been adapted to a self-study format in this edition. Another change is that the presentation of phrasal verbs was deleted from the main text and is now found in a special supplementary section in this Workbook.
The multi-talented Shelley Hartle, my associate in all work matters, and the masterful Janet Johnston, my longtime editor, are indispensable to the production of the Azar texts. I owe them great gratitude — and also thoroughly enjoy their friendship. In particular, they have expertly handled all the many editorial and production tasks demanded by this Workbook and its accompanying Chartbook.

Longtime users of my textbooks may have noted the change in publisher. My textbooks had a Prentice Hall imprint for nineteen years; that imprint is now changing to Longman due to a recent corporate acquisition. Both imprints represent quality academic publication.

I am pleased to have my work join Longman's long history of publishing excellence in the area of teaching English to speakers of other languages. My own commitment to quality publication matches well with the Longman tradition.

I wish to thank those at Prentice Hall Regents who helped make my association with that publisher one of mutual respect and enjoyment in recent years, in particular Robin Baliszewski and Mary Jane Peluso.

I also wish at this time to thank those at Pearson Education, the owners of the Longman imprint, who have eased my transition to a new publishing company. In particular I wish to thank Joanne Dresner, Allen Ascher, and Louisa Hellegers for their open, professional, and friendly management styles. I look forward to a long and rewarding relationship.

Others at Pearson Education I wish to thank are Rachel Baumann, Carey Davies, Aliza Greenblatt, and Ray Keating. Thanks are also due to Donna Stevenson, who input the entire Workbook on disk from a giant cut-and-paste puzzle.

Last, I wish to thank Larry Harris, my husband, for teaching me how to play. Hard work has always come easily to me, but not how to play. Now there's balance.
CHAPTER 1
Overview of Verb Tenses

◊ PRACTICE 1. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)
Directions: Following are some dialogues between Speaker A and Speaker B. Complete the dialogues by using the correct form of the words in parentheses.

1. A: I’m going to ask you some questions so that we can practice verb tenses. What (you, do) ___do you do___ every day before you come to class? Name one thing.
   B: I (eat) ___eat___ breakfast.

2. A: What (you, do) ___________ last night? Name three separate activities.
   B: Last night I (eat) ___________ dinner. Then I (visit) ___________ some friends, and later I (write) ___________ a couple of letters.

3. A: What (you, do) ___________ right now? What activity is in progress right now, at this exact moment?
   B: Right now I (talk) ___________ to you. I (answer) ___________ your questions.

4. A: Where were you at this exact time yesterday? And what activity was in progress then?
   B: Let me think. At this time yesterday, I was at the bookstore. I (look) ___________ for the books I needed to buy for this class.

5. A: How many questions (I, ask) ___________ since we began this exercise?
   B: I think you (ask) ___________ me five or six questions since we began this exercise.

6. A: What (you, do) ___________ for the past five minutes? In other words, what activity began five minutes ago and has been in progress from then until now?
   B: I (talk) ___________ to you for the past five minutes. I started talking to you five minutes ago, and I am still talking to you.

7. A: Where (you, be) ___________ tomorrow morning?
   B: I (be) ___________ in class tomorrow morning.

8. A: What (you, do) ___________ at this exact time tomorrow? In other words, what activity will be in progress at this exact same time tomorrow?
   B: Right now I am sitting in the classroom. And at this exact time tomorrow, I (sit) ___________ in the classroom.

9. A: What (you, do) ___________ by the time you got to class today? In other words, what one activity that you had completed before you arrived in class today?
   B: Well, for one thing, I (eat) ___________ breakfast by the time I got to class today.

10. A: What (you, do) ___________ by the time you go to bed tonight? Name one activity that you will have completed before you go to bed tonight.
    B: I (eat) ___________ dinner by the time I go to bed tonight.
## PRACTICE 2. Verb tenses. (Charts 1-1 → 1-5)

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PROGRESSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Tom has regular habits. He <em>(eat)</em> __________ dinner every day. He has eaten dinner every day since he was a child. He <em>(ate)</em> dinner every day last month. He <em>(ate)</em> dinner yesterday. He will <em>(eat)</em> dinner tomorrow. He will probably <em>(eat)</em> dinner almost every day until the end of his life.</td>
<td>4. At 7:00 this evening, Tom <em>(started)</em> to eat dinner. It is now 7:15. Tom <em>(is on the phone)</em> because Mary <em>(called)</em> him. He says, “Can I call you back? I <em>(eat)</em> __________ dinner right now. I’ll finish soon and will call you back. I don’t want my dinner to get cold.” Tom’s dinner is in <em>(progress)</em> when Mary calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="chart1-1.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="chart1-5.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Tom <em>(eats)</em> dinner every day. Usually he <em>(eats)</em> at home, but yesterday, he <em>(eat)</em> __________ dinner at a restaurant.</td>
<td>5. Last week Tom <em>(went)</em> to a restaurant. He <em>(began)</em> to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary <em>(came into the restaurant)</em>, saw Tom, and <em>(walked)</em> over to say hello. Tom’s dinner was <em>(still in front of him)</em>. He <em>(hadn’t finished it yet)</em>. In other words, when Mary <em>(walked)</em> into the restaurant, Tom <em>(eat)</em> __________ dinner. Tom’s dinner was in <em>(progress)</em> when Mary <em>(arrived)</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="chart2-1.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="chart2-5.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Tom <em>(ate)</em> dinner yesterday. He <em>(eats)</em> dinner every day. In all probability, he <em>(eat)</em> __________ dinner tomorrow.</td>
<td>6. Tom <em>(will begin)</em> his dinner at 7:00 tonight. Mary <em>(will arrive)</em> at 7:15. It <em>(takes)</em> Tom 30 minutes to <em>(eat)</em> his dinner. In other words, when Mary <em>(arrives)</em> tonight, Tom <em>(eat)</em> __________ his dinner. Tom’s dinner will be in <em>(progress)</em> when Mary <em>(arrives)</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="chart3-1.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="chart3-5.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PERFECT

7. Tom finished eating dinner at 7:30 tonight. It is now 8:00, and his mother has just come into the kitchen. She says, "What would you like for dinner? Can I cook something for you?" Tom says, "Thanks Mom, but I (eat, already) _________ dinner."

8. Yesterday Tom cooked his own dinner. He began at 7:00 and finished at 7:30. At 8:00 his mother came into the kitchen. She offered to cook some food for Tom, but he (eat, already) _________ _________. In other words, Tom had finished his dinner before he talked to his mother.

PERFECT PROGRESSIVE

10. Tom began to eat dinner at 7:00 tonight. It is now, at this moment, 7:15. Tom (eat) _________ _________ his dinner for 15 minutes, but he hasn’t finished yet. In other words, his dinner has been in progress for 15 minutes.

11. Last week Tom went to a restaurant. He began to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary came into the restaurant, saw Tom, and walked over to say hello. Tom’s dinner was still in front of him. He hadn’t finished it yet. In other words, when Mary walked into the restaurant, Tom (eat) _________ _________ dinner. Tom’s dinner was in progress when Mary arrived.

9. Tomorrow Tom will begin dinner at 7:00 and finish at 7:30. His mother will come into the kitchen at 8:00. In other words, Tom (eat, already) _________ dinner by the time his mother walks into the kitchen.

12. Tonight Tom will go to a restaurant. He will begin to eat at 7:00. At 7:15 Mary will come into the restaurant, see Tom, and walk over to say hello. Tom’s dinner will still be in front of him. He won’t have finished it yet. In other words, when Mary walks into the restaurant tomorrow, Tom (eat) _________ dinner for 15 minutes. Tom’s dinner will have been in progress for 15 minutes by the time Mary arrives.
**PART A.** Write the correct *-ing* and *-ed* form for each verb.

1. shout
2. slope
3. stop
4. stoop
5. answer
6. refer
7. return
8. enjoy
9. copy
10. die

**PART B.** Write the correct *-ing* form for each verb.

11. point
12. beat
13. bet
14. excite
15. exit
16. regret
17. attempt
18. shout
19. fit
20. interest

**PART C.** Write the correct *-ed* form for each verb.

21. bother
22. blur
23. scare
24. scar
25. fear
26. star
27. stare
28. order
29. suffer
30. occur

**PART D.** Write the correct *-ing* form for each verb.

31. dream
32. file
33. fill
34. fail
35. annoy
36. deny
37. scrub
38. drain
39. fan
40. interrupt

**PART E.** Write the correct *-ed* form for each verb.

41. comb
42. wrap
43. groan
44. occupy
45. spray
46. wipe
47. whip
48. accept
49. permit
50. merit
51. whisper
52. infer
PRACTICE 1. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences by using either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in the list. Include any words given in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>belong</th>
<th>fail</th>
<th>scream</th>
<th>tape</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>shrink</td>
<td>whisper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>own</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It’s a gray day today. The sun (not) _______ isn’t shining _______.
2. The bank lent us money for a down payment, so now we (own) _______ the house we used to rent.
3. Shhh! I _________________ to concentrate. I can’t hear myself think with all that noise going on.
4. This book is mine. That one _________________ to Pierre.
5. Shhh! The baby _________________ . We don’t want to wake him up.
6. A: Juan! What’s the matter with your hand? It _________________ .
   B: I just cut it when I was using a knife. It’s not serious. I’ll wash it and put a bandage on it.
7. A: My marks in school are terrible this term. I _________________ three of my courses.
   B: Maybe you can improve your grades before the end of the term if you start studying harder.
8. That sweater won’t fit you if you wash it in hot water. Wool _________________ in hot water.
9. Look at Joan. She _________________ her fingernails. She must be nervous.
10. The children can’t get their kite high up in the air because the wind (not) _________________ hard enough today.
11. My two children don’t get along. It seems they (always) _________________ about something. Is that typical of siblings?
12. You can hear Tommy all over the house. Why (he) ________________________?
   I’d better see what’s wrong.

13. “Singular” ____________________ “one.”

14. Alice and John! Why (you) ______________________ to each other? If you have
   something important to say, say it aloud to all of us.

15. Kareem has his tape recorder on his desk. He ______________________ the professor’s
   lecture today.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Stative vs. progressive verbs. (Charts 2-3 and 2-4)

Directions: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Tim (have) __________ a car.

2. Tim (have) __________ trouble with his car, so he has to take the bus to work these days.

3. This box (weigh) __________________ a lot. It’s too heavy for me to lift.

4. I just handed the box to the postal worker. Right now she (weigh) ________________ it to see how much postage it (need) __________________ .

5. I (do) __________________ this practice at the moment. It (consist) ____________ of both nonprogressive and progressive verbs.

6. I (think) __________________ about the verbs in this grammar practice right now. I
   (think) __________________ all of my answers are correct, but I’ll use the answer key to
   check them when I finish, just to make sure.

7. Mrs. Edwards is at the market. Right now she (look) ________________ at the
   apples. They (look) ________________ fresh.

8. My cousin is an actor. She (appear, currently) ________________________ in the
   popular TV series called “Doctors of Mystery.” Have you seen that show?

9. Jack (appear) ________________ happy this morning. He’s smiling.

10. A: This tooth is killing me!
    B: It’s a good thing you (see) __________________ a dentist today.

11. Susan is looking at some people across the street, but she (see, not) __________________ anyone she knows.

12. A: What are you thinking about? You have such a pleasant expression on your face.
    B: I (imagine) ___________________ what it would be like to be on a tropical beach
    right now.

13. A: Why isn’t Richard here?
    B: I (imagine) ___________________ he’ll be here soon. Don’t worry about him.
   B: Wait! (you, forget, not) ____________________________ something?
   A: What do you mean?
   B: Isn’t this your backpack?

15. A: When is Jessica’s birthday?
   B: I (forget) ________________ when her birthday is. Sometime in November, isn’t it?

16. A: Are you happy with the school you decided to send your daughter to?
   B: Yes, indeed. But it’s pretty expensive. It (cost) ________________ us an arm and a leg to send her there, but we think it’s worth it. And it won’t last forever.

17. A: What’s the price on that lamp? I really like it.
   B: Let me see. Well, no wonder. It (cost) ________________ three times as much as the other one. You certainly have expensive tastes.

18. A: What are you doing?
   B: I (smell) ________________ the scent of this candle. It (smell) ________________ good.

19. A: Watch out, Tommy! Those scissors are sharp. (you, be) ________________ careful? Don’t cut yourself.
   B: It’s okay. I won’t hurt myself.

20. A: Do you let Tommy use scissors? He’s very young.
   B: It’s not a problem. He (be) ________________ very careful when he cuts something with scissors. He knows how to use scissors carefully.

21. A: That’s a big stack of bills on your desk, Sam. Haven’t you paid your bills this month?
   B: No. Nor last month. I know I (be) ________________ irresponsible about paying my bills right now, but I’ve been really busy. I’ll take care of them soon. Generally, I (be, not) ________________ an irresponsible person.

◊ PRACTICE 3. The simple present and the present progressive. (Charts 2-1 → 2-4)

Directions: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Dennis (drink, usually) ___________ drinks ___________ coffee with his breakfast, but this morning he (drink) ___________ is drinking ___________ tea instead.

2. Janet (take) ___________ the bus to work every day. She (wait, usually) ___________ for the bus at the corner of 5th and Pine.

3. This morning it (rain) ___________. I can see Janet from my window. She (stand) ___________. I can see Janet from my window. She (hold) ___________. ___________ her umbrella over her head. She (wait) ___________ for the bus.
4. Mike (take) three classes this semester. Every morning he (study) for two hours before he goes to school. He (have) French class at 9 o'clock. He (take, also) chemistry and accounting. He (like) chemistry best of all, but he (have) better grades in accounting and French.

5. MOTHER: Susie! Get your fingers out of the dessert! What (you, do) ?
   SUSIE: I (taste) the cake. It (taste) good.

6. JANICE: What (you, write) in your notebook?
   DIANE: I (make) notes about the questions I want to ask the teacher.
   JANICE: (you, prepare, always) so thoroughly for every class?
   DIANE: I (try, always) to.

7. LARRY: Why (the children, be) so good today? They (clean) their rooms and (pick) up all their toys and clothes from the rest of the house.
   CAROL: I promised to take them to the water slide this afternoon if they did all their chores first.

8. ALFONSO: What's that?
   NURSE: A needle. I (prepare) to give you a shot.
   ALFONSO: I (need, not) a shot!
   NURSE: Just relax and breath deeply. Everything will be fine.
   ALFONSO: Ouch!

◊ PRACTICE 4. Pronunciation of -ed. (Chart 2-6)

Directions: Write the pronunciation of the -ed ending after each word.

1. greeted /æd/  7. attempted ______ 13. cooked ______
2. wished /t/  8. dropped ______ 14. prepared ______
3. listened /d/  9. served ______ 15. introduced ______
4. crossed ______ 10. included ______ 16. allowed ______
5. lifted ______ 11. reported ______
6. joined ______ 12. promised ______
**GROUP 1: ALL THREE FORMS ARE DIFFERENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1A: The vowel changes from “i” to “a” to “u.”</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shrink</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1B: The vowel changes in the simple past. The past participle ends in “n.”</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**GROUP 2: TWO FORMS ARE THE SAME: THE SIMPLE PAST AND THE PAST PARTICIPLE**

**Group 2A: The simple past and the past participle end in “d.”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flee</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>grind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>wind</td>
<td>hear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Group 2B: The simple past and the past participle end in “t.”**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>creep</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>crept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kneel</td>
<td>seek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>bend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>build</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weep</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>send</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>spend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Group 2C: The vowel changes to form the simple past and the past participle.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cling</td>
<td>clung</td>
<td>clung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spin</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stick</td>
<td>understand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sting</td>
<td>win</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strike</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Group 2D: Only the simple past is different.**

become  
became  
become  

come  

run  

**GROUP 3: All Three Forms Are The Same**

bet  bet  bet  
put  

bid  
quit  

broadcast  
shed  

burst  
shut  

cost  
slit  

cut  split  

hit  spread  

hurt  upset  


Diamond Practice 6. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

burst  draw  slide  stick  

buy  hide  slit  swear  

dig  shake  spread  win  

1. All of the witnesses _______ swore _______ to tell the truth in the court of law.

2. Mike was so cold that his whole body _________.

3. Using only a pen with blue ink, Sue ________ a beautiful picture of a bird.

4. When the balloon ________, everyone was startled by the sudden noise.

5. Paul ________ his money because he was afraid it would get stolen while he was away.

6. Emily accidentally ________ her finger with a needle while she was sewing.

7. Janice ________ the top of the envelope with a knife instead of ripping it open.

8. I lost control of my car, and it ________ across the ice.

9. Mary ________ butter all over her piece of toast with her knife.

10. Our team finally ________ the soccer game by one goal.
11. The small animal _________ a hole in the ground to make her nest.
12. When Fred went shopping yesterday, he ___________ some car wax and a garden hose.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bite</th>
<th>cling</th>
<th>pay</th>
<th>sting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>quit</td>
<td>swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>shed</td>
<td>weave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I broke a tooth when I __________ into a piece of hard candy.
2. The little boy __________ to his mother’s hand as they walked toward the school bus.
3. Maria promised to help us. I hope she __________ what she said.
4. Arthur __________ out all of the candles on his birthday cake.

5. We both __________ smoking three months ago, and we already feel much better.
6. Douglas __________ the outside of his pocket to make sure his wallet was still there.
7. A bee __________ me on the hand while I was working in the garden.
8. Matthew Webb was the first person who __________ across the English Channel.
9. Paul __________ much more for his bike than I spent for mine.
10. Rita threw the ball high in the air. Daniel __________ it when it came down.
11. Each year as the snake grew larger, it formed a new skin and __________ its old skin.
12. Everyone in Ali’s family has a special skill. His sister __________ that beautiful carpet.
8. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bet</th>
<th>freeze</th>
<th>sink</th>
<th>split</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>upset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>spin</td>
<td>weep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Dr. Perez ___________ ten hours in the operating room performing delicate surgery.
2. On my first day at the university, Sally ___________ the way to our classroom. I followed.
3. We made a friendly wager on the game. I ___________ a dollar on my team.
4. I ___________ when I heard the tragic news. Everyone else cried too.
5. As she stood, she ________ the table, and everything on top of it fell to the floor.
6. Paul wanted to make a fire, but the logs were too big. So he ___________ them with his axe.

7. When I threw a piece of wood from the shore, it floated on top of the water. When I threw a rock, it ___________ immediately to the bottom of the lake.
8. In 1927, Charles Lindbergh ___________ from New York to Paris in 33 hours and 30 minutes. How long does it take today on an SST? (SST = supersonic transport)
9. When the children ___________ around and around, they became dizzy.
10. The telephone ___________ several times and then stopped before I could answer it.
11. William had trouble deciding which one he liked best, but he finally ___________ the blue sweater.
12. When my cat heard a noise in the bushes, she ___________ in her tracks (i.e., stopped moving completely) and listened intently.
PRACTICE 9. Simple past of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the irregular verbs in the list. Pay special attention to spelling. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>broadcast</th>
<th>fall</th>
<th>lose</th>
<th>steal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>flee</td>
<td>seek</td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>sweep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Ron had a small accident. He ______________ to the floor when his foot got caught in the rug.
2. The car that Barb was driving went out of control and ______________ a stop sign. That's the first time Barb ever hit anything with her car.
3. All of the radio and TV stations ______________ the news of the peace plan yesterday.
4. When Mrs. Grant was having trouble, she ______________ help from her neighbors. She asked them for support and advice.
5. The team played badly. They ______________ the game by seven points. Oh, well. You can't win 'em all.
6. When we played cards, Jane ______________ five cards to each player.
7. Sue ______________ the knife in her right hand and the fork in her left hand.
8. The hunter slowly raised his rifle and ______________ at the deer, but he missed.
9. Jenny wanted a color TV for her apartment, but the least expensive one ______________ too much for her budget, so she decided to wait until she could save enough money.
10. When I spilled rice on the floor, I got the broom and ______________ it up.
11. A thief broke into Carlos’s apartment and ______________ his TV and his stereo set.
12. Tommy wanted to play a little joke on his friend Marcia. He ran up to Marcia’s front door, rang the doorbell, and then ______________ quickly down the street. When Marcia answered the door, no one was there.

PRACTICE 10. Troublesome verbs: raise/raise, set/sit, lay/lie. (Chart 2-8)

Directions: Select the correct verb in parentheses.

1. Mr. Wong (raises, rises) many different kinds of vegetables in his garden.
2. The man (raised, rose) to his feet and walked to the front of the room.
3. Mike (set, sat) a large vase of roses on the coffee table.
4. Claudia and Paulo (set, sat) next to each other at the lecture last night.
5. Jackie always (lays, lies) her wedding ring on the kitchen counter when she washes dishes.
6. Wouldn’t you prefer to be (lying, laying) on the beach right now instead of sitting in this class?
7. When Alex (lay, laid) down to take a nap, he ended up sleeping for the whole afternoon.
8. Where is my wallet? I (lay, laid) it here on the dresser five minutes ago.
9. Dr. Singh (hung, hanged) his diploma from medical school on the wall in his office.
10. Nepal (lies, lays) to the north of India.

◊ PRACTICE 11. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-9 → 2-12)
Directions: Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses. Include any other words in parentheses.

1. We (have) __________ had __________ a wonderful dinner last night to celebrate our 25th wedding anniversary.

2. We (have, at home) __________ were at home having __________ our anniversary dinner when my uncle called to congratulate us last night.

3. A: Why is Henry in the hospital?
   B: He (work, in his garage) __________________________ on his car when the gas tank (explode) __________________________.
   A: What (cause) __________ the explosion?
   B: Henry (Alight) __________________________ a cigarette.

4. A: I’m sorry, Officer. I (see, not) __________ the stop sign. I (think) __________ __________ about something else.
   B: What (you, think) __________________________ about? You should have been thinking about your driving.

5. Bill asked me to go over to his apartment, but I (want, not) __________ to leave the house because I (wait) __________ for a phone call.

6. Amy (hear, not) __________ her parents having an argument last night. She (listen, in her room) __________ __________ to music.

7. When Richard (stop) __________ his car suddenly, the groceries (fall) __________ __________ out of the bag they were in and (spill) __________ __________ all over the floor of the car.

8. When the door-to-door salesperson (come) __________ yesterday, Claudia (hear, not) __________ __________ the doorbell because she (dry, in her room) __________ __________ __________ her hair with her electric hair dryer.

9. When I was a child, my mother always (serve) __________ cookies and milk to my friends and me when we (go) __________ to my house after school.

10. When we (look) __________ in on the baby last night, he (sleep) __________ __________. I think he (dream) __________ __________ about something nice because he (smile) __________ __________.

Present and Past, Simple and Progressive 15
PRACTICE 12. The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-9 → 2-12)

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Yesterday David (cross) __________ a street when a truck (turn) __________ the corner very fast and almost (hit) ________ him.

2. During the study period in class yesterday, it (be) __________ hard for me to concentrate because the student next to me (hum) ____________

3. Last Monday while we (watch, in our living room) __________ a thrilling game on television, the electricity (go) ________ out. So we (go) ___________ outside, (get) ________ into the car, (turn) ___________ on the radio, and (listen) ___________ to the rest of the game. The next day the car battery (be) ________ dead.

4. The police (outwit) ____________ a thief yesterday. They (surround) ____________ the jewelry store while he (stuff, still inside) ____________ his pockets with diamonds.

5. Yesterday we had a houseful of children for my son’s sixth birthday party. In the middle of the party, the phone (ring) ____________, so I had to leave the children alone for a moment. When I (come) ____________ back into the room, most of the children (play, still) ____________ together nicely. But over in the corner, Bobby (pull) ____________ Annie’s hair. I quickly (run) ________ over and (tell) ________ Bobby to stop.

6. TEACHER: You’re late again. You were supposed to be here ten minutes ago. Where were you?

MICHAEL: I (look) ____________ for a place to park.

TEACHER: ____________ one?

MICHAEL: Yes, but it’s at a parking meter that has a 15-minute limit. So every 15 minutes I’ll have to go out and put some more money in the meter.

TEACHER: Maybe you should start taking the bus to school.

MICHAEL: I (take) ____________ the bus a couple of days ago and ended up miles from school. That’s why I was absent from class.

TEACHER: Oh.

7. BOB: My office mate, Jack, really makes me angry!

SUE: Why?

BOB: Well for one thing, he (interrupt, always) ____________ me. I can barely get a sentence out of my mouth.

SUE: Is that all?

BOB: No. He (ask, always) ____________ me to write his reports for him. I have enough reports of my own without doing his reports too!
8. **Sue:** So how did you and Bob get along at work today?

**Bob:** Same old stuff. While I (try) ______________ to explain something to him, he (interrupt) ______________ me, not just once but repeatedly. And once again he (ask) ______________ me to write a report that the boss had asked him to write. I (refuse) ______________.

**Sue:** Good for you. Jack needs to write his own reports.

◊ **PRACTICE 13.** The simple past and the past progressive. (Charts 2-9 — 2-12)

*Directions:* Complete the sentence with the simple past or the past progressive. Use any verb that seems right to you.

1. Last Saturday while Sandy ____________ out the attic, she ____________ her grandmother's wedding dress.

2. Two days ago, Peter ______________ all of his money out of the bank and ______________ a new car. Yesterday, while he ______________ to work, he lost control of his steering and ______________ another car. He wasn't hurt, but the accident completely ______________ his new car.

3. Last night we suddenly ______________ up from a sound sleep when we ____________ a noise about 3:00 A.M. I thought it was a burglar, but it was only a cat that ______________ ______________ along the window sill.

4. Two days ago I ______________ my friends Ann and Andy at their apartment. They ______________ the dishes when I ______________. They ______________ quickly, and we all ______________ down and ______________ about old times.

5. When I ______________ to/at the airport, Lisa ______________ for me in the baggage claim area. As soon as she ______________ me, she ______________ her arms and ______________ something I couldn't hear because the people around me ______________ so much noise.

6. Mary ______________ outside ______________ the flowers when it ______________ to rain. So of course she ______________ off the hose and let nature take care of her garden.
CHAPTER 3
Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses

◊ PRACTICE 1. The present perfect. (Chart 3-1)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the appropriate verb from the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>improve</td>
<td>save</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>start</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>sweep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: How about more pie?
   B: No, but thanks. I can’t swallow another bite. I (already) ____________ have already eaten ____________ too much.

2. Our football team is having a great season. They ____________ all but one of their games so far this year and will probably win the championship.

3. Jane is expecting a letter from me, but I (not) ____________ to her yet. Maybe I’ll call her instead.

4. Jack is living in Spain now. His Spanish used to be terrible, but it ____________ greatly since he moved there.

5. Our baby (not) ____________ to talk yet. My friend’s baby, who is several months older, can already say a few words in English and a few words in French.

6. A: I hear your parents are coming to visit you. Is that why you’re cleaning your apartment?
   B: You guessed it! I (already) ____________ the floor, but I still need to dust the furniture. Want to help?

7. A: I understand Tom is a good friend of yours? How long (you) ____________ ____________ him?
   B: Since we were kids.

8. Everyone makes mistakes in life. I ____________ lots of mistakes in my life. The important thing is to learn from one’s mistakes. Right?

9. A: I (never) ____________ on the subways in New York City. Have you?
   B: I’ve never even been in New York City.
10. A: *(you, ever)* _____________________ in the Atlantic Ocean?  
   B: No, only the Pacific — when I was in Hawaii. I even went snorkeling when I was there.
11. Little Freddie _____________________ a lot since I last saw him. He’s going to be tall just like his father, isn’t he?
12. Let’s stop at the next motel. We _____________________ 500 miles so far today, and that’s enough.
13. Alex spoke Arabic when he lived in Lebanon as a young child, but now he _____________________ almost all of his Arabic. He remembers only a few words.
14. Maintaining this old car for the past five years _____________________ us much less than we would have spent if we had bought a new one. We _____________________ a lot of money by not buying a new car, haven’t we?

◊ PRACTICE 2. Using *since* and *for*. (Chart 3-1)  
*Directions:* Write either *since* or *for* in the blanks.

1. I haven’t seen my brother ______ for ______ 6 months. I haven’t seen my sister ______ since ______ April.
2. My wife and I have moved three times ______ we got married.
3. We’ve lived here ______ three years, but we’re going to move again soon.
4. The Smiths have lived here ______ a long time. They’ve lived here ______ 1980.
5. My sister’s husband got a job on a fishing boat in Alaska. He’s been there ______ eleven weeks, but he should be coming home soon.
6. The International Olympic Games have continued almost without interruption ______ 1896.
7. The world has enjoyed Beethoven’s music ______ nearly 200 years.
8. They have been married ______ last summer.
9. The first sections of the Great Wall of China have endured ______ a long time. They have endured ______ more than 2,200 years.
10. Overall, Ed hasn’t learned very much ______ the term began. He needs to study harder.
11. The clock on the campus tower hasn’t moved ______ 3:13 on March 2, 1966. Nobody has been able to fix the clock ______ that time.
12. Argentina won the World Cup in 1986 for the second time ______ the cup was first awarded in 1930. Soccer is a popular sport there.
**PRACTICE 3. The simple past and the present perfect.** (Charts 2-9 and 3-1)

*Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past or the present perfect of the verbs in parentheses.*

1. I _______ knew _______ Tim when he was a child, but I haven’t seen him for many years. I _______ have known _______ Larry, my best friend, for more than 20 years. *know*

2. The company and the union finally _______ on salary raises two days ago. Since then, they _______ on everything, and the rest of the negotiations have gone smoothly. *agree*

3. Mark _______ a trip to Asia last October. He _______ many trips to Asia since he started his own import-export business. *take*

4. Ivan _______ the violin with the London Symphony since 1990. Last year he _______ Beethoven’s violin concerto at one of the concerts. *play*

5. When she was in college, Julia _______ home at least once a week. Now she has a job and is living in Chicago. In the last six months she _______ only three letters to her parents. *write*

6. Our university _______ 121 students to study in other countries last year. In total, we _______ 864 students abroad over the last ten years. *send*

7. Masaru is a pilot for JAL. He _______ nearly 8 million miles during the last 22 years. Last year, he _______ 380,000 miles. *fly*

8. Mark missed his physics examination this morning because he _______. He _______ a lot since the beginning of the semester. He’d better buy a new alarm clock. *oversleep*

**PRACTICE 4. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive.** (Charts 3-1 and 3-2)

*Directions: Use either the present perfect or the present perfect progressive of the given verbs.*

1. The children are at the park. They (play) _______ have been playing _______ ball for the last two hours, but they don’t seem tired yet.

2. Jim (play) _______ has played _______ soccer only a couple of times, so he’s not very good at it. He’s much better at tennis.

3. A: Janice (sleep) _______ for almost eleven hours. Don’t you think we should wake her up?

   B: I guess we probably should.

4. Tim (sleep) _______ in the downstairs bedroom only once. He usually sleeps upstairs in the bedroom he shares with his brother.

5. I (fly, not) _______ on a plane since last year when I was on a plane that had a fire in one of its engines. Now I’m afraid to even think about getting on an airplane.
6. A: How much longer until we arrive at the Singapore airport?
   B: Let me see. It's about 9:15. We (fly) ______________________ for almost six
   hours. We should be there in another couple of hours.

7. A: Is the rescue crew still looking for survivors of the plane crash?
   B: Yes, they (search) ______________________ the area for hours, but they
   haven’t found anybody else. They’ll keep searching until night falls.

8. Karl (raise) ______________________ three children to adulthood. Now they are
   educated and working in productive careers.

9. Sally is falling asleep at her desk. Dr. Wu (lecture) ______________________
   since ten, and it’s now past noon.

10. Virginia is a law student. Ever since she enrolled in law school, she (miss, never)
    ______________________ a class due to illness.

11. The club members (make, finally) ______________________ their decision.
    The election is over, and they (choose) ______________________ a new president.
    Ann Andrews is now the club leader.

◊ PRACTICE 5. The present perfect and the present perfect progressive. (Charts 3-1 and 3-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences by using the present perfect or the present perfect progressive
of the words in the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cook</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>spend</th>
<th>understand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>stand</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>paint</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>want</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. They have never gotten along with each other. I (never) ______________________
   why they agreed to be roommates in the first place.

2. Al just introduced me to his sister. Now I ______________________ everyone in his family.

3. Ms. Erickson is a sales clerk in a large department store. It’s almost closing time. Her feet
   hurt, as they do every day, because she ______________________ at the sales
   counter since eight o’clock this morning.

4. A: I am so happy! I finally got the one thing that I (always) ______________________.
   B: What’s that?

5. My uncle ______________________ the outside of his house for three weeks, and
   he’s still not finished. He’s being very careful. He wants his house to look just right.

6. The Smiths are presently in Tunisia. They ______________________ throughout
   North Africa since the middle of May. They’ll return home in another month.
7. My brother's daughter ________________ nearly six inches (15 cm) since I last saw her two years ago.

8. A: How much money do you have to buy clothes with?
   B: Sixty dollars.
   A: I thought you had a hundred dollars.
   B: I did. But I (already) ________________ forty.

9. A: Isn't the rice ready to eat yet? It ________________ for over an hour, hasn't it? Are you sure you know how to cook rice?
   B: Of course I do! I've watched my mother make rice for years.

10. I'm surprised that George apologized for what he said. As far as I can remember, I (never) ________________ him say "I'm sorry" before.

11. A: We ________________ to hear about the new baby since 5 A.M. Isn't there any word yet?
    B: Not yet.

12. A: I've been watching Mr. Tuttle in his front yard across the street. He ________________ a long trench across the middle of his yard for the last two hours. I wonder why.
    B: He's uncovering the water pipes so he can repair a leak and put in new plumbing.

◊ PRACTICE 6. The simple past and the past perfect. (Charts 2-9 and 3-3)
Directions: Use the simple past or the past perfect of the verbs in the list to complete the sentences. Include any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>finish</th>
<th>invent</th>
<th>sting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>turn on</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. By the time Jason arrived to help, we (already) ________________ moving everything.

2. The apartment was hot when I got home, so I ________________ the air conditioner.

3. Alexander Graham Bell (already) ________________ the telephone by the time I was born.

4. The farmer's barn caught on fire some time during the night. By the time the firefighters arrived, the building ________________ to the ground. It was a total loss.
5. The suit I bought cost more than a week’s salary. Until then, I (never) ________________
   ______________ so much on one outfit.

6. Yesterday a hornet ________________ me under my arm. That really hurt! When I put
   my shirt after working in the garden, I didn’t notice that there was a hornet in it.

7. We were not happy with the plans that the architect showed us for our new house. Obviously,
   he (never) __________________________ a home like the one we wanted.

8. When I saw that Mike was having trouble, I ________________ him. He was very
   appreciative.

9. My wife and I went to Disneyland when we visited Los Angeles last spring. Prior to that time,
   we (never) __________________________ to such a big amusement park. It was a lot of fun.

10. Last year I experienced how tedious long plane trips can be. I ________________ in
    an airplane for fairly long distances before, but never as long as when I went to Australia in
    June.

11. Mr. Khan has had experience teaching chemistry and physics, but he (never) __________
    ________________ mathematics until this year. He’s found that he enjoys teaching
    math.

12. Promptly at five, I went to Iris’ office to offer her a ride home from work, but I couldn’t find
    her. She (already) ____________________________ .

◊ PRACTICE 7. The simple past and the past perfect. (Charts 2-9 and 3-3)

Directions: Use the simple past or the past perfect of the verbs in parentheses. In some cases,
both forms are correct.

1. Yesterday I (go) ____________ to my daughter’s dance recital. I (be, never)
   had never been ________________ to a dance recital before. I (take, not) ____________ didn’t take
   dancing lessons when I (be) ____________ a child.

2. Last night, I (eat) ________________ four servings of food at the “all-you-can-eat” special dinner
   at The Village Restaurant. Until that time, I (eat, never) ________________ so
   much in one meal. I’ve felt miserable all day today.

3. A: I (see) ________________ you in the school play last night. You (do) ________________ a terrific
   acting job. (you, act, ever) ________________ in a play before this one?

   B: Yes. I (start) ________________ acting when I was in elementary school.
4. Last year, I (go) __________ mountain climbing for the first time. It was exciting and terrifying at the same time. We (move) __________ slowly and carefully, and it (take) __________ three days to get to the top. Imagine our surprise when we climbed onto the summit and found another group of climbers. They (arrive) _______________ several hours ahead of us. They were having dinner and listening to Beethoven. We (laugh) ____________, and they (invite) _______________ us to join them. The climb (be) ____________, to say the least, an unforgettable experience.

5. A friend of mine, Judith Nelson, is presently working in the international sales division at an electronics firm. She's just returned from a trip to Japan. She was asked to go there because she can speak Japanese. When she (be) ____________ a business student at Boston University, she (study) ____________ Japanese for four years. She (have, never) _______________ the opportunity to use her Japanese until she went to Tokyo last month. While she was there, she (speak) ____________ Japanese every day and (enjoy) _______________ every minute of it. She's eager to return.

6. When I first (travel) ____________ abroad to study, I (live, never) _______________ _______________ in a dormitory before. During the first year, I (have) ____________ a roommate from Switzerland who (become) ____________ a very good friend. Prior to that time, I (live, never) _______________ with anyone from another culture.
**PRACTICE 8. The present perfect progressive and the past perfect progressive.**
(Charts 3-2 and 3-4)

*Directions*: Use the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive to complete these sentences.

1. Anna (listen to) **had been listening to** loud rock music when her friends arrived, but turned it off so all of them could study together. When they finished, she turned it back on, and they **have been dancing** and **singing** for two hours now.

2. We **wait** for Ali for the last two hours, but he still hasn’t arrived.

3. We **wait** for Ali for over three hours before he finally arrived yesterday.

4. Oscar **train** for the Olympics for the last three years and wants to make the national team next year.

5. The marathon runner **run** for almost two hours when he collapsed to the pavement. He received immediate medical attention.

6. Tom had a hard time finding a job. He **try** to get a new job for six months before he finally found a position at a local community college. Now he has a two-year contract. He **teach** there for only a few weeks, but he likes his new job very much.

7. Dr. Sato **perform** specialized surgery since she began working at the university hospital ten years ago. She still does many operations each year, but now her work is so famous that she travels all over the world lecturing to other surgeons on her technique.

8. The Acme Construction Company is having problems. They **work** on a new office building for the last seven months, and everything seems to be going wrong. Earlier, they stopped work on a smaller structure that they **build** so they could take on this job. Now both projects are in jeopardy.
CHAPTER 4
Future Time

◊ PRACTICE 1. Will vs. be going to. (Charts 4-1 and 4-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences with will or be going to, as appropriate. Include any words in parentheses.

1. A: Excuse me, waiter! This isn’t what I ordered. I ordered a chicken salad.
   B: Sorry, sir. I ___will___ take this back and get your salad.
   A: Thank you.

2. A: Would you like to join Linda and me tomorrow? We ___are going to___ visit the natural history museum.
   B: Sure. I’ve never been there.

3. A: Where’s the mustard?
   B: In the refrigerator, on the middle shelf.
   A: I’ve looked there.
   B: Okay. I _____________ find it for you.

4. A: What’s all this paint for? (you) ________________ paint your house?
   B: No, we _________________ paint my mother’s house.

5. A: Paul, do you want to go with me to the shopping mall?
   B: No thanks. I have some things I have to do today. I ________________ wash my car and then clean out the basement.

6. A: Someone needs to take this report to Mr. Day’s office right away, but I can’t leave my desk.
   B: I ________________ do it.
   A: Thanks.

7. A: Let’s make something easy for dinner. Got any ideas?
   B: I ________________ make some rice. Why don’t you make a salad?
   A: Sounds good.

8. A: Why did you buy so many tomatoes?
   B: I ________________ make a lot of spaghetti sauce.
9. A: Who’d like to take the VCR back to the visual aids room? Any volunteers?
   B: I _______________ do it.

10. A: Why did you buy so many vegetables?
    B: I ______ make a large salad for the potluck dinner tonight.

11. A: Why is Carlos wearing a suit and tie? He usually wears jeans to class.
    B: He _________________ give a speech at the faculty lunch today.
    A: Really? What (he) ____________________ speak about?
    B: About university study in his country.

12. A: I wonder what the weather is like in Chicago now. I need to know what kind of clothes
to pack for my trip there.
    B: I don’t know, but it just so happens that I have a cousin who lives in Chicago, and I have
to call her tonight. I _________________ ask her about the weather and tell you
what she says.

    B: What can I do, Andy?
    A: I _________________ go to a job interview this afternoon, and I don’t have a
decent tie to wear.
    B: I _________________ lend you one of mine.
    A: Thanks.

14. A: You’re going out?
    B: Yes. I _________________ go to the grocery store for some fruit, meat, and
rice. Can you think of anything else we need?
    A: How about some chocolate-covered nuts?
    B: I said “need”!

◊ PRACTICE 2. Expressing the future in time clauses. (Chart 4-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple present or with will and/or the correct form of
be going to. (In some blanks, both will and be going to may be possible.)

1. The strike has been going on for over two months now. The strikers (return, not)
   ____________ will not / are not going to return ____________  to work until they (get) ____________ a raise
   and the benefits they are demanding.

2. A: Have you heard any news about Barbara since her car accident?
    B: No, I’ve heard nothing. As soon as I (hear) ____________ something, I (let)
   ____________ you know.
3. A: I see you’re reading *The Silk Road*. I’d really like to read it sometime.
   B: I *(lend)* ____________ it to you as soon as I *(finish)* ____________ it.
   A: Really? Thanks!

4. When Rita *(get)* ____________ her driver’s license next week, she *(be)* ____________ able to drive to school every day.

5. A: Mr. Jackson called. He’ll be here at the garage to pick up his car in a few minutes. He *(be, not)* ____________ very happy when he *(learn)* ____________ about the bill for repairs on his car. Do you want to talk to him when he *(come)* ____________ in and *(ask)* ____________ about his bill?
   B: Not especially, but I will.

6. After Ali *(return)* ____________ to his country next month, he *(start)* ____________ working at the Ministry of Agriculture.

7. According to the newspaper, the Department of Transportation *(build)* ____________ ____________ a new four-lane highway into the city. In my opinion, it *(be)* ____________ obsolete before they *(complete)* ____________ it. It seems to me that a six-lane highway is needed to handle the heavy traffic.

8. Relax. The plumber is on his way. He *(be)* ____________ here before there *(be)* ____________ a flood in the kitchen. Let’s just keep mopping up the water the best we can.
PRACTICE 3. Using the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Change the verbs in italics to the present progressive for those sentences that express a planned event or definite intention. In some sentences, no change is possible.

1. A: The package has to be there tomorrow. Will it get there in time?
   B: Don’t worry. I’m going to send it by express mail.
   * I’m sending it by express mail.

2. A: What’s the weather report?
   B: It is going to rain tomorrow morning. (no change)
   * (Not possible: It’s raining tomorrow morning.)

3. A: Would you like to have dinner with me tonight, Pat?
   B: Thanks, but I’m going to have dinner with my sister and her husband.

4. A: What are you going to do this evening?
   B: I’m going to study at the library.

5. A: The phone is ringing.
   B: I’ll get it.

6. A: Did you know that Bill and Sue are engaged?
   B: No. That’s great! When are they going to get married?
   A: In September.

7. A: You’re going to laugh when I tell you what happened to me today!
   B: Oh? What happened?

8. A: Have you lived here long?
   B: No, not long. Only about a year. But we’re going to move again next month. My father’s company has reassigned him to Atlanta, Georgia.

9. A: I tried to register for Professor Stein’s economics class, but it’s full. Is he going to teach it again next semester?
   B: I think so.

10. A: Son, I’m not going to send you any money this month. You’re spending far too much. You need to learn to be more careful.
    B: But Dad ...!
    A: Just do the best you can. Your mother and I are going to come to visit you next month. We can talk about it then.

PRACTICE 4. Future progressive. (Chart 4-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the future progressive or the simple present of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Just relax, Antoine. As soon as your sprained ankle (heal) heals, you can play soccer again. At this time next week, you (play) will be playing soccer again.

2. I’ll meet you at the airport tomorrow. After you (clear) customs, look for me just outside the gate. I (stand) right by the door.
3. Ingrid and Ruth won’t be at this school when classes (start) ______________ next semester. They (attend) ______________ a new school in Taiwan.

4. Please come and visit today when you (have) ______________ a chance. I (shop) ______________ from 1:00 to 2:30, but I’ll be home after that.

5. I won’t be here next week. I (attend) ______________ a seminar in Los Angeles. Ms. Gomez will substitute-teach for me. When I (return) ______________, I will expect you to be ready for the midterm examination.

◊ PRACTICE 5. The future perfect and the future perfect progressive. (Charts 4-6 and 4-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the future perfect or the future perfect progressive of the verbs in the list. Include any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>rise</th>
<th>smoke</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>save</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. By the time I get up tomorrow morning, the sun (already) will already have risen / will have already risen .

2. This is a long trip! By the time we get to Miami, we ______________ on this bus for over 15 hours.

3. We’re going to be late meeting my brother’s plane. By the time we get to the airport, it (already) ______________ .

4. He’s never going to stop talking. In 15 more minutes, we ______________ to him lecture for three solid hours. I don’t even know what he’s saying anymore.

5. What? You’re smoking another cigarette? At this rate you ______________ a whole pack by lunchtime. Don’t you think you should cut down a little?

6. This is the longest flight I have ever taken. By the time we get to New Zealand, we ______________ for 13 hours. I’m going to be exhausted.

7. Douglas has been putting some money away every month to prepare for his trip to South America next year. By the end of this year, he ______________ enough. It looks like he’s going to make it.

8. Can you believe it? According to our grammar teacher, by the end of this semester she ______________ more than 3,000 students from 42 different countries. She has been teaching for nearly 20 years — and she still loves it!
CHAPTER 5

Adverb Clauses of Time and Summary of Verb Tenses

◇ PRACTICE 1. Adverb clauses of time. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Change the position of the adverb clause in the sentence. Underline the adverb clause in the given sentence, and underline the adverb clause in the new sentence. Punctuate carefully.

1. I didn’t feel any older when I reached my 21st birthday.
   → When I reached my 21st birthday, I didn’t feel any older.

2. I had a cup of tea before I left for work.

3. After I get home from work, I like to read the evening newspaper.

4. Since my watch broke, I have been late to work three times.

5. My cat hides under the house whenever it rains.

6. I’m going to get a job once I finish school.

7. While I was waiting for my bus, I heard a gunshot.

8. The village will have no electric power until a new generator is installed.

9. The last time I was in Taipei, I saw Mr. Wu.

10. As soon as we saw the tornado heading toward our town, we ran to the basement of the town hall.
**PRACTICE 2. Adverb clauses of time. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)**

*Directions:* Using the words in parentheses, make logical connections between the ideas in Column A with the ideas in Column B. Punctuate carefully and pay attention to verb tenses. **Underline** the adverb clauses in the new sentences.

*Examples:* 1. As soon as the taxi *gets* here, we can leave.
   2. I turned off the TV *before* I left the room.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Our taxi will get here. <em>(as soon as)</em></td>
<td>A. She was leaving the store.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I turned off the TV. <em>(before)</em></td>
<td>B. It destroyed everything in its path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. I parachuted from a plane. <em>(the first time)</em></td>
<td>✔ C. We can leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. My boss stormed into my office <em>(while)</em></td>
<td>D. I get sleepy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ceylon had been independent for 24 years. <em>(after)</em></td>
<td>✔ E. I left the room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Jack fell off his bicycle. <em>(since)</em></td>
<td>F. Its name was changed to Sri Lanka.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Ms. Johnson will return your call. <em>(as soon as)</em></td>
<td>G. We can eat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. John will learn how to use a computer. <em>(once)</em></td>
<td>H. She’ll have some free time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I won’t return this book to the library. <em>(until)</em></td>
<td>I. I’ll finish my research project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Sue dropped a carton of eggs. <em>(as)</em></td>
<td>J. I was both terrified and exhilarated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Anna will go to class. <em>(the next time)</em></td>
<td>K. I was talking on the phone to an important client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. The flooding river raced down the valley. <em>(when)</em></td>
<td>L. He’ll be able to work more efficiently.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. The rice will be done. <em>(just as soon as)</em></td>
<td>M. He’s had to use crutches to walk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. When I go to bed at night, I like to read. <em>(until)</em></td>
<td>N. She’ll remember to take her grammar book.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time. (Chapters 1 → 5)**

*Directions:* Choose the letter of the correct answer.

1. After Jessica ___ her degree, she intends to work in her father’s company.
   A. will finish  B. will have finished  C. finishes  D. is finishing

2. By the time I go to bed tonight, I ___ my work for the day.
   A. will finish  B. have finished  C. will have finished  D. finish

3. When my parents ___ for a visit tomorrow, they will see our new baby for the first time.
   A. will arrive  B. arrived  C. will have arrived  D. arrive

4. Fatemah looked down to discover a snake at her feet. When she saw it, she ___.
   A. was screaming  B. had screamed  C. screamed  D. screams

5. By the time Alfonso finally graduated from high school, he ___ seven different schools because his parents moved frequently.
   A. attended  B. was attending  C. had attended  D. had been attending

6. Until you learn to relax more, you ___ your ability to speak English.
   A. haven’t improved  C. don’t improve
   B. aren’t improving  D. won’t improve

7. I borrowed four books on gardening the last time I ___ to the library.
   A. go  B. went  C. had gone  D. have gone
8. Before I started the car, all of the passengers ____ their seat belts.
   A. will buckle  B. had buckled  C. buckle  D. have buckled

9. It seems that whenever I travel abroad, I ____ to take something I need.
   A. forgot  B. am forgetting  C. forget  D. had forgotten

10. When I see the doctor this afternoon, I ____ him to look at my throat.
    A. will ask  B. asked  C. will have asked  D. ask

11. After ancient Greek athletes won a race in the Olympics, they ____ a simple crown of olive leaves.
    A. received  B. had received  C. were receiving  D. have received

12. After the race ____ , the celebration began.
    A. had been won  B. is won  C. will be won  D. has been won

13. I’ll return Bob’s pen to him the next time I ____ him.
    A. see  B. will see  C. will have seen  D. have seen

14. I ____ all of the questions correctly since I began this grammar exercise on verb tenses.
    A. am answering  B. answer  C. have answered  D. answered

15. A small stone struck the windshield while we ____ down the gravel road.
    A. drive  B. were driving  C. had driven  D. had been driving

◊ PRACTICE 4. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Use any appropriate tense for the verbs in parentheses.

1. My grandfather (fly, never) __________________ in an airplane, and he has no intention of ever doing so.

2. Jane isn’t here yet. I (wait) __________________ for her since noon, but she still (arrive, not) __________________.

3. In all the world, there (be) __________________ only 14 mountains that (reach) __________________ above 8,000 meters (26,247 feet).

4. I have a long trip ahead of me tomorrow, so I think I’d better go to bed. But let me say good-bye now because I won’t see you in the morning. I (leave, already) ________________ ________________ by the time you (get) ________________ up.

5. Right now we (have) __________________ a heat wave. The temperature (be) __________________ in the upper 90s (upper 30s Celsius) for the last six days.

6. Last night I (go) __________________ to a party. When I (get) __________________ there, the room was full of people. Some of them (dance) __________________, and others (talk) __________________. One young woman (stand) __________________ by herself. I (meet, never) ________________________ her, so I (introduce) ________________________ myself to her.
7. About three yesterday afternoon, Jessica (lie) ____________ in bed reading a book. Suddenly she (hear) ____________ a loud noise and (get) ____________ up to see what it was. She (look) ____________ out the window. A truck (back, just) ____________ into her new car!

8. Next month I have a week’s vacation. I (plan) ____________ to take a trip. First, I (go) ____________ to Madison, Wisconsin, to visit my brother. After I (leave) ____________ Madison, I (go) ____________ to Chicago to see a friend who (study) ____________ at the university there. She (live) ____________ in Chicago for three years, so she (know) ____________ her way around the city. She (promise) ____________ to take me to many interesting places. I (be, never) ____________ in Chicago, so I (look) ____________ forward to going there.

9. Yesterday while I (sit) ____________ in class, I (get) ____________ the hiccups. The person who (sit) ____________ next to me told me to hold my breath. I (try) ____________ that, but it didn’t work. The instructor (lecture) ____________ ____________, and I didn’t want to interrupt him, so I just sat there trying to hiccups quietly. Finally, after I (hiccup) ____________ for almost five minutes, I (raise) ____________ my hand and (excuse) ____________ myself from class to go get a drink of water.

10. The weather has been terrible lately. It (rain) ____________ off and on for two days, and the temperature (drop) ____________ drastically. It (be) ____________ really cold today. Just three days ago, the sun (shine) ____________ ____________ and the weather (be) ____________ pleasant. The weather certainly (change) ____________ quickly here. I never know what to expect. Who knows? When I (wake) ____________ up tomorrow morning, maybe it (snow) ____________

◊ PRACTICE 5. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

On June 20th, I returned home. I (1. be) ____________ away from home for two years. My family (2. meet) ____________ me at the airport with kisses and tears. They (3. miss) ____________ me as much as I had missed them. I (4. be) ____________ very happy to see them again. When I (5. get) ____________ the chance, I (6. take) ____________ a long look at them. My little brother (7. be) ____________ no longer little. He (8. grow) ____________ a lot. He (9. be) ____________ almost as tall as my father. My little sister (10. wear) ____________ a green dress. She (11. change) ____________ quite a bit, too, but she (12. be, still) ____________
mischievous and inquisitive. She (13. ask) ____________ me a thousand questions a minute, or so it seemed. My father (14. gain) _______________ some weight, and his hair (15. turn) _______________ a little grayer, but otherwise he was just as I had remembered him. My mother (16. look) _______________ a little older, but not much. The wrinkles on her face (17. be) ____________ smile wrinkles.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

On June 20th, I will return home. I (1. be) ________________ away from home for two years by that time. My family (2. meet) ____________ me at the airport with kisses and tears. They (3. miss) ________________ me as much as I have missed them. I (4. be) ____________ very happy to see them again. When I (5. get) ________ a chance, I (6. take) ________________ a long look at them. My little brother (7. be, no longer) ________________ so little. He (8. grow) ________________ at least a foot. He (9. be) ____________ almost as tall as my father. My little sister (10. wear, probably) ________________ a green dress because that’s her favorite color. She (11. change) ________________ quite a bit, too, but she (12. be, still) ________________ mischievous and inquisitive. She (13. ask) ________________ me a thousand questions a minute, or so it will seem. My father (14. gain, probably) ________________ some weight, and his hair (15. turn) ________________ a little grayer, but otherwise he will be just as I remember him. My mother (16. look) ________________ a little older, but not much. The wrinkles on her face (17. be) ____________ smile wrinkles.

◇ PRACTICE 7. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.

PART 1.

A: What (1. seem) ________________ to be the trouble, Ms. Jones?

B: I (2. send) ________________ in my money for a subscription to your magazine, Computer Data, two months ago, but to date I (3. receive, not) ________________ any issues.

A: I’m sorry to hear that. Unfortunately, one of our main computers (4. function, not) ________________ at the moment. However, our computer specialists (5. work) ________________ very hard to fix it at the present time. We (6. start) ________________ your new subscription as soon as possible.

B: Thank you.
PART II.

A: Where’s Sonia? I (1. *see*, not) ________________ her lately.

B: She (2. *re recuperate, at home*) ____________________________ .

A: Oh? What (3. *re recuperate*, she) ________________________________ from?

B: She (4. *hurt*) __________ her back while she (5. *play*) __________________________ volleyball last week in the game against South City College.

A: What happened? How (6. *she, hurt*) ______________________ her back?

B: She (7. *try*) ________________ to spike a ball when she (8. *collide*) __________________________ with another player and (9. *fall*) ________________ to the ground.

She (10. *land*) ________________ hard and (11. *twist*) __________________________ her back.

A: Gosh, that’s too bad. I’m sorry to hear that. How’s she doing?

B: Well, she’s pretty uncomfortable. She (12. *wear*) __________________________ a special brace on her back for the last five days. Needless to say, she (13. *be, not*) __________________________ able to play volleyball since her injury. She probably (14. *be, not*) ________________ able to play again for at least a month.

A: (15. *her doctor, allow*) __________________________ her to play in the national tournament at the end of the summer?

B: She (16. *have*) ________________ the brace on her back for more than seven weeks by then, so I think he will.

A: I hope so. I know how much she likes to compete in volleyball games. And the team really needs her.
PART III.

A: Hi, Jim. How's it going?
B: Great.
A: (1. you, enjoy) ___________________________ the rock concert last night?
B: You bet! I had a terrific time.
A: Tell me about it. I (2. go, never) ___________________________ to a rock concert.
B: Well, I (3. go, never) ___________________________ to a rock concert before either, so I
(4. know, not) ___________________________ what to expect. I've been to symphony concerts
lots of times, but never a rock concert. Ten minutes before the concert was supposed to
start, hundreds of teenagers (5. try, still) ___________________________ to find their
seats. The place was a madhouse. I thought that things would settle down once the
concert began. Boy, was I wrong! As soon as the lead singer (6. appear) ____________
on the stage, everyone (7. start) ___________________________ screaming at the top of their lungs.
I couldn't hear myself think. But after a while things calmed down. And the music was
great. At one time during the concert, while the lead singer (8. sing) ________________
______________, a famous hit song, many people in the audience knew the song so
well that they sang along with him. All in all, the concert (9. be) ________________ a lot of
fun, but very noisy.
A: It does sound like it was a lot of fun!

PART IV.

Mark Twain, the author of the The Adventures of Tom Sawyer, is one of America's best-
loved storytellers. He (1. grow up) ____________ in a small town on the Mississippi River.
As a young boy, he (2. admire, greatly) ___________________________ the pilots of the
riverboats and dreamed about being a riverboat pilot on the mighty river. He pursued his
dream, and by the age of 22, he himself (3. become) ___________________________ a riverboat
pilot. Later in life, when he (4. become) ____________ a writer, many of his stories
(5. contain) ___________________________ elements of his own experiences. He wrote many
humorous stories and articles about life on the Mississippi River before he (6. die)
______________ in 1910 at the age of 74. Sadly, Twain (7. work) ___________________________
on a new story for several months before his death, but he (8. finish, never) ________________
______________ __________ it. Over the years since his death, his boyhood home in
Hannibal, Missouri, (9. become) ___________________________ a favorite place for Americans
to visit to learn about Twain and life on the Mississippi at the turn of the 19th century.
PRACTICE 8. Test A: Verb tenses. (Chapters 1 - 5)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: I've been in this city for a long time. I ___ here sixteen years ago.
A. have come  B. was coming  C. came  D. had come

1. “Hurry up! We’re waiting for you. What’s taking you so long?”
   “I ____ for an important phone call. Go ahead and leave without me.”
   A. wait  B. will wait  C. am waiting  D. have waited

2. “Robert is going to be famous someday. He ____ in three movies already.”
   “I’m sure he’ll be a star.”
   A. has been appearing  B. has appeared  C. has appeared
   D. appeared

3. “Where’s Polly?”
   “She ____.”
   A. is in her room studying  B. in her room is studying
   C. studies in her room  D. has in her room studied

4. “Hello? Alice? This is Jeff. How are you?”
   “Jeff? What a coincidence! I ____ about you when the phone rang.”
   A. was just thinking  B. just thought
   C. have just been thinking  D. was just thought

5. “What ____ about the new simplified tax law?”
   “It’s more confusing than the old one.”
   A. are you thinking  B. do you think
   C. have you thought  D. have you been thinking

6. “When is Mr. Fields planning to retire?”
   “Soon, I think. He ____ here for a long time. He’ll probably retire either next year or the
   year after that.”
   A. worked  B. had been working
   C. has been working  D. is working

7. “Why did you buy all this sugar and chocolate?”
   “I ____ a delicious dessert for dinner tonight.”
   A. make  B. will make
   C. am going to make  D. will have made

8. “Let’s go! What’s taking you so long?”
   “I’ll be there as soon as I ____ my keys.”
   A. found  B. will find
   C. find  D. am finding

9. Next week when there ____ a full moon, the ocean tides will be higher.
   A. is being  B. is
   C. will be  D. will have been

10. While I ____ TV last night, a mouse ran across the floor.
    A. watch  B. watched
    C. was watching  D. am watching
11. Fish were among the earliest forms of life. Fish ____ on earth for ages and ages.
   A. existed  B. are existing  C. exist  D. have existed

12. The phone ____ constantly since Jack announced his candidacy for president this morning.
   A. has been ringing  B. rung  C. had rung  D. had been ringing

13. The earth ____ on the sun for its heat and light.
   A. is depend  B. depending  C. has depend  D. depends

14. I don’t feel good. I ____ home from work tomorrow.
   A. am staying  B. stay  C. will have stayed  D. stayed

15. Today there are weather satellites that beam down information about the earth’s atmosphere. In the last two decades, space exploration ____ great contributions to weather forecasting.
   A. is making  B. has made  C. made  D. makes

16. On July 20, 1969, Astronaut Neil Armstrong ____ down onto the moon, the first person ever to set foot on another celestial body.
   A. was stepping  B. stepped  C. has stepped  D. was step

17. The plane’s departure was delayed because of mechanical difficulties. When the weary passengers finally boarded the aircraft, many were annoyed and irritable because they ____ in the airport for three and a half hours.
   A. are waiting  B. have been waiting  C. were waiting  D. had been waiting

18. If coastal erosion continues to take place at the present rate, in another fifty years this beach ____ anymore.
   A. doesn’t exist  B. isn’t going to exist  C. isn’t existing  D. won’t be existing

19. Homestead High School’s football team ____ a championship until last season, when the new coach led them to win first place in their league.
   A. has never won  B. is never winning  C. had never been winning  D. had never won

20. Non-native speakers need many years of intensive language study before they can qualify as interpreters. By the end of this year, Chen ____ English for three years, but he will still need more training and experience before he masters the language.
   A. will be studying  B. has studied  C. will have been studying  D. has been studying
Example: I’ve been in this city for a long time. I __ here sixteen years ago.
A. have come       B. was coming       C. came       D. had come

1. “May I speak to Dr. Paine, please?”
   “I’m sorry, he _____ a patient at the moment. Can I help you?”
   A. is seeing       B. sees       C. has been seeing       D. was seeing

2. “When are you going to ask your boss for a raise?”
   “_____ to her twice already! I don’t think she wants to give me one.”
   A. I’ve talked       B. I’ve been talking       C. I was talking       D. I’d talked

3. “Do you think Harry will want something to eat after he gets here?”
   “I hope not. It’ll probably be after midnight, and we _____.”
   A. are sleeping       C. have been sleeping
   B. will be sleeping       D. be sleeping

4. Paul, could you please turn off the stove? The potatoes _____ for at least thirty minutes.
   A. are boiling
   B. boiling
   C. have been boiling
   D. were boiling

5. “Is it true that spaghetti didn’t originate in Italy?”
   “Yes. The Chinese _____ spaghetti dishes for a long time before Marco Polo brought it back to Italy.”
   A. have been making
   B. have made
   C. had been making
   D. make

6. “I once saw a turtle that had wings. The turtle flew into the air to catch insects.”
   “Stop kidding. I _____ you!”
   A. don’t believe
   B. am not believing
   C. didn’t believe
   D. wasn’t believing

7. “Could someone help me lift the lawnmower into the pickup truck?”
   “I’m not busy. I _____ you.”
   A. help
   B. will help
   C. am going to help
   D. am helping

8. My family loves this house. It _____ the family home ever since my grandfather built it 60 years ago.
   A. was
   B. has been
   C. is
   D. will be

9. Here’s an interesting statistic: On a typical day, the average person _____ about 48,000 words. How many words did you speak today?
   A. spoke
   B. was speaking
   C. speaks
   D. is speaking

10. I know you feel bad now, Tommy, but try to put it out of your mind. By the time you’re an adult, you _____ all about it.
    A. forget
    B. will have forgotten
    C. will forget
    D. forgot
11. It's against the law to kill the black rhinoceros. They _____ extinct.
   A. became          B. have become          C. become          D. are becoming

12. After ten unhappy years, Janice finally quit her job. She _____ along with her boss for a long
time before she finally decided to look for a new position.
   A. hadn't been getting   C. didn't get
   B. isn't getting        D. hasn't been getting

13. The National Hurricane Center is closely watching a strong hurricane over the Atlantic
Ocean. When it _____ the coast of Texas sometime tomorrow afternoon, it will bring with it
great destructive force.
   A. reaches          B. will reach          C. is reaching          D. reaching

14. At one time, huge prehistoric reptiles dominated the earth. This Age of Dinosaurs _____
much longer than the present Age of Mammals has lasted to date.
   A. lasted          B. was lasting          C. has lasted          D. had lasted

   A. worked          B. work          C. were working          D. have been working

16. The city is rebuilding its dilapidated waterfront, transforming it into a pleasant and fashionable
outdoor mall. Next summer when the tourists arrive, they _____ 104 beautiful new shops
and restaurants in the area where the old run-down waterfront properties used to stand.
   A. will find          B. will be finding          C. will have found          D. will find

17. A minor earthquake occurred at 2:07 a.m. on January 3. Most of the people in the village _____
at the time and didn't even know it had occurred until the next morning.
   A. slept          B. had slept          C. were sleeping          D. sleep

18. The little girl started to cry. She _____ her doll, and no one was able to find it for her.
   A. has lost          B. had lost          C. was losing          D. was lost

19. According to research reports, people usually _____ in their sleep 25 to 30 times each night.
   A. turn          B. are turning          C. have turned          D. turned

20. Jane's eyes burned and her shoulders ached. She _____ at the computer for five straight
hours. Finally, she took a break.
   A. is sitting          B. has been sitting          C. was sitting          D. had been sitting
CHAPTER 6
Subject-Verb Agreement

◊ PRACTICE 1. Preview: subject-verb agreement. (Chapter 6)
Directions: Correct the mistakes in the use of singular and plural forms.

1. My mother wear, glasses.
2. Elephant is large animals.
3. Your heart beat faster when you exercise.
4. Healthy hearts needs regular exercise.
5. Every child in the class know the alphabet.
6. Some of the magazine at the dentist’s office are two year old.
7. A number of the students in my class is from Mexico.
8. One of my favorite subject in school is algebra.
9. There’s many different kind of insects in the world.
10. Writing compositions are difficult for me.
11. The United State have a population of more than 250 million.
12. Most of the people in my factory division likes and gets along with one another, but a few of the worker doesn’t fit in with the rest of us very well.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es. (Chart 6-1)
Directions: Add -s or -es to these words to spell them correctly, and give the pronunciation of the ending.

1. ball __ s /
2. wish __ es /
3. aunt __ s /
4. flower _____
5. park _____
6. touch _____
7. month______
8. tree______
9. keep______
10. dress______
11. valley______
12. industry______
13. swallow______
14. cliff______
15. bath______
16. bathe______
◊ PRACTICE 3. Basic subject–verb agreement. (Chart 6-2)
  Directions: Choose the correct verb, singular or plural, for each subject.

1. The weather _is, are_ cold.
2. Vegetables _is, are_ good for you.
3. A dog _barks, bark_.
4. Dogs _barks, bark_.
5. Ann _is, are_ at home.
6. Ann and Sue _is, are_ at home.
7. Every boy and girl _is, are_ here.
8. A boy and a girl _is, are_ in the street.
9. The furniture in that room _is, are_ comfortable.
10. The chairs in that room _is, are_ comfortable.
11. The furniture in those rooms _is, are_ comfortable.
12. The chair, as well as the table, _is, are_ made of wood.
13. The chairs, as well as the table, _is, are_ made of wood.
14. The chair, as well as the tables, _is, are_ made of wood.
15. Eating vegetables _is, are_ good for you.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Subject–verb agreement: using expressions of quantity. (Chart 6-3)
  Directions: Choose the correct verb, singular or plural, for each subject.

1. Some of the road _is, are_ closed due to flooding.
2. Some of the roads _is, are_ closed due to flooding.
3. A lot of that movie _is, are_ full of violence.
4. A lot of movies _is, are_ full of violence.
5. Three-fourths of the pizza _has, have_ already been eaten.
6. Three-fourths of the pizzas _has, have_ already been eaten.
7. Most of the houses _was, were_ destroyed by fire.
8. Most of the house _was, were_ destroyed by fire.
9. One of the houses _was, were_ destroyed by fire.
10. Each of the houses _is, are_ in ruins.
11. Each house _is, are_ in ruins.
12. Every one of the houses _has, have_ serious damage.
13. Every house _has, have_ serious damage.
14. None of the houses _has, have_ escaped damage.
15. None of the city is, are safe at night.
16. None of the cities is, are safe at night.
17. The number of desks in that classroom is, are thirty-five.
18. A number of stores is, are closed today because of the holiday.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Subject-verb agreement: using there + be and some irregularities. (Charts 6-4 and 6-5)

Directions: Choose the correct verb, singular or plural, for each subject.

1. There is, are a cup on the table.
2. There is, are some cups on the table.
3. Why isn't, aren't there any windows in the classroom?
4. Why isn't, aren't there any chalk for the chalkboard?
5. States is, are political units.
6. The United States is, are in North America.
7. The news in that newspaper is, are biased.
8. Economics is, are an important area of study.
9. Diabetes is, are an illness. Mumps is, are another kind of illness. Rabies is, are a disease you can get from being bitten by an infected animal.
10. 100 meters isn't, aren't a long distance to travel by car.
11. Five minutes isn't, aren't too long to wait.
12. Six and four is, aren't too long to wait.
13. People is, are interesting.
14. English is, are a common language.
15. The English is, are friendly people.
16. The elderly in my country is, are given free medical care.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Subject-verb agreement. (Charts 6-2 → 6-5)

Directions: Choose the correct completion for each sentence.

1. Nearly 40 percent of the people in our town never votes, vote in local elections.
2. A number of students has, have participated in intensive language programs abroad.
3. The number of students who knew the answer to the last question on the exam was, were very low.
4. Every one of the boys and girls in the school knows, know what to do if the fire alarm rings.
5. Isn't, Aren't Portuguese spoken in Brazil?
6. A lot of Brazilians speaks and understands, speak and understand Spanish.
7. Why is, are the police standing over there?
8. Why does, do most of the television stations broadcast news at the same hour?
9. Some of the most important books for my report is, are not available in the school library.
10. There has, have been times when I have seriously considered dropping out of school.
11. Not one of the women in my office has, have received a promotion in the past two years.
   All of the promotions has, have gone to men.
12. The news on the radio and TV stations confirms, confirm that a serious storm is approaching our city.
13. Geography is, are fascinating. Mathematics is, are fascinating.
14. Mathematics and geography is, are my favorite subjects.
15. By law, every man, woman, and child is, are guaranteed the right to free speech.
16. Isn’t, Aren’t sugar and pineapple the leading crops in Hawaii?
17. Why is, are there a shortage of certified school teachers at the present time?
18. How many states in the United States begins, begin with the letter “A”?
19. The United States consists, consist of 50 states.
20. What places in the world has, have no snakes?
21. Politics is, are a constant source of interest to me.
22. Was, Were there ever any doubt in your mind about the outcome of the election?

*Look in the Answer Key for the answer to this question.
CHAPTER 7

Nouns

◊ PRACTICE 1. Final -s/-es. (Chapter 6 and Chart 7-1)
 Directions: Add final -s/-es where necessary. Do not change, add, or omit any other words in the sentences.

1. A bird care for its feather by cleaning them with its beak.

2. There are many occupation in the world. Doctor take care of sick people. Pilot fly airplane.

   Farmer raise crop. Shepherd herd sheep.

3. An architect design building. An archeologist dig in the ground to find object from past civilizations.

4. The first modern computer were developed in the 1930s and 1940s. Computer were not commercially available until the 1950s.

5. There are several factory in my hometown. The glass factory employ many people.

6. Kangaroo are Australian animal. They are not found on any of the other continent, except in zoo.

7. Mosquito are found everywhere in the world, including the Arctic.

8. At one time, many people believed that tomato were poisonous.

9. Bird, fish, insect, and mammal are different species. Each group of these life form shares physical characteristic.

10. Most of the creature in the world possess the five sense of sight, hearing, touch, taste, and smell. However, these sense are often more highly developed in one species than another.

   Bird have a highly developed sense of sight. For instance, an eagle can spot a small lizard from high in the air. The lizard would be undetectable by a human being from the same distance. Animal that hunt by following a trail on the ground may have poor eyesight but a keen sense of smell. For example, dog see a blurred, gray world because they are nearsighted and cannot see colors. However, they can smell thousands of times better than human being can.
**PRACTICE 2. Plural nouns. (Chart 7-1)**

*Directions: Write the plural form of each noun.*

1. foot ___________ 12. deer ___________
2. hero ___________ 13. ox ___________
3. knife ___________ 14. donkey ___________
4. quality ___________ 15. mystery ___________
5. doorway ___________ 16. chief ___________
6. gentleman ___________ 17. thief ___________
7. wolf ___________ 18. flash ___________
8. quiz ___________ 19. memo ___________
9. custom ___________ 20. memorandum ___________
10. video ___________ 21. crisis ___________
11. potato ___________ 22. mouth ___________

**PRACTICE 3. Irregular foreign plurals. (Chart 7-1)**

*Directions: Use the correct plural forms of the nouns in the list to complete the sentences. Use each word only once.*

| bacterium | datum | oasis |
| crisis | hypothesis | phenomenon |
| criterion | medium | stimulus |
| curriculum | memorandum | thesis |

1. Graduate students are often required to write long papers in which they state an opinion and give evidence to support it. These papers are often referred to as ___________.

2. Thunder and lightning are ___________ of nature.

3. Before the students began their chemistry experiments, they stated theories to explain what was going to happen in their experiments. In other words, they made ___________.

4. The government of that country is unstable. The country has faced many political ___________ in the last ten years. It has had to face one problem after another.

5. The office supervisor, Ms. Hall, is well known for the large number of ___________ she sends to her staff. She believes it is necessary to write many notes to remind the staff of things that need to be taken care of.

Nouns 47
6. The mass _____________ include radio, television, newspapers, magazines, and the Internet.

7. The teacher wanted to make sure the students understood the standards by which she would make her judgments. She carefully explained the _____________ she would use to judge the students’ work.

8. All of the departments at the university provide descriptions of their _____________ in the school catalog. Look there to find out what courses each department offers.

9. Certain factors cause plants to grow. These _____________ are light, water, and fertile soil.

10. Very small living things that can cause disease are called germs. Germs are forms of _____________.

11. In a desert, there are places where water is available and a few plants grow. These areas are called ___________.

12. The researcher assembled numerous facts through months of investigation. She used the _____________ she had gathered to write a report for a scientific journal.*

◊ PRACTICE 4. Possessive nouns. (Chart 7-2)
Directions: Make the italicized nouns possessive by adding apostrophes and final -s/-es.

1. He put the mail in the secretary’s mailbox.

2. There are three secretaries in our office. The secretary’s mailboxes are in the hallway.

3. Tom has two cats. The cat’s food and water dishes are on a shelf in the laundry room.

4. I have one cat. My cat’s feet are white, but the rest of her is black.

5. My child’s name is Olaf.

6. Their children’s names are Pablo and Gabriella.

7. My supervisor’s names are Ms. Anderson and Mr. Gomez.

8. Your supervisor’s name is Mrs. Wright.

9. I’m interested in other people’s ideas.

10. This month’s issue of that magazine has several interesting articles.

*In very formal English, data is considered plural, but more typically it is used as a singular noncount noun. Typical use: This data is not correct. Formal use: These data are not correct.
11. All of the performers in the play did well. The audience applauded the actor's excellent performances.

12. An actor's income is uncertain.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Using apostrophes. (Charts 7-2 and 8-1)

Directions: Add apostrophes as necessary to mark a possessive noun or a contraction with a pronoun.

1. Mary's father works at the Northgate Medical Center. He's a dentist.

2. Jack's parents live in Georgia. His parents' home is in Atlanta.

3. Our teachers' last name is Wells. She's one of the best teachers in the school.

4. Our teachers' last names are Wells, Hunt, and Moore. They're all good teachers.

5. Ms. Wells' husband is also a teacher. Ms. Hunt's husband is an engineer.

6. Its well known that a bear likes sweet food. Its favorite food is honey.

7. Anna's telephone number is 555-8989. Ours is 555-8998. People often confuse hers with ours, so we get frequent calls for her.

8. The tiger is a beautiful animal. Its coat is orange and white with black stripes. Although its found in the wild only in Asia, people throughout the world appreciate its beauty and power. Even though tigers are protected by laws, many scientists predict their extinction within twenty to thirty years. How much poorer our children's and grandchildren's lives will be when the earth no longer has a place for tigers, elephants, wolves, and numerous other animals whose fates rely upon the wisdom and compassion of humankind.

◇ PRACTICE 6. Using nouns as modifiers. (Chart 7-3)

PART I. Complete the sentences with the nouns in the parentheses. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate.

1. They sell toys at that store. It is a toy store. (toy)

2. I like tomato salads. I like salads that contain tomato. (tomato)

3. I have a vegetable garden. I grow many different kinds of vegetable. (vegetable)

4. Some people are addicted to drugs. They are drug addicts. (drug)

5. (two + lane) We drove down an old, narrow highway that had only two lanes.

We drove down a two-lane highway.

6. (five + minute) I gave a five-minute speech in class. My speech lasted for five minutes.
7. (sixty + year + old) The Watkins live in a _________________ house. Any house that is _________________ usually needs a lot of repairs.

PART II. Complete the sentences, using the italicized noun as a modifier.

8. That handbook is for students. It is a _________________ student handbook.

9. Their baby is ten months old. They have a _________________

10. Our trip lasted for three days. We took a _________________

11. She is a psychologist for children. She is a _________________

12. I wrote a check for fifty dollars. I wrote a _________________

13. I will get three credits for that course. It is a _________________

14. Their house has nine rooms. It is a _________________

15. That food is for dogs. It is _________________

16. That room is for guests. It is a _________________

17. The professor asked us to write a paper of five pages. She asked us to write a _________________

18. I have a sister who is ten years old and a brother who is twelve years old. I have a _________________

◇ PRACTICE 7. Using nouns as modifiers. (Chart 7-3)

Directions: What do you call the following?

1. someone who robs banks → a bank robber

2. someone who fights bulls → a bullfighter *

3. someone who collects stamps → a stamp collector **

4. someone who trains animals

5. someone who tells stories*

6. someone who collects taxes**

7. something that opens cans

8. something that wipes a windshield

*Usually spelled as one word.
**Spelled with -or instead of -er.
9. someone who earns wages
10. someone who manages an office
11. someone who programs computers
12. someone who keeps books*
13. something that removes spots
14. something that holds pots
15. someone who makes trouble*
16. someone who reads minds
17. something that dries hair
18. something that peels potatoes
19. someone who plays tennis
20. someone who fights fires*
21. someone who carries mail

◊ PRACTICE 8. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 7-4 → 7-6)
Directions: Add final -s/-es to the italicized noun if necessary. Do not add, omit, or change any other words.

(no change)
1. Jackie has brown hair and gray eyes.
2. My parents gave me some good advice.
3. I always drink water when I’m hot and thirsty.
4. We ate some sandwich for lunch.
5. A gambler needs a lot of luck.
6. I have a lot of homework to do tonight.
7. Maria took some good photographs at the wedding party.
8. Our country has made a lot of progress in the last 25 years.
9. That book has a lot of good ideas.
10. An encyclopedia contains a lot of information.
11. I’ve learned a lot of new vocabulary.

*Usually spelled as one word.
13. Every day, I learn some more new word in English.

14. Pioneer women had a lot of courage.

15. We bought some new clothing.

16. I bought a pair of leather glove.

17. At rush hour there are a lot of car on the highway. Although normally it takes us twenty minute to drive from home to work, at rush hour it can take an hour because of the heavy traffic.

18. Ann likes to wear jewelry. Today she is wearing four ring, six bracelet, and a necklace.

19. I had meat, rice, vegetable, and some tea for dinner.

20. Butterfly begin as caterpillar and then are transformed into beautiful insect with vividly colored wing.

21. Traveling can impart a great deal of education as well as enjoyment. When people travel to another country, they can learn about its history, economy, and architecture, as well as become acquainted with its various custom.

22. Although everyone believed the accused man was guilty of murder, he was acquitted. The prosecuting attorney did not have enough evidence to convict him, nor even any proof that he had been able to enter the murdered man’s house.

23. You need more calcium in your diet, Mrs. Abbott. It is found in milk and milk product, in dark green vegetable such as broccoli, and in fish such as sardine. You need vitamin, too. Do you take vitamin pill?

24. Last night we heard about a new political crisis in our country. Do you have any more information about it? Are there any reports of violence? We’ve heard a lot of rumors about what may be happening, but we’re anxious to know the truth. We need fact, not gossip.

25. We received a postcard from Melissa today. She’s on vacation in the country, staying in a two-hundred-year-old inn. She says that the area has fantastic scenery and a wonderful golf course. She’s having a lot of fun.
1. ___ lightning is ___ flash of light. It is usually followed by ___ thunder.

2. Last night we had ___ terrible storm. Our children were frightened by ___ thunder.

3. ___ circles are ___ round geometric figures.

4. ___ circle with ___ slash drawn through it is an international symbol meaning “Do not do this!” For example, ___ circle in ___ illustration means “No Smoking.”

5. ___ milk I put on my cereal this morning was sour because someone forgot to put it in ___ refrigerator after dinner last night.

6. ___ milk is an important source ___ of protein and ___ calcium.

7. ___ wisdom comes more from ___ understanding than from ___ knowledge.

8. I always appreciate ___ wisdom of my mother’s advice.

9. In class yesterday, I sat next to two women. ___ woman on my right had ___ right answer to ___ teacher’s question about verb forms.

10. Maria is ___ independent young woman who knows her own mind.

11. Have you met Mr. and Mrs. Smith? Mrs. Smith used to be ___ teacher, but now she is ___ computer programmer. Mr. Smith is ___ architect. The Smiths used to live in ___ apartment, but recently they have built ___ house.

12. Frank Lloyd Wright is ___ name of ___ famous architect. He is ___ architect who designed the Guggenheim Museum in New York. He also designed ___ hotel in Tokyo. ___ hotel was designed to withstand ___ earthquakes.

13. According to today’s paper, the mayor has appointed ___ committee to study what improvements need to be made in the city. ___ committee, which plans to continue its study through the rest of this year, will discuss ___ following proposals: (1) to build ___ new sewage disposal plant and (2) to create ___ new park. In ___ present proposal, ___ new park would have ___ swimming pool.

14. The large oak tree growing at ___ southeast corner of Vine Avenue and Pine Street has been ___ landmark since pioneer days. Unfortunately, it was shattered by ___ bolt of lightning during the thunderstorm last night.
15. My uncle’s hobby is restoring ______ old cars. Right now he’s working on ______ 1922 automobile. It’s ______ antique car and has great value.

16. My aunt’s new car has ______ power windows, ______ cassette player, and ______ multi-adjustable driver’s seat.

17. Patty is my ten-year old daughter. She likes to play ______ jokes on people. Yesterday she put ______ frog into ______ lunchbox she saw sitting on ______ table in ______ school lunchroom.

18. Long-term exposure to ______ sun between 10 A.M. and 3 P.M. can be harmful. ______ person’s skin will eventually become wrinkled and more susceptible to ______ cancer.

19. Yesterday I locked my keys in my car. Using ______ coat hanger, I tried to reach ______ lock inside ______ window next to ______ driver’s seat, but I couldn’t get ______ door to unlock. I thought about calling ______ police, but finally decided to call my wife. I suggested she take ______ taxi and bring her keys to open ______ car for me.

20. We flew to Dallas and then rented ______ car. On ______ second day we had ______ car, it wouldn’t start, so the rental agency provided us with another one.

21. Mary is wearing ______ beautiful ring today. It is made of ______ gold and ______ rubies. ______ gold in her ring was mined in Canada. ______ rubies came from Burma.

22. One of the first things you need to do when you move to ______ new city is to find ______ place to live. Most ______ newspapers carry ______ advertisements (called “want ads”) for ______ apartments that are for rent. If you find ______ ad for ______ furnished apartment, ______ apartment will probably contain ______ stove and ______ refrigerator. It will also probably have ______ furniture such as ______ beds, ______ tables, chairs, and maybe ______ sofa.

23. My wife and I have recently moved to this city. Since we’re going to be here for only ______ short time, we’re renting ______ furnished apartment. We decided that we didn’t want to bring our own furniture with us. ______ apartment is in ______ good location, but that’s about the only good thing I can say about it. Only one burner on ______ stove works. ______ refrigerator is noisy, and ______ refrigerator door won’t stay closed unless we tape it shut. ______ bed sags in the middle and creaks. All of the rest of ______ furniture is old and decrepit too. Nevertheless, we’re still enjoying living in this city. We may have to look for ______ another apartment, however.

24. This sentence is ______ last sentence in this exercise. This is ______ end of the exercise.
PRACTICE 10. Expressions of quantity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with much or many. Give the plural forms of the nouns as necessary. Choose the correct singular or plural verb as necessary.

1. How _______ watch es____ does the average person own?
2. How _______ jewelry ______ do you usually wear?
3. How _______ tooth ______ teeth_________ do babies usually have when they’re born?
4. How _______ bread ______ is \ are there in the bread drawer?
5. I don’t know __________ American slang __________.
6. Tending young children takes too __________ patience __________ for me. I’m better at spending time with young adults.
7. How __________ video __________ do you usually rent during a month?
8. My hair is all frizzy today. There is \ are __________ humidity __________ in the air.
9. The lawyers interviewed __________ witness __________ to the crime.
10. I haven’t done __________ traveling __________ in the last few years.
11. We visited __________ village __________ on our trek that were without running water.
12. They didn’t have __________ fun __________ when they were children because they were forced to work from sunup to sundown.
13. Pedro hasn’t made __________ progress __________ in improving his English because he speaks Spanish with his friends all day long.
14. Our cat is old and lazy. He doesn’t catch __________ mouse __________.
15. There isn’t \ aren’t __________ news __________ in the paper this morning about the hurricane in Costa Rica.
16. Captain Cook had __________ adventure __________ during his sailing trips.
17. There was \ were so __________ smog __________ in Los Angeles yesterday that you couldn’t see any of the hills or mountains from the city.
18. I didn’t know __________ grammar __________ before taking this course. I’m not familiar with __________ grammar textbook __________.
19. The streets in the downtown area of my city are no longer safe. There is \ are too __________ car thief __________, mugger __________, and pickpocket __________.
20. There isn’t \ aren’t __________ information __________ of __________ importance in some daily newspapers.
21. How ___________ active volcano ___________ is \ are there in the world today?

22. Politicians give ___________ speech ___________ during their careers.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Using a few/\ few; a little/\ little. (Chart 7-10)
Directions: Without substantially changing the meaning of the sentences, replace the italicized words with a few, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.

1. I think that some lemon juice in a salad makes it taste better.

2. Many people have graduate degrees, but not many people have more than two graduate degrees.

3. You might reach your goal if you put forth some more effort.

4. Even though the mountain is very steep and the climb is hazardous, several strong-willed people have managed to reach the top.

5. The number of people in the world who are willing to risk their lives climbing a dangerous mountain is small. Not very many people will actually face death to climb a mountain.

6. The professor lectured very clearly. As a result not many students had questions at the end of the class period.

7. I have to go to the post office because I have some letters to mail.

8. Every day Max goes to his mailbox, but it is usually empty. He gets not much mail.

9. My friend arrived in the United States several months ago.

10. I think you could use some help. Let me give you some advice.

11. Not many days ago I met a very interesting person.

12. Margaret likes sweet tea. She usually adds some honey to her tea. Sometimes she adds some milk, too.

13. Has anyone ever called you on the phone and tried to sell you something you didn’t want?
   I have not much patience with people who interrupt my dinner to try to sell me a magazine.

14. He’s a lucky little boy. Because his parents have taken good care of him, he has had not many problems in his young life.

◊ PRACTICE 12. Using of in expressions of quantity. (Charts 7-11 and 7-12)
Directions: Add of or write \ in the blanks.

1. When I went shopping yesterday, there were several __ of jackets in my size.

2. Several __ of the jackets were made of 100 percent wool.

3. Many ______ students work part-time while they are attending school.
4. Many _____ my classmates have part-time jobs.
5. Some _____ dairy products are high in cholesterol.
6. Some _____ my favorite kinds of food are not good for me to eat.
7. The teacher didn’t fail any _____ the students in his class.
8. Any _____ passengers who have first-class tickets can board the plane first.
9. I picked a few _____ flowers from my garden and made a bouquet.
10. A few _____ the flowers in the bouquet have already wilted.
11. Everyone needs a little _____ luck in life.
12. Most _____ babies learn to walk before their first birthday.
13. Our company imports products from abroad. Most _____ these new products are testmarketed in selected cities.
14. Most _____ people enjoy picnics.
15. Some _____ the people we want to invite for our anniversary dinner will be on vacation.
16. Not all _____ trees lose their leaves in winter.
17. All _____ deciduous trees lose their leaves during the cold part of the year, whereas evergreen trees do not.
18. All _____ the trees in that orchard have been sprayed with pesticides.
20. Both _____ women are talented in music and drama.
21. The concert was delayed because two _____ the musicians had left their instruments on the bus.
22. A trio consists of three _____ musicians.
23. I have two _____ sisters and three _____ brothers.
24. Two _____ my brothers live in St. Louis.
25. A hundred _____ people bought tickets to the lecture.
26. Two hundred _____ people came to the public meeting.
27. Hundreds _____ people visit the Lincoln Memorial every day.
28. A thousand _____ years ago, the power of electricity had not been discovered.
29. Three thousand _____ years ago, the number of planets in our solar system was unknown.
30. Thousands _____ years ago, the wheel was invented.

◊ PRACTICE 13. Using one, each, every. (Chart 7-13)

Directions: Choose the correct word in italics.

1. Each student, students in the class is required to take the final examination.
2. Each of the student, students in the class is required to take the final examination.
3. Every one of the room, rooms in our apartment has at least one window.
4. There is at least one window in every room, rooms in our apartment.
5. My bedroom has only one, very small window, windows.
6. One of the smallest window, windows in our apartment is in my bedroom.
7. When John bought some supplies at the hardware store, he thought the total amount on the bill was incorrect, so he checked each item, items on his bill very carefully.
8. Each of the item, items on the bill was correct.
9. Alex took an extended vacation in northern Europe last summer. Sweden was one of the country, countries he visited when he was in Scandinavia.
10. Susan has traveled widely, but she has visited only one Scandinavian country, countries.
11. Tom believes that there are no strangers. He views each person, people in the world as a friend he hasn’t met yet.
12. I answered every question, questions on the examination. I didn’t skip any.
13. Each one of the child, children in the class was given a piece of paper and a crayon. Each child, children drew a picture.
14. Hunger is one of the biggest problem, problems in the world today.
15. Each of the applicant, applicants for the scholarship is required to furnish five references (that is, names of people who are willing to write letters of recommendation).
CHAPTER 8
Pronouns

◊ PRACTICE 1. Personal pronouns. (Chart 8-1)
Directions: Choose the correct pronoun in italics.

1. Please take these papers and give is, them to Mike.
2. Tom asked Ann and I, me about the new theater.
3. Janice and I, me live in an apartment.
4. Just between you and I, me, I think Tom is going to lose him, his job.
5. When a player committed a foul, the referee blew him, his whistle and pointed at she, her.
6. A boa constrictor, which is a very large snake, kills its, it’s victims by strangling it, them.
7. People can easily send a letter to another city. It, They simply have to drop it, them into a collection box.
8. The teacher said to the students, “Throughout the semester, please write your, yours compositions on every other line, and be sure to write it, them in ink.”
9. Both Ron and I, me are expecting some mail. Are those letters for he, him or I, me?
10. My, Mine roommate and I, me have to share a bookshelf. She, Her keeps her, hers books on the top two shelves, and I keep my, mine on the bottom two shelves.
11. A monkey spends most of its, it’s time in trees.
12. I studied English when I was in high school. But I haven’t studied it, them since I graduated from high school ten years ago, so I’ve forgotten a lot of it, them.
13. I looked everywhere in my room for my keys, but I couldn’t find it, them.
14. After work, Mr. Gray asked to speak to Tim and I, me about the company’s new policies. He explained it, them to we, us and asked for our, ours opinions.
15. The first person I saw when I got off the plane was my sister. My father and she, her had come to the airport to greet I, me. My father was waiting for we, us in his, him car outside the airport.
PRACTICE 2. Pronoun agreement. (Charts 8-2 and 8-3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with pronouns. In some of the blanks there is more than one possibility. Choose the appropriate singular or plural verb in parentheses where necessary.

1. A student should always hand in __his/her; his or her; his; her__ work on time.

2. Students should always hand in __their__ work on time.

3. Teachers determine ____________ students’ course of study.

4. A teacher determines ____________ students’ course of study.

5. Each student is expected to hand in ____________ work on time.

6. All students are expected to hand in ____________ work on time.

7. If someone calls, please ask ____________ to leave a message.

8. Somebody left ____________ raincoat in the classroom.

9. The flight crew on our long plane trip were very attentive. ____________ efforts to make us comfortable were greatly appreciated.

10. My family is wonderful. ____________ (has, have) always helped me in any way ____________ could.

11. The crowd enjoyed the game. ____________ got excited whenever the home team scored.

12. The crowd at the last concert broke attendance records. ____________ (was, were) the largest audience ever to have been in that stadium to listen to a rock concert.

PRACTICE 3. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 8-4)
Directions: Complete the sentences by using appropriate reflexive pronouns.

1. John overslept and missed his plane to San Francisco. He was angry at ____________ for not checking his alarm clock before going to bed.

2. I was a stranger at the party. I stood alone for a while, then walked over to an interesting-looking person and introduced ____________.

3. Jason has only ____________ to blame for the mistake he made.

4. Sue, please help ____________ to some more cake. And would you like some more coffee?

5. All of you who are successful Olympic athletes should be very proud of ____________. Your achievements inspire people all over the world.

6. The math team from our high school won the state competition. They should pat ____________ on the back for a job well done.
7. When I was younger, I would get embarrassed by my mistakes. Now I am more relaxed and have found it is easier to laugh at ________________.

8. Children need to learn to rely upon ________________.

9. My father always told me to handle my problems ________________ and not to expect others to solve them for me.

10. The little girl lost her teddy bear in the park. She tried to be brave, but at bedtime she cried ________________ to sleep.

11. Edward lived a lonely life as a young boy. With no one to play with, he would often sit on the front steps talking to ________________ or to an imaginary friend.

12. What delicious cheesecake, Amelia! Did you make this ________________?

13. Whenever we have problems in life, we have to be careful not to waste too much time feeling sorry for ________________.

14. After a busy day at work, I always enjoy a little time by ________________.

15. Fred wanted to be able to do something unusual, so he taught ________________ to drink a glass of water while standing on his head.

16. I can't help you, Bob. You'll have to solve your problem by ________________.

17. Jane did not join the rest of us. She sat in the back of the room by ________________.

18. You may think Stan is telling the truth, but I ________________ don't believe him.

19. It is important for all of us to be honest with ________________.

20. Now that their children are grown, Mr. and Mrs. Grayson live by ________________.

21. You ________________ have to make a decision, Ann. No one can make it for you.

22. I don't know what to tell you, Sue and Jack. You will have to take care of that problem ________________.

23. When everybody else forgot his birthday, Ralph decided to give ________________ a birthday present. He bought a new shirt for ________________.
**PRACTICE 4. Pronoun agreement. (Charts 8-1 → 8-5)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with appropriate pronouns. Choose the correct words in *italics* as necessary.

1. We should ask _______ourselves____ if _______ we are____ (is, are) doing everything in _______our____ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

2. Each of you should ask ________________ if ________________ (is, are) doing everything in ________________ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

3. All of you should ask ________________ if ________________ (is, are) doing everything in ________________ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

4. People should ask ________________ if ________________ (is, are) doing everything in ________________ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

5. One should ask ________________ if ________________ (is, are) doing everything in ________________ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

6. Everyone should ask ________________ if ________________ (is, are) doing everything in ________________ power in order to solve the problem of hunger in the world.

---

**PRACTICE 5. Forms of other. (Chart 8-7)**

*Directions:* Use a form of *other* to complete the sentences.

1. I had a red pen, but I seem to have lost it. I guess I'd better buy __another____ one.

2. Some people are lazy. ________________ are energetic. Most people are a mixture of both.

3. Two countries share the island of Hispaniola. One is Haiti. ________________ is the Dominican Republic.


5. Only two countries in South America, Bolivia and Paraguay, are inland. All of ________________ ________________ have coastlines.

6. Washington is one of the five states of the United States with borders on the Pacific Ocean. What are ________________ states?*

7. A successful harvest depends largely on the weather. In some years, there is an abundant harvest. In ________________ years, the harvest is lean, especially when there is a drought.

---

*Look in the Answer Key for the answer to this question.*
8. I enjoyed watching everyone at the beach. Some people were playing volleyball, while __________ were picnicking. Some were listening to music, some were sleeping, and __________ were just lying in the sun. __________ people were swimming in the surf.

9. I’ll be finished with this report soon. Give me __________ twenty minutes and I’ll be ready to go with you.

10. Ali has been here studying for almost three years. In __________ six months he will have his degree and return to his country.

11. Only three of the forty-two applicants for the job possess the necessary qualifications. None of __________ will be considered.

12. I work for Mr. Anderson every __________ Saturday. I help him with chores around his house.

13. Scandinavia consists of four countries. One is Denmark. __________ are Finland, Norway, and Sweden.

14. Budapest, Hungary, is actually two cities. On one side of the Danube River lies Buda, and directly across from it, on __________ side of the river, lies Pest.

15. Most of the candidates who will take the qualifying examination in May will probably pass the first time. __________ will have __________ chance next month.

16. Some people like to take vacations in the mountains. __________ prefer the seashore. Some people like to drive from place to place; __________ people prefer to get to their destinations as quickly as possible. Although many people like to travel on their vacations, many __________ prefer to just stay at home.

17. The Wolcott twins are identical. In __________ words, they look alike. But they also think alike. Sometimes when one begins a sentence, __________ one finishes it.

18. One of the most important inventions in the history of the world was the printing press. __________ was the electric light. __________ were the telephone, the television, and the computer.

19. To avoid competitive disadvantages, professional boxers are classified by weight groups. There are over a dozen different weight classes. One is called the flyweight group. __________ are the featherweight, middleweight, and heavyweight groups.

20. The committee meets every __________ Monday.

21. Joe and Frank, detectives in the police department, work as a team. They work well with each __________.
22. The car I bought last year has turned out to be a real lemon! I'll never buy ________ one of the same make.

23. My report is due today, but I need ____________ two days to finish it.

24. Some babies begin talking as early as six months; ____________ don't speak until they are more than two years old.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 → 8)

Directions: Correct the mistakes.

Potatoes

Potato are grown in most country. They are one of the most widely grown vegetable in the world. They are very versatile; they can be prepared in many different way. French fry are popular almost everywhere. Besides frying it, potato can be baked or boiled. The other way people use potatoes is to make potato flour for making bread and another kinds of dishes. Its also possible to make alcoholic beverages from potato. There are still others ways potatoes are used by commerical food processor to make product such as potato chip and freeze-dried potato.

Potato originated in South America, where it were cultivated by the Incas as early as 5000 year ago. It is believed that potatoes were the worlds first freeze-dried food. Over 4000 years ago the Incas carried his harvested potato up into the mountains and spread them on the ground to freeze overnight. After the sun came up and heated the potatoes the next day, the Incas squeezed the water out of the potatoes by stepping on it. This process were repeated for four or five day until almost all the moisture was gone from the potatoes. The Incas then dried the potatoes and stored it in pot. Some Indians of South America still does this today.
PRACTICE 7. Test A: Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 → 8)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: I don't get ______.
A. many mail B. much mail C. many mails D. much mails

1. The science classes at this ______ difficult.
A. schools are B. school is C. school are D. school's is

2. One of the ______ from Italy.
A. student is B. students are C. student are D. students is

3. ______ to support the case against James?
A. Is there any proof C. Is there any proofs
B. Are there any proof D. Are there any proofs

4. You have to pay extra if you take too ______ with you.
A. much luggages B. many luggages C. much luggage D. many luggage

5. ______ in your class have tickets for the lecture series?
A. Do any of the student C. Do any of the students
B. Does any of the student D. Does any of the students

6. Bob got fired. It's going to be difficult for him to find ______ job.
A. other B. another C. the other D. the another

7. There ______ available in his area of specialization.
A. isn't a lot of job C. isn't a lot of jobs
B. aren't a lot of jobs D. aren't a lot of job

8. He made the soup by mixing ______ meat with some rice.
A. little B. few C. a little D. a few

9. Many of the ______ not expect to win.
A. participants in the race do C. participants in the race does
B. participant in the races does D. participant in the race does

10. The English ______ strong traditions.
A. has many B. have much C. have many D. has much

11. ______ moved to that city recently.
A. A number of Vietnamese have C. The number of Vietnamese has
B. A number of Vietnamese has D. The number of Vietnamese have

12. Each of the reference ______ available in the school library.
A. books on that list is C. book on that list is
B. books on that list are D. book on that list are

13. Several ______ sleeping under the tree.
A. of lions were B. lion was C. of the lions was D. lions were
14. Many of the ______ not used today. They are remnants of the past.
   A. railroad tracks around here are  
   B. railroad’s tracks around here is  
   C. railroads tracks around here is  
   D. railroads’ tracks around here are

15. As we walked through the jungle, the ______ unusually quiet.
   A. monkeys were  
   B. monkeys was  
   C. monkies were  
   D. monkies was

16. At the news conference, several reporters didn’t get clear answers to ______ questions.
   A. theirs  
   B. their  
   C. his and hers  
   D. his and her

17. I have a ______ sister.
   A. seven years old  
   B. seven-years-old  
   C. seven-year-old  
   D. seven years olds

18. There ______ in the world today.
   A. is many new computer company  
   B. is many new computer companies  
   C. are many new computers companies  
   D. are many new computer companies

19. Self-esteem is important. It’s important for people to like ______.
   A. oneself  
   B. yourself  
   C. him/herself  
   D. themselves

20. What ______ you used in picking a winner in the art contest?
   A. is the criteria  
   B. are the criteria  
   C. are the criterion  
   D. are the criterions
PRACTICE 8. Test B: Nouns and pronouns. (Chapters 6 - 8)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: I don't get ___ B __.
A. many mail       B. much mail       C. many mails       D. much mails

1. One of the dinner _____ broken.
A. plate is       B. plates are       C. plates is       D. plate are

2. Most _____ hard.
A. of students work   B. students work   C. student works   D. of student works

A. a little       B. little       C. a few       D. few

4. All of the athletes who took part in the international games should be very proud of _____.
A. himself       B. oneself       C. themselves       D. yourselves

5. Snow and rain _____ of nature.
A. are phenomenon   B. are phenomena   C. is phenomena   D. is phenomenon

6. I accidentally broke the _____ by stepping on it. I apologized to them for my carelessness.
A. child's toy   B. child's toys   C. children's toy   D. children's toys

7. Our weather is cloudy in the winter. We don't have _____.
A. many sunshines   B. many sunshine   C. much sunshines   D. much sunshine

8. Several of my friends are _____ reporters.
A. newspaper       B. newspapers       C. newspaper's       D. newspapers'

9. Construction workers need _____ to build a highway.
A. an heavy equipment       C. heavy equipments
B. a heavy equipment       D. heavy equipment

10. Our classroom is supplied with _____.
A. plenty of chalks   B. plenty of chalk   C. several chalks   D. several chalk

11. Knowing several _____ helpful if you work for an international corporation.
A. languages are   B. language is   C. languages is   D. language are

12. Two-thirds of my _____ from the Middle East.
A. classmates is   B. classmate are   C. classmate is   D. classmates are

13. There _____ in my country.
A. are a lot of problem   C. is a lot of problems
B. are a lot of problems   D. is a lot of problem

14. Winning a lottery is a rare occurrence. _____ very small.
A. A number of winners is   C. A number of winners are
B. The number of winners is   D. The number of winners are
15. There are several means of mass communication. The newspaper is one. Television is _______.
   A. other  B. the other  C. another  D. the another

16. Each of the ______ own cage.
   A. birds has their  B. bird has its  C. birds have their  D. birds has its

17. I really need _______. Can we talk?
   A. some advice  B. an advice  C. some advices  D. advices

18. Every ______ a license plate.
   A. cars have  B. cars has  C. car has  D. car have

19. The swimming team has done well this year. All of ______ have trained very hard.
   A. their members  B. its members  C. it's members  D. theirs members

20. Next week, we're going to take a _______.
   A. three day trips  B. three-day trip  C. three days trip  D. three days' trip
CHAPTER 9
Modals, Part 1

◊ PRACTICE 1. Verb forms with modal auxiliaries. (Chart 9-1)
Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Mary can _____ to the meeting.
   A. comes  B. to come  C. come

2. Jack should _____ harder.
   A. studies  B. to study  C. study

3. The whole team must _____ together in order to win the game.
   A. worked  B. to work  C. work

4. We ought _____ before we drop in on Peter and Marcia. They may be busy.
   A. called  B. to call  C. call

5. Paul can _____ Chinese very well because he studied it for six years.
   A. speaks  B. to speak  C. speak

6. May I _____ you?
   A. can help  B. to help  C. help

7. The construction crew might _____ the bridge in time for the holiday traffic.
   A. finished  B. to finish  C. finish

8. We had better _____ an umbrella when we go out. It looks like it's going to rain.
   A. taken  B. to take  C. take

9. I couldn’t _____ that book because I didn’t take any money with me.
   A. bought  B. to buy  C. buy

10. The children should _____ “thank you” when you gave them their gifts.
    A. has said  B. to have said  C. have said

11. Tom could _____ us to help him move.
    A. had asked  B. to have asked  C. have asked

12. I can’t find the grocery list. Gail must _____ it with her when she went out.
    A. has taken  B. to have taken  C. have taken
PRACTICE 2. Making polite requests. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)

Directions: Change the sentences into polite requests using the words in parentheses.

1. I want you to hand me that book. *(would)*
   → Would you *(please)* hand me that book?
2. I want you to give me some advice about buying a computer. *(could)*
3. I want to borrow your wheelbarrow. *(could)*
4. I want to have a cup of coffee. *(may)*
5. I want to use your bicycle tomorrow. *(can)*
6. I want you to read over my composition for spelling errors. *(would)*
7. I want you to open the door for me. *(would you mind)*
8. I want to leave early. *(would you mind)*

PRACTICE 3. Using *would you mind*. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Using the verb in parentheses, fill in the blank either with *if I* + PAST tense or with the *-ing* form of the verb, as appropriate.

1. A: It’s cold in here. *Would you mind* *(close)* ___closing___ the window?
   B: Not at all. I’d be glad to.
2. A: It’s cold in here. *Would you mind* *(close)* ___if I closed___ the window?
   B: Not at all. Go right ahead. I think it’s cold in here, too.
3. A: *Would you mind* *(take)* ___________ the book back to the library for me?
   B: Not at all.
4. A: This story you wrote is really good. *Would you mind* *(show)* ___________ it to my English teacher?
   B: Go right ahead. That’d be fine.
   B: I’d be happy to.
6. A: I’m feeling kind of tired and worn out. This heavy work in the hot sun is hard on me. *Would you mind* *(finish)* ___________ the work yourself?
   B: No problem, Grandpa. Why don’t you go in and rest? I’ll finish it up.
7. A: *Would you mind* *(use)* ___________ your name as a reference on this job application?
   B: Not at all. In fact, ask them to call me.
8. A: Would you mind *wait* __________ here for just a minute? I need to run back to the classroom. I forgot my notebook.

B: Sure. Go ahead. I’ll wait right here.

9. A: I need to look up the meaning of the word “stationery.” Would you mind *borrow* __________ your dictionary?

B: No, I don’t mind. I’m not using it right now.

10. A: Since this is the first time you’ve owned a computer, would you mind *give* __________ you some advice?

B: Not at all. I’d appreciate it.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Must (not) and (do not) have to. (Charts 9-5 and 9-6)

Directions: Choose the correct completion according to the meaning.

1. Soldiers __B__ disobey a superior officer.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

2. To stay alive, people ______ breathe oxygen.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

3. You ______ finish your work on this project before you go on vacation. You’ll probably lose your job if you don’t.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

4. If you have an aquarium, you ______ give your tropical fish too much food or they’ll die.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

5. To be a successful mountain climber, you ______ have a great deal of stamina.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

6. Thank goodness we ______ eat fish again tonight. Dad didn’t catch any today.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

8. My room is a mess, but I ______ clean it before I go out tonight. I can do it in the morning.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

9. We really ______ help Marge move to her new apartment over the weekend. Not only is it too difficult for one person, but she still has her arm in a sling from her shoulder sprain a week ago.
   A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to

10. Bill is in the darkroom developing the negatives of the photos he took on his last trip to Peru. You ______ open the door while he’s there because the light will ruin the pictures.
    A. must/have to    B. must not    C. don’t have to
PRACTICE 5. Verb form review: have to. (Charts 9-5 and 9-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate form of have to. Include any words in parentheses.

1. A: (you) ______ do you have to ______ leave so early?
   B: I'm afraid I do. I have some work I ______ have to ______ finish before I go to bed tonight.

2. Last night Jack ______ had to ______ go to a meeting. (you) Did you have to ______ go to the meeting last night too?

3. Joan travels to the Soviet Union frequently. Luckily, she speaks Russian, so she (not) ______ rely on an interpreter when she's there.

4. I (not) ______ water the garden later today. Joe has agreed to do it for me.

5. I ______ write three term papers since the beginning of the semester.

6. Why (Tom) ______ leave work early yesterday?

7. I found some milk in the refrigerator, so we (not) ______ go to the store after all. There is plenty.

8. (John) ______ buy a round-trip ticket when he went to Egypt?

9. Matt is nearsighted. He ______ wear glasses ever since he was ten years old.

10. By the time this week is finished, I ______ take eight examinations in five days. The life of a student isn't easy!

11. (you, not) ______ return these books to the library today? Aren't they due?

12. If Jean stays in Brazil much longer, she ______ teach English part-time so that she'll have enough money to support herself. (she) ______ apply for a special work visa? Or can she work part-time on a student visa?

13. Because it was Emily's birthday yesterday, she (not) ______ do any of her regular chores, and her mother let her choose anything she wanted to eat for dinner.

14. When I arrived in Rome last week, I was looking forward to practicing my Italian. I'm disappointed because I (not) ______ speak Italian very much since I got here. Everyone keeps talking to me in English.
PRACTICE 6. Should, ought to, had better. (Charts 9-7 and 9-8)

Directions: Give advice to the people in the following situations. Use should, ought to, or had better. Choose from the suggested completions in the list, or use your own words.

| call home and talk to his family |
| change clothes before he goes    |
| clean it up right away           |
| find a chemistry major to tutor her |
| get his roommate a pair of earphones |
| ✔ join some clubs to meet people with similar interests |
| listen to Tom before he fired him |
| make her own decisions about her career and go to architecture school |
| not eat so much                   |
| not leave the room; apologize immediately; signal to a waiter for help |
| stop for gas                      |
| take it back sooner               |

1. Ann would like to make some new friends. → I think she should/ought to join some clubs to meet people with similar interests.

2. Ellen is having a lot of trouble in her chemistry class. She’s failed the last two tests.

3. You didn’t stop for gas, and then you ran out of gas on the highway.

4. Sam and Tim, both teenagers, have messed up the house, and their parents are coming home soon.

5. You had to pay a fine because your library book was overdue.

6. Ron is wearing jeans. He’s expected at a formal reception this evening.

7. Mary’s parents expect her to work in the family business, a shoe store, but she wants to be an architect.

8. Richard’s roommate stays up very late studying. While his roommate is studying, he listens to loud music, and Richard can’t get to sleep.

9. Pierre is feeling really homesick these days.

10. You have a stomach ache because you ate too much.

11. Tom didn’t show up for work yesterday because he and his friend were in an auto accident.
    Tom was okay, but his friend was badly hurt, so Tom had to stay with him at the hospital.
    Tom didn’t call his boss to tell him he wouldn’t be at work. When Tom arrived at work today, his boss fired him immediately, refusing to listen to any of Tom’s explanations for missing work.
12. A man was having dinner in a restaurant with a co-worker. When he got up, he accidentally bumped the table, spilling a plate of food onto the woman's lap. He looked at her in horror and left the room.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Be supposed to. (Chart 9-9)
Directions: Correct any errors in the use of be supposed to.

1. The students are suppose to write a composition.
2. They supposed write it about a person they admire.
3. They're supposing to write it in ink.
4. They don't supposed to write it in pencil.
5. When are they suppose to hand it in?

◊ PRACTICE 8. Be supposed to. (Chart 9-9)
Directions: Restate the following rules in sentences with be supposed to.

1. NO SMOKING > You are not supposed to smoke.
2. KEEP OFF THE GRASS.
3. NO EATING OR DRINKING IN THIS ROOM.
4. MOVE TO THE REAR OF THE BUS.
5. DO NOT JOKE WITH AIRPORT PERSONNEL WHILE YOUR HAND LUGGAGE IS BEING INSPECTED.
6. USE THE STAIRS IN CASE OF FIRE. DO NOT USE THE ELEVATOR.
7. NO LITTERING.
8. SLOWER TRAFFIC KEEP RIGHT.
PRACTICE 9. Let's, why don't, shall I/we. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with appropriate pronouns. If nothing is needed in the blank, write Ø.

1. A: We'll never find an apartment we can afford in the middle of the city. Why don't we look for one in the suburbs. It's farther, but the apartments are probably less expensive.
   B: Okay. I'll drive. Let's drive to the suburbs right now.
   A: Why don't we look in the newspaper first? We should look in the classified ads for that area. Do you have this morning's paper?
   B: No. Shall I go get one?
   A: Good idea. I'll come with you.

2. A: I'm worried about Barbara. She's never this late.
   B: Let's not worry. She's probably just held up in traffic.
   A: Why don't call her parents? At least then we'll know if she left home on time.
   B: Okay, if it will make you feel better, but why don't just try not to get upset? I'm sure she's okay.

3. A: This pasta is delicious! Why don't try some?
   B: No, thank you. I'm full. Let's ask for the check.
   A: What? No dessert? This place is famous for its pies. Why don't stay and have some dessert?
   B: I couldn't eat another bite, but I'll wait for you. Shall get the waiter for you?
   A: Yes, please, when you see him. Thanks. You sure you don't want any dessert?

4. A: I think it's time for us to fix up the apartment.
   B: Okay. Why don't do something to the living room?
   A: That's a good idea. Shall paint the walls?
   B: Sure. Sounds great.
   A: Okay. I'll go to the paint store. Shall get the same color that's on there now, or a different one?
   B: Something different.
   A: Why don't get an off-white?
   B: No. How about a light yellow?
   A: Okay. And while I'm gone, why don't cover the furniture and floor so we won't drip paint on anything.
   B: Well, I'd really like to help, but I have to get back to work.
   A: What?!
PRACTICE 10. Using **could** and **should** to make suggestions. (Chart 9-11)

Directions: For each of these situations, give three suggestions with **could**. Then give definite advice with **should**.

1. It’s late at night. Tony is home by himself. He hears a window break. He thinks it’s a burglar. Now what? What could or should he do now?
   - He could ____________ hide under his bed.________
   - He could ____________ pick up his baseball bat and go looking for the intruder.________
   - He should ____________ leave the house and go to his neighbor’s to call the police.________

2. Bruce has helped his mother onto the train and escorted her to a seat. While he is saying goodbye, the train begins pulling away from the station. By the time he gets through the crowded aisles to the exit, the train is traveling fast. Now what?
   - He could ____________ ________
   - He could ____________ ________
   - He should ____________ ________

3. Kim is an insomniac. Every night she tosses and turns until 2 or 3 A.M. and gets only a few hours of sleep. It’s beginning to affect her work, as she has to be in her office at 8:00 A.M. She’s always tired. She needs some advice.
   - She could ____________ ________
   - She could ____________ ________
   - She should ____________ ________
4. You were driving in the countryside late at night, and you noticed that you were almost out of gas. You managed to make it to a small town nearby but discovered that the only gas station in town was closed. You decided to hitchhike to the next town and look for an open station, but the person who picked you up robbed you and left you stranded on a country road. Hitchhiking was a bad idea. What were some other possible courses of action you could have taken?

I could ____________________________
I could ____________________________
I should ____________________________
CHAPTER 10
Modals, Part 2

◊ PRACTICE 1. Degrees of certainty: must and may/might/could. (Chart 10-1)
Directions: Which of the two completions is the speaker most likely to say? Choose the best completion.

1. “Look at all the children waiting for the bus. What time is it?”
   “It ______ be after 3:00. That’s when school is out.”
   A. must    B. might

2. “George says that we’re going to have a very high inflation rate next year.”
   “He ______ be right. I think his view is as good as anybody’s. I’ve heard strong opinions on all sides of that issue.”
   A. must    B. could

3. “Have you heard anything from Ed? Is he still in Africa?”
   “He ______ be, or he ______ already be on his way home. I’m just not sure.”
   A. must . . . must    B. could . . . could

4. “Is that a famous person over there in the middle of that crowd?”
   “It ______ be. Everyone’s trying to get her autograph.”
   A. must    B. might

5. “Isn’t Peter Reeves a banker?”
   “Yes. Why don’t you talk to him? He ______ be able to help you with your loan.”
   A. must    B. may

6. “Isn’t Margaret’s daughter over sixteen?”
   “She ______ be. I saw her driving a car, and you have to be at least sixteen to get a driver’s license.”
   A. must    B. might

7. “Overall, don’t you think the possibility of world peace is greater now than ever before?”
   “It ______ be. I don’t know. Political relationships can be fragile.”
   A. must    B. may

8. “The speedometer on my car is broken.”
   “Do you think you’re driving over the speed limit?”
   “I don’t know. I ______.”
   A. must be    B. might be    C. am

9. “You’ve been on the go all day. Aren’t you exhausted?”
   “Yes, I ______. I can’t remember when I’ve ever been this worn out.”
   A. must be    B. may be    C. am
10. “Have you seen the new movie playing at the Bijou?”
   “No, but it ________ sad. Many people leaving the theater seem to have been crying.”
   A. must be   B. might be   C. is

11. “Do you hear that squeak? What is it?”
   “I don’t know. It ________ a mouse. Isn’t that what a mouse sounds like?”
   A. must be   B. may be   C. is

12. “How old do you think Roger is?”
   “I just looked at his driver’s license. He ________ 33.”
   A. must be   B. might be   C. is

◇ PRACTICE 2. Forms of modals. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the words in parentheses. Add not if necessary for a sentence to make sense.

1. A: Where’s Ann?
   B: I don’t know. She (could + visit) ____________________________ her aunt and uncle right now. She usually visits them every Friday evening.

2. You (should + watch) ____________________________ the movie on TV tonight. I highly recommend it. It’s a classic.

3. I heard a loud crash in the next room. When I walked in, I found a brick on the floor, and the window was broken. Someone (must + throw) ____________________________ the brick through the window.

4. Jack is in the employee lounge drinking coffee. He (should + work) ____________________________ on his report right now. It’s due at 3:00 this afternoon. He (should + waste) ____________________________ his time in the employee lounge.

5. Do you hear the guitar music? Carla (must + play) ____________________________ her guitar.

6. A: I need to see Tom. Where is he?
   B: In his room. Knock on his door softly. He (might + take) ____________________________ a nap.

7. Michael wanted to go to the opera, but he put off buying a ticket, and now they’re all sold. He (should + buy) ____________________________ his ticket weeks ago. He (should + wait) ____________________________ until now to try to get a ticket.

8. Bob was stopped by a police officer last night. He (must + drive) ____________________________ too fast when she clocked him on her radar. She gave him a speeding ticket.

9. The staff (must + plan) ____________________________ very well for the luncheon. There are still about ten people waiting to eat, and there’s not enough food left.
10. A: Where's your bicycle?
   B: I don't know. One of my friends (may + borrow) __________________________ it.
       Gee, I hope it wasn't stolen. Maybe Sally borrowed it.
   A: Sally? She (could + borrow) __________________________ it. She has a
       broken leg. Why would she want to borrow your bicycle?

11. George didn't do very well on the test because he didn't understand what he was supposed
to do. He (could + listen) __________________________ very carefully
       when the teacher gave the directions.

12. A: Joan was really upset when she found out that someone had told Alan about the surprise
    birthday party she gave him last night. She thinks Joe told him.
   B: Joe (could + tell) __________________________ him about it. He was out of town
       until just before the party. He barely got there in time from the airport.

13. A: Art has two full-time jobs this summer to make some money for school in the fall. He
    (must + have) __________________________ very much time to rest and do other things.
   B: That might explain why no one answered the door when I stopped by his house a little
       while ago. He (must + sleep) __________________________.

   B: She (must + make) __________________________ a lot of money in her new job.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Making conclusions: must and must not. (Charts 10-1 ↔ 10-5)
   Directions: Make logical conclusions about these situations. Use must or must not for your
   "best guess."
   1. The Adams' house is dark and quiet. Their car isn't in the driveway.
      + They must not be at home.

   2. We had a test in class yesterday. Charles, who rarely studies and usually fails the tests, got a
      score of 95% this time.
      + He must have studied for the test.

   3. The man sitting behind us has been talking throughout the movie. He knows what's going
      to happen before it happens.

   4. Anita is in bed. The lights are out, and I can hear someone snoring.

   5. Mrs. Jenkins has lost some of her hearing. Yesterday the children asked her several times for
      some cookies, but she didn't answer.

   6. Jeremy's car radio is always set on the classical music station. He also keeps a supply of
      classical music tapes in the car.

   7. When Jeremy's wife is in the car with him, she always asks him to change the station or the
      tape.

   8. Diane never seems to have enough money. I tried to call her last night and got a recording
      telling me that her phone had been disconnected.
9. Four people had dinner together. Two of them ate wild mushrooms, and two of them didn’t. The two who ate the mushrooms are now critically ill.

10. I heard a loud crash in the next room. I rushed in immediately and found our antique vase on the floor. It was broken. Five-year-old Bobby was playing quietly with his toy truck. The cat was leaping frantically from table to table. The window was open, and the breeze was blowing gently through the room. I wondered what had happened to the antique vase.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Ability: can and could. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with can, can’t, could, or couldn’t.

1. Fish __________ talk.

2. I used to be a good swimmer. I __________ swim long distances when I was a teenager.

3. Why __________ all the nations of the world just get along in peace? Why are there always wars somewhere on the earth?

4. When I was younger, I __________ stay up past midnight and get up at dawn feeling refreshed and ready to go. I __________ do that any longer now that I’m middle-aged.

5. I __________ get to sleep last night because it was too hot in my room.

6. An illiterate person is someone who __________ neither read nor write.

7. My uncle was a wonderful craftsman. He made beautiful things out of wood. But he __________ read or write because he never went to school.
8. I had to put together my daughter's tricycle. It came from the factory unassembled. At first I ______ figure out what to do, but finally, after hours of work, I managed to get it assembled.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Repeated action: would. (Chart 10-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences using would and the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Include any words in parentheses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bring</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>listen</th>
<th>throw</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>wipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>knock</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td>yell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. My father never liked to talk on the phone. Whenever it rang, he (always) ______ ______ ______, "I'm not here!" Usually, he was only joking and ______ ______ ______ to the phone when it was for him.

2. I'll always remember Miss Emerson, my fifth grade teacher. Sometimes a student ______ ______ asleep in her class. Whenever that happened, Miss Emerson ______ ______ a piece of chalk at the student!

3. Until we finally had a long talk about it, my Aunt Pat (never) ______ ______ ______ before coming over. In fact, she (not even) ______ ______ ______ on the door. She would just walk right in and catch us all by surprise.
4. I have fond childhood memories of my Uncle Joe. Whenever he came to visit, he (always) ______________ me a little present.

5. When our kids were still living at home, I liked to go out to eat with my family. On every payday, I ______________ the family to some restaurant for dinner.

6. People acquire strange habits. For example, my Uncle Oscar, who lived with us when I was a child, (always) ______________ his plate with his napkin whenever he sat down to a meal.

7. I'll never forget evenings spent with my grandparents when I was a child. My grandmother ______________ stories of her childhood seventy years ago, and we ______________ intently and question her for every detail.

8. When I was a salesman, it seemed to me that I was in my car most of the time. I ______________ to work to pick up my schedule, and then go from place to place all day, calling on small businesses.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Would rather. (Chart 10-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the suggestions in the list or your own words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be an environment lawyer</th>
<th>study Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go home</td>
<td>stay home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not go out</td>
<td>not tell you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ go to an opera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out with their friends... stay home with their parents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I went to a movie last night. I prefer operas to movies. I would rather ____________ have gone to ____________.

2. I studied French when I was in high school only because my parents wanted me to. I would rather ________________.

3. Jack's parents want him to become a doctor. He'd rather ________________, but he feels he has to respect his parents' wishes, so he has enrolled in medical school.

4. I know you want to know, but I'd rather ________________. I told Marge that I'd keep it a secret.

5. Sometimes teenagers would rather ________________ than ________________.

6. I would rather ________________ right after dinner at the restaurant last night, but my friends insisted on going back to John's apartment to listen to some music and talk. Tonight, I'd really rather ________________. I want to get a good night's sleep for the first time all week.
PRACTICE 7. Test A: Modals and phrasal modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: Peter ______ rather sleep on a mattress than on the floor.
A. shall  B. could  C. would  D. must

1. Al painted his bedroom black. It looks dark and dreary. He ______ a different color.
   A. had to choose  C. must have chosen
   B. should have chosen  D. could have been choosing

2. Tom is sitting at his desk. He's reading his chemistry text because he has a test tomorrow. He ______.
   A. could study  C. will study
   B. should be studying  D. must be studying

3. When Mr. Lee was younger, he ______ work in the garden for hours, but now he has to take frequent rests because he has emphysema.
   A. has got to  C. should be able to
   B. can  D. could

4. Whenever my parents went out in the evening, I ______ the job of taking care of my younger brother.
   A. would get  C. must have gotten
   B. should get  D. had better get

5. Yesterday I ______ to a furniture store. I bought a new lamp there.
   A. could go  C. could have gone
   B. went  D. ought to have gone

6. Tom wasn’t at the party last night. He must not ______ a ride. I know he wanted to come, but he didn’t have a ride.
   A. be able to have gotten  C. have been able to get
   B. to have been able to get  D. be able to get

7. Robert has a new car. He ______ it for a very good price. He paid 30 percent less than the regular retail cost.
   A. could buy  C. was supposed to buy
   B. had to buy  D. was able to buy

8. “Did you enjoy the picnic?”
   “It was okay, but I’d rather ______ to a movie.”
   A. go  B. be going  C. have gone  D. went

9. “Why are you so sure that Ann didn’t commit the crime she’s been accused of committing?”
   “She ______ that crime because I was with her, and we were out of town that day.”
   A. may not have committed  C. committed
   B. wasn’t supposed to commit  D. couldn’t have committed

10. “Since we have to be there in a hurry, we ______ take a taxi.”
    “I agree.”
    A. had better  C. have been used to
    B. may  D. are able to
11. “It ______ rain this evening. Why don’t you take an umbrella?”
   “That’s a good idea. May I borrow yours?”
   A. had better        B. could be        C. must        D. might

12. “______ you hand me that pair of scissors, please?”
   “Certainly.”
   A. May          B. Shall         C. Will        D. Should

13. Larry drove all night to get here for his sister’s wedding. He ______ exhausted by the time he arrived.
   A. ought to be    C. must have been
   B. could be      D. will have been

14. “What are you doing here now? You ______ be here for another three hours.”
   “I know. We got an early start, and it took less time than we expected. I hope you don’t mind.”
   A. couldn’t     C. had better not
   B. might not    D. aren’t supposed to

15. “______ taking me downtown on your way to work this morning?”
   “Not at all.”
   A. Can you     C. Would you mind
   B. Why don’t you    D. Could you please

16. “I locked myself out of my apartment. I didn’t know what to do.”
   “You ______ your roommate.”
   A. could have called   C. would have called
   B. may have called    D. must have called

17. “You haven’t eaten anything since yesterday afternoon. You ______ be really hungry!”
   “I am.”
   A. might     B. will     C. can    D. must

18. “How long have you been married?”
   “We ______ have been married for twenty-three years on our next anniversary.”
   A. must     B. should    C. will    D. could

19. “I ______ there at 6 P.M. for the meeting, but my car won’t start. Could you please give me a lift in your car?”
   “Sure. Are you ready to go now?”
   A. will be    B. may be     C. supposed to be    D. have got to be

20. “I left a cookie on the table, but now it’s gone. What happened to it?”
   “I don’t know. One of the children ______ it.”
   A. may have eaten    C. had to eat
   B. could eat        D. should have eaten
PRACTICE 8. Test B: Modals and phrasal modals. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: Peter ___C___ rather sleep on a mattress than on the floor.
A. shall B. could C. would D. must

1. “My boss is always looking over my shoulder whenever I do anything.”
   “That ___A___ bother you.”
   “But it does.”
   A. shouldn’t B. might not C. may not D. won’t

2. “This movie is boring and too violent.”
   “I agree. ___B___ leave?”
   A. Will we B. Why don’t we C. Must we D. Would we

3. “Chris, you ___B___ the fish in the refrigerator before it spoils.”
   “You’re right. I didn’t know it was still in the shopping bag.”
   A. had better put B. would rather put C. had to put D. may put

4. “What does Mr. Griffin do for a living?”
   “Nothing. He’s very rich. He ___C___ work for a living.”
   A. must not B. doesn’t have to C. doesn’t have to D. hadn’t better

5. “Why are you so late?”
   “I ___A___ my aunt to the airport. The traffic was terrible!”
   A. could take B. should take C. must be D. had to take

6. “I heard that Laura was offered a job at a top computer firm in Chicago.”
   “Oh? That’s wonderful! She ___B___ very pleased.”
   A. is supposed to be B. might be C. must be D. is

7. “My boss expects me to work this weekend.”
   “You shouldn’t ___B___ work on weekends.”
   A. must B. be going to C. ought to D. have to

8. “They towed my car away from the executive parking lot yesterday.”
   “You ___C___ have parked there.”
   A. may not B. should not C. must not D. might not

9. “Are you going to have a big birthday party for your father?”
   “Not this year, but next year. He ___A___ 50 years old then.”
   A. should be B. must be C. will be D. has to be

10. “I need some help with this table. ___A___ you lift the other end, please?”
    “Sure, just a second.”
    A. May B. Should C. Could D. Shall

11. “How did you get my telephone number? It’s not listed in the phone book, so you ___C___
    have found it in the directory.”
    “I got it from your mother.”
    A. may not B. won’t C. might not D. couldn’t
12. “Is that volcano dormant or active?”
   Active. According to the experts, it ______ erupt again in the very near future.
   A. would    B. may be    C. could    D. had better

13. “Last year I ______ this fine print in these contracts, but now I can’t.”
   “You’d better go to the eye doctor.”
   A. could read    C. should have read
   B. must have read    D. had to read

14. “Is littering against the law?”
   “Yes. There’s a law that says that you ______ throw trash on the streets.”
   A. don’t have to    C. couldn’t
   B. must not    D. might not

15. “Do you want to go to the seashore for vacation?”
   “I think I’d rather ______ to the mountains.”
   A. to go    B. going    C. go    D. have gone

16. “Barbara just told me that she can’t go to the meeting tonight.”
   “She ______ go! We need her there for the financial report.”
   A. has got to    B. has gotten to    C. have to    D. must be

17. “______ letting me use your bicycle for a little while?”
   “Not at all.”
   A. Please to    C. Will you
   B. Would you mind    D. Could you please

18. “We ______ be here. That sign says NO TRESPASSING.”
   “It’s too late now. We’re already here.”
   A. couldn’t    C. might not
   B. don’t have to    D. aren’t supposed to

19. “Harry’s new jacket doesn’t seem to fit him very well.”
   “He ______ it on before he bought it.”
   A. must have tried    C. should have tried
   B. was able to try    D. may have tried

20. “Do you like to play tennis?”
   “Yes. When I worked at the embassy, I ______ meet a friend at five every afternoon for a game.”
   A. would    B. should    C. had better    D. would rather
CHAPTER 11
The Passive

◊ PRACTICE 1. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1)
Directions: Change the active to the passive by writing the correct form of be in the blanks. Use the same tense for be in the passive sentence that is used in the active sentence.

Example: Mrs. Bell answered my question. My question was answered by Mrs. Bell.

1. simple present:
   Authors write books. Books ........................................ written by authors.

2. present progressive:
   Mr. Brown is writing that book. That book ........................................ written by Mr Brown.

3. present perfect:
   Ms. Lee has written the report. The report ........................................ written by Ms Lee.

4. simple past:
   Bob wrote that letter. That letter ........................................ written by Bob.

5. past progressive:
   A student was writing the report. The report ........................................ written by a student.

6. past perfect:
   Lucy had written a memo. A memo ........................................ written by Lucy.

7. simple future:
   Your teacher will write a report. A report ........................................ written by your teacher.

8. be going to:
   Tom is going to write a letter. The letter ........................................ written by Tom.

9. future perfect:
   Alice will have written the report. The report ........................................ written by Alice.

10. The judges have made a decision. A decision ........................................ made by the judges.

11. Several people saw the accident. The accident ........................................ seen by several people.

12. Ann is sending the letters. The letters ........................................ sent by Ann.

13. Fred will plan the party. The party ........................................ planned by Fred.

14. The medicine had cured my illness. My illness ........................................ cured by the medicine.

15. The cat will have caught the mouse. The mouse ........................................ caught by the cat.

16. Engineers design bridges. Bridges ........................................ designed by engineers.

17. The city is going to build a bridge. A bridge ........................................ built by the city.

18. A guard was protecting the jewels. The jewels ........................................ protected by a guard.
◊ PRACTICE 2. Forming the passive: questions, negative, and affirmative. (Chart 11-1 and Appendix Units B and D)

Directions: Change these sentences to the passive.

1. a. QUESTION: Did Tom write that report? → *Was that report written by Tom?*
b. NEGATIVE: No, he didn’t write it. → *No, it wasn’t written by him.*
c. AFFIRMATIVE: Alice wrote it. → *It was written by Alice.*

2. a. QUESTION: Is Mr. Brown painting your house?
b. NEGATIVE: No, he isn’t painting it.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: My uncle is painting it.

3. a. QUESTION: Will Steve wash the dishes?
b. NEGATIVE: No, he won’t wash them.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: The children will wash them.

4. a. QUESTION: Has Sue planned the meeting?
b. NEGATIVE: No, she hasn’t planned it.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: The committee has planned it.

5. a. QUESTION: Does Mr. Parr play that violin?
b. NEGATIVE: No, he doesn’t play it.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: His son plays it.

6. a. QUESTION: Is Jack going to return the books to the library?
b. NEGATIVE: No, he isn’t going to return them.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: His sister is going to return them.

7. a. QUESTION: Did the archeologists discover the ancient skeleton?
b. NEGATIVE: No, they didn’t discover it.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: A farmer discovered it.

8. a. QUESTION: Was Sally preparing the food?
b. NEGATIVE: No, she wasn’t preparing it.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: Her mother was preparing it.

9. a. QUESTION: Will Ms. Anderson have typed the letters?
b. NEGATIVE: No, she won’t have typed them.
c. AFFIRMATIVE: The secretary will have typed them.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Forming the passive. (Chart 11-1 and Appendix Units B and D)

Directions: In the following, active sentences are changed to passive sentences. Complete the passive sentences with the appropriate verb form. Keep the same tense. Use question and negative forms as necessary.

1. Did Ann discover the mistake?
   → ___**was**___ the mistake ___**discovered**___ by Ann?

2. A famous author wrote that book.
   → That book ___**was written**___ by a famous author.

3. Jack won’t pay the bill.
   → The bill ___**won’t be paid**___ by Jack.
4. The waiter refilled my glass.
   → My glass ________________ by the waiter.

5. Did Sue knock that vase to the floor?
   → ______________ that vase ______________ to the floor by Sue?

6. Tommy didn’t break the chair.
   → The chair ________________ by Tommy.

7. Alan’s knowledge of art doesn’t impress me.
   → I ________________ by Alan’s knowledge of art.

8. One of the parents is taping the children’s song.
   → The children’s song ________________ by one of the parents.

9. Is a student pilot flying that airplane?
   → ______________ that airplane ________________ by a student pilot?

10. The best chess player will win the match.
    → The match ______________ by the best chess player.

11. Your emotional appeals will not influence the judge.
    → The judge ________________ by your emotional appeals.

12. The voters are going to decide that issue.
    → That issue ________________ by the voters.

13. The city attorney has discovered new evidence.
    → New evidence ________________ by the city attorney.

14. Mr. Snow hasn’t taught that course since 1985.
    → That course ________________ by Mr. Snow since 1985.

15. Had a special messenger delivered the package before you got to the office?
    → ______________ the package ________________ by a special messenger before you got to the office?

16. The pollution in the city was affecting Tim’s breathing.
    → Tim’s breathing ________________ by the pollution in the city.
**PRACTICE 4. Using the passive: transitive vs. intransitive verbs.**

*(Chart 11-1 and Appendix Chart A-1)*

*Directions:* In these sentences, some of the verbs are transitive and some are intransitive. Identify the verb of the sentence. Then identify the object of the verb if there is one. If the verb has an object, change the sentence to the passive. Use the symbol Φ to indicate “none.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>OBJECT OF VERB</th>
<th>PASSIVE SENTENCE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Al will pay the bill.</td>
<td>will pay</td>
<td>the bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Sue will come tomorrow.</td>
<td>will come</td>
<td>Φ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The hotel supplies towels.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Accidents happen every day.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Everyone noticed my mistake.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The train arrived at three.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The news didn’t surprise me.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Did the news surprise you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. The sun wasn’t shining.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Ann interrupted my story.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Do ghosts exist?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Birds fly in the sky.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Will Ed come tomorrow?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Mr. Lee died last year.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Did Bob throw the ball?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Sue laughed loudly.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. An old man told the story.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. It hasn’t rained lately.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 5. Forming the passive.** *(Chart 11-1)*

*Directions:* Change these active sentences to passive if possible. Some of verbs are intransitive and cannot be changed. Keep the same tense.

1. My uncle will meet you at the airport. → You will be met at the airport by my uncle.
2. Our plane will land at 6:03. *(no change)*
3. John is working at the bakery.
4. We walked downtown after work yesterday.
5. The chef will prepare the food.
6. The baby was crying in his crib.
7. I don’t agree with you.
8. Thousands of people ride the subway every day.
9. Joe fell down on his way to school this morning.
10. George seemed unhappy yesterday.
11. Our houseguests are going to arrive sometime tomorrow afternoon.
12. The office manager answered the phone.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Active vs. passive. (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Some of the sentences are active and some are passive. Use any appropriate tense.

1. You (notify) _____________ by my secretary next week.
2. Last night I (remember, not) _____________ to lock my front door.
3. At the present time, the oldest house in town (restore) _____________ by the Historical Society. When the restoration is finished, the house is sure to be a popular tourist attraction.
4. A: What a beautiful old wooden chest!
B: It (build) _____________ by my grandfather over fifty years ago.
5. At one time, the entire world (rule) _____________ by dinosaurs. Some dinosaurs (walk) _____________ on their hind legs and (stand) _____________ as tall as palm trees.
6. Disneyland is a world famous amusement park in Southern California. It (visit) _____________ by more than ten million people every year.
7. Many of us take water for granted in our daily lives, but people who live in the desert (use, not) _____________ water carelessly. To them, each drop is precious.
8. I (agree, not) _____________ with people who say space exploration is a waste of money. What do you think?
9. Do you really think that we (invade) _____________ by creatures from outer space in the near future?
10. Most insects (live) _____________ for less than a year. The common housefly (live) _____________ from 19 to 30 days.
11. (you, accept, already) _____________ by this university when you heard about the other scholarship?
12. I got into a taxi quickly because I (follow) _____________ by two strange men. As soon as I got into the taxi, I (feel) _____________ a little safer.
13. The impact of the earthquake yesterday (feel) _____________ by people who lived hundreds of kilometers from the epicenter.
14. When Alex was only ten, his father (die) ________________________________.

15. Mark (influence) ___________________________ a lot by his friends, isn't he? He should be more independent and think for himself.

16. A few days ago, my car (steal) __________________________ by one of the teenagers in my neighborhood. He (catch) ___________________________ by the police a few blocks from my house. He just wanted to take it for a drive, but now he's in a lot of trouble.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Using the by-phrase. (Chart 11-2)

Directions: Change these active sentences to passive. Keep the same tense. Include the by-phrase only if necessary.

1. People grow rice in India. → Rice is grown in India. (no by-phrase)

2. My aunt made this rug. → This rug was made by my aunt.

3. They are fixing my car today. → My car is being fixed today. (no by-phrase)

4. They speak French in Quebec.

5. Mr. Eads designed that bridge in the 1870s.

6. Someone invented the wheel thousands of years ago.

7. Did Thomas Edison invent the telephone?

8. They are going to build a new hospital just outside of town.

9. How do people make candles?

10. Very few people watch that TV show.

11. Look! Someone is feeding the seals.
12. Sally made that pie.
13. Someone is considering Jack for that job.
14. Three continents surround the Mediterranean Sea.
15. I got upset when someone interrupted me in the middle of my story.
16. People didn’t build Rome in a day.
17. Do they make those tractors in this country, or do they import them?
18. While I was walking down the street, a nice young man in a military uniform approached me.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Indirect objects as passive subjects. (Chart 11-3)

Directions: Identify the indirect object (i.o.). Change the sentences to the passive by using the indirect object as the subject of the sentence. Use the by-phrase only if necessary. Keep the same tense.

I.O.
1. Someone is going to serve Jack breakfast in bed on his birthday.
   → Jack is going to be served breakfast in bed on his birthday.
2. Someone has offered Mike the opportunity to study abroad.
3. People don’t pay babysitters a lot of money.
4. When I was living in Kuwait, my neighbor taught me Arabic.
5. Someone awarded Jason a medal for distinguished service in the military.
6. The real estate office will send you a copy of the sales contract.
7. Someone handed me a telegram when I answered the door.
8. The director of the museum, Ms. Cynthia Hall, is going to give the schoolchildren a special tour of the modern art exhibit.
9. People gave Mr. French a gold watch upon his retirement from the company.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Active and passive. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given words. Some of the sentences are passive and some are active. Use any appropriate tense.

1. The examination papers are scored by machine. The students (tell) will be told their results next week.
2. The project got finished early. The committee (complete) completed its work three weeks ahead of schedule.
3. The teacher (assist) assisted by two graduate students during the exam yesterday.
4. Soon after I (apply) applied for a job with the United Nations two years ago, I (hire) was hired.
5. The crocodiles at the zoo look like statues. They (lie) lie perfectly still for hours at a time. They have no need to move because they don’t have to hunt for their food. They (feed) are regularly fed by the zookeepers.
6. This lovely beach won't exist forever. Eventually, it (erode, probably) ________________
_________________________ by the sea, and there will be nothing left but bedrock.
The geologic forces of nature never stop.

7. Bananas originated in Asia. They (introduce) ____________________________ to the
Americas in 1516. Until the 1860s, bananas (eat) ___________________________ principally by
people of the tropics. Today, bananas (export) ____________________________ to all parts of
the world, and they (enjoy) ____________________________ by people who live in all climates.

8. There's going to be a story in the local newspaper about my neighbor, Mrs. Morris.
Tomorrow she (interview) ____________________________ by one of the local reporters
about her doll collection. Over the years, she (collect) ____________________________ more
than 400 dolls from all over the world.

9. Ali and Mustafa (complain) ____________________________ to the landlord many times
since they moved into their apartment, but to date nothing (do) ____________________________
_________________________ about the leak in the roof and the broken window in the bedroom.

10. Yesterday I told my teenage daughter to clean her room before she (go) ____________________________
to school. After she had left the house, I looked in her room. She (pile) ____________________________
_________________________ all her clothes on a chair. Everything else (shove) ____________________________
_________________________ under her bed.

11. Sometimes people (intimidate) ____________________________ by salespeople. As a result,
sometimes they (buy) ____________________________ things they don't really want.

12. Two days ago I (put) ____________________________ an ad in the classified section of the newspaper so I
could find a buyer for my old car. Yesterday I (sell) ____________________________ it. It (buy) ____________________________
_________________________ by a teenager who (look) ____________________________ for an
old car to fix up himself. Today a friend of mine told me he wanted to buy my old car, but
he was too late. By the time he talked to me, the car (sell, already) ____________________________
_________________________ to the teenager.

13. The wheel (invent) ____________________________ over 5,000 years ago. Throughout
history, it (assist) ____________________________ people in making better use of oxen, horses,
and other animals in transporting goods.

14. The avalanche (occur) ____________________________ around ten in the morning on October seventh.
Six skiers (cross) ____________________________ a steep slope when suddenly they (sweep)
_________________________ off their feet by cascading snow. Back at the ski resort, an
avalanche alert was sounded, and a rescue party (leave) ____________________________ immediately. After
several hours, all six skiers (find) ____________________________ Four of them (injure, seriously)
_________________________ , but they were all alive. The rescue party (take)
_________________________ the injured skiers down the mountain as quickly as they could.
PRACTICE 10. The present participle vs. the past participle.
(Charts 2-2, 2-5, and 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Use the present participle or the past participle of the given verbs to complete the sentences. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>breed</th>
<th>finance</th>
<th>scrub</th>
<th>thread</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>broadcast</td>
<td>lean</td>
<td>shove</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drag</td>
<td>mine</td>
<td>smuggle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expose</td>
<td>redecorate</td>
<td>stretch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The Clarks’ living room is being _______ in blue and white. They want it to look nice for their daughter’s wedding reception.

2. Jack pricked his finger while he was _________ a needle.

3. The police talked to an informant. According to him, the illegal drugs had been _____________ into the country in a private airplane.

4. The logging industry in that country still uses animal power. After the trees are cut down, the logs are _____________ to the central camp by elephants.

5. On your trip to Tahiti, you will be _____________ to many interesting customs, delicious food, and delightful people.

6. My hands and knees got sore while I was _____________ the floor with soap and water.

7. The old clock wasn’t ticking because it hadn’t been _____________ . Someone forgot to do it.

8. The news of the victory was _____________ throughout the country over the radio and television. Everyone heard about it almost as soon as it happened.

9. The bus was extremely crowded. I was _____________ this way and that by the other passengers every time the bus turned a corner.

10. Oil exploration costs a lot of money. The explorations in the southern part of the country are being _____________ by the government.

11. Frank was resting. He had been _____________ back on his chair for several minutes with his eyes closed when he heard a knock on the door.

12. Gold is _____________ in several countries. The nugget that Elena is wearing came from Brazil.

13. We couldn’t enter the street. A rope had been _____________ across the street.

14. Arabian horses are _____________ at the Bar X ranch. They are quite expensive.
PRACTICE 11. The present participle vs. the past participle.
(Charts 2-2, 2-5, and 11-1 → 11-3)

Directions: Use the present participle or the past participle of the given verbs to complete the sentences. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bill</th>
<th>erase</th>
<th>photograph</th>
<th>rub</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>memorize</td>
<td>predict</td>
<td>vaccinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equip</td>
<td>perform</td>
<td>rehearse</td>
<td>whisper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The vocabulary list had been __memorized__ by all of the students, and each one scored over 90 percent on the exam.
2. Shhh! Don’t move. Don is __photographing__ that deer, and we don’t want to scare it off.
3. You’ll want to buy this computer. It has been __equipped__ with all of the latest accessories, including a built-in modem.
4. The earthquake that struck the village was terrible. About 75 percent of the buildings were completely __destroyed__ within two minutes.
5. Little Jackie was __performing__ her eyes because she was sleepy.
6. Anna and Susie didn’t hear what the teacher said because they were __photographing__ to each other in the back of the classroom about the new boy in fifth grade.
7. Paul drew a funny picture of the teacher on the board, but it had been __erased__ before she entered the classroom.
8. The dance company is having a successful tour of the United States. Their dances will have been __predicted__ more than 500 times before they return to Senegal.
9. The National Weather Service is __predicting__ another heat wave in the coming month. I hope they’re wrong.
10. Robert and Julia had been __photographing__ against cholera before they went abroad. They traveled without worrying about becoming infected.
11. When I went to the school auditorium, the children were __memorizing__ their musical play. The play is going to be presented this coming Friday at 7:00 P.M.
12. Carl spent two hours at the dentist’s office today having some fillings put in. He will be __rehearsing__ for the dental work at the end of the month.

PRACTICE 12. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: Change the active sentences to the passive.

1. People should save pandas from extinction. → Pandas should be saved from extinction.
2. People must obey all traffic laws.
3. Someone ought to repair this broken window.
4. Someone should have supplied the hotel guests with clean towels.
5. Someone had better take this garbage to the dump soon.
6. People can pick tomatoes before they are completely ripe.
7. Someone is supposed to divide the profits among the shareholders.
8. Someone must have hurt Bob’s feelings.
9. Someone has to finish this work today.
10. Someone ought to have reported the accident to the police.
11. You shouldn’t put fresh bananas in the freezer.

◊ PRACTICE 13. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate forms of the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Some of the sentences are active and some are passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>consider</th>
<th>pollute</th>
<th>sew</th>
<th>whisper</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>sign</td>
<td>wrap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discover</td>
<td>repeat</td>
<td>tell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>replace</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Jack has a right to know. He ought to **be told** the news immediately. If you don’t do it, I will.
2. I have no patience with gossips. What I told Bill was a secret. He shouldn’t have **repeated** it to you.
3. Use this brown paper and tape. A package has to **be wrapped** carefully before it is mailed. Otherwise, the post office won’t send it.
4. I don’t know why Jessica wasn’t at the meeting. She must have **be forgotten** about it. Next time there’s a meeting, I’ll be sure to remind her about it.
5. The ancient ruins may have **be discovered** as early as 1792. The historical record is difficult to interpret.
6. You should **be forgotten** this button back on right away — before you lose it.
7. This burnt out light bulb should have **be replaced** days ago. There are some new bulbs in the green cabinet. Could you get one for me?
8. Did you know that Sylvia bought a new sports car? I don’t know how much she paid for it, and of course it’s none of my business, but it must have **be worth** her a lot of money.
9. Shhhhh! Let’s not talk so loudly. We don’t want to awaken the baby. We’d better **be quieter**.
10. You’d better not drink that river water. It could **be poisoned**.
11. We have no choice in the matter. I know Tommy wants to spend the night outside in a tent with his friends, but he's sick. His well-being must __________ above all else. We have to tell him he can't do it.

12. While you are working here, you are never to greet the public in your everyday clothes. When you are on duty, your uniform must __________ at all times.

13. Your passport is supposed to __________. It is invalid without your signature.

14. I think everyone should __________ this paperback on the economic crisis. It contains information that everyone should have.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Passive modals. (Chart 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate forms of the verbs in the list. Use each verb only once. Some of the sentences are active and some are passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>distinguish</th>
<th>obtain</th>
<th>scrub</th>
<th>vaccinate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>participate</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>establish</td>
<td>reply</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill</td>
<td>revise</td>
<td>trade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A driver's license can __________ from the Licensing Bureau at the corner of Pine Street and 5th Avenue.

2. Sam Smith was awarded the prize, but it should have __________ by Jennifer Watson. Her drawing was much better than his in my opinion.

3. Surgeons must __________ their hands thoroughly with disinfectant soap and hot water before they enter the operating room.

4. A parrot can __________ to say words. I know a parrot that can say, "Me want food." Her grammar isn't very good, but she often manages to get something to eat.
5. What are you talking about? You can’t have ________________ against the common cold. Small pox, maybe — but not the common cold.

6. When Mr. Brown said “How do you do?” you should have ________________ by saying “How do you do?” I know that’s not an answer to a question, but that’s the way people talk when they greet each other.

7. I shouldn’t have ________________ by the police. I’m sure I wasn’t speeding, but I got a ticket anyway.

8. Maria’s composition was quite good, but it still had to ________________. Her introduction didn’t clearly state her thesis, and some of the ideas she presented weren’t supported by specifics.

9. If you don’t want to work tonight, you ought to ________________ work shifts with Emily. She can work for you tonight, and you can work for her tomorrow night. The boss doesn’t mind as long as someone is there to serve the food.

10. The games are open to anyone who wants to join in. Everyone can ________________ in them. You don’t have to sign up first. We welcome all players.

11. A university may ________________ in outer space before long. Ideas for such a university are presently in the planning stage.

12. Your body needs lots of vitamins and minerals. You should ________________ more salads and less junk food in the future.

13. A bald eagle can ________________ from other large birds by its white head and white tail.

14. Some ranchers still believe that bald eagles must ________________ to protect their livestock. Research has shown, however, that eagles do little if any damage to a rancher’s stock. Today eagles are a protected species. The sight of a bald eagle soaring over water and trees fills one with awe and wonder at the beauty of nature.
1. The children **are excited** about going to the circus. They're looking forward to seeing the elephants, the clowns, and the acrobats.

2. Three of the children have the measles. Their bodies ______________________ with red spots. They also have fevers.

3. A: What happened to this mirror? It ________________.
   B: So it is. Someone must have dropped it.

4. The kids ____________________ from playing soccer all afternoon. They should rest for a while now.

5. ____________ you ________________ with that novel yet? I'd like to borrow it to read over the weekend.

6. A: I heard that a burglar broke into your house and stole all of your jewelry!
   B: Yes, and I feel terrible about it. Some of it was my grandmother's and can't be replaced.
   But at least all of it ____________________, and I'll be reimbursed for its value.
   It's still not the same as having the jewelry, though.

7. You shouldn't eat any of the fish from that river. The river ______________________ with chemical wastes from the factory upstream.

8. A: I'm going over to the theater to get tickets for the next concert.
   B: The ticket booth ____________________ until 6:00 P.M. You'll have to go there after six to get the tickets.

9. What's wrong with this drawer? I can't pull it open. It ________________.

10. George ____________________ in his best suit today because he has an important interview this afternoon.

11. Douglas gave me one set of directions to their house, and Ann gave me a different set of directions. Needless to say, I _____________ very ________________. I hope we don't get lost on the way.

12. I know the scissors are somewhere on this desk. I think they ______________________ somewhere under these piles of papers.
PRACTICE 16. Stative passive. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verbs in the list. Use the simple present. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>acquaint</th>
<th>equip</th>
<th>locate</th>
<th>schedule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cancel</td>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>summarize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clog</td>
<td>list</td>
<td>overdraw</td>
<td>wrinkle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Maria’s family lives in New York City, and her husband’s family lives in Philadelphia. They would like to live in a city which _________________ between the two so that they can visit their relatives frequently.

2. Robert wrote a very good, well-organized composition. The introduction tells the reader what the composition is about, and the last paragraph reviews all of his main points. His conclusions _________________ in the last paragraph.

3. I don’t know how, but I’ve lost my brother’s new telephone number. Unfortunately, it _________________, so I can’t look it up in the directory. I’ll have to call my mother and get it from her.

4. We can’t climb over the fence to walk in that field. The sign says: “Trespassing _________________. Violators will be prosecuted.”

5. I _______________ not _________________ with our new neighbors. They just moved in last week, and I haven’t had the opportunity to introduce myself.

6. Your dental appointment _________________ for 10:00 on Saturday. Please give us 24-hours notice if you need to cancel it.

7. I have to deposit some money in the bank immediately or I’m in big trouble. I’ve written too many checks, and there’s not enough money to cover them. My bank account _________________.

8. Good news! Our meeting _________________. Now we can go to the beach after work instead of spending the evening at a meeting.

9. I can’t wear this blouse because it _________________. I’d have to iron it, and I don’t have time.

10. Some new automobiles _________________ with air bags as well as seat belts. The air bags provide additional protection in case of an accident.

11. That table _________________ of plastic, not wood. The manufacturer certainly did a good job of imitating the look of wood.

12. It takes a long time for the water to go down the drain in my kitchen sink. I think the drain _________________ with grease and food particles. I’d better call the plumber tomorrow.
PRACTICE 17. Stative passive + prepositions. (Chart 11-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions.

1. This apartment comes furnished ______ with ______ only a stove and refrigerator.
2. My uncle is known ______ to ______ his generosity.
3. Alice is dressed ______ for ______ her warmest clothes today.
4. For the holiday meal, the bowls on the table were filled ______ with ______ specially prepared foods.
5. People who have been exposed ______ to ______ heavy doses of radiation may be more susceptible to certain diseases.
6. By the end of the long trip, the floor of the car was cluttered ______ with ______ junk.
7. Mr. Bellamy is discriminated ______ in ______ because of his age. When he applies for a job, he gets turned down as soon as they learn he is 61 years old.
8. The boss is so convinced ______ of ______ Jean’s ability that he’s paying her more money than he paid the previous employee.
9. Victor is blessed ______ for ______ a good sense of humor, which has helped him get out of some very difficult situations.
10. A: Are you disappointed ______ about ______ the color of this room? We could repaint it.
    B: I think I’m satisfied ______ with ______ it the way it is. What do you think?
11. George Washington, the first president of the United States, is remembered ______ for ______ his strong leadership during the Revolutionary War.
12. Zoology is more closely related ______ with ______ biology than it is to botany.
13. I’m annoyed ______ with ______ my boss. He scheduled a meeting for an hour beginning at ten o’clock, the same time I was planning to see a client.
14. As soon as you are done ______ about ______ the dictionary, I’d like to use it.
15. Last month, little Billy was bitten by a dog. Now he’s scared ______ of ______ every dog he sees.
16. Carol is engaged ______ in ______ Larry. Their marriage is planned for May 3.
17. A: Why are you so upset ______ about ______ the children?
    B: They didn’t call me when they missed their school bus, and I got very worried ______ about ______ them.
18. Each speaker was limited ______ in ______ three minutes.
19. Olga is exhausted. She’s tired ______ of ______ working 19 straight hours at her computer, but she can’t go home until the crisis is over.
20. I’m tired ______ in ______ living in a small apartment. I’d like to live in a house, or at least a larger apartment.
PRACTICE 18. Present vs. past participles. (Charts 2-5 and 11-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in the list. Use the present participle or the past participle. Include a preposition if necessary. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accompany</th>
<th>compose</th>
<th>explain</th>
<th>limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annoy</td>
<td>concern</td>
<td>involve</td>
<td>provide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bless</td>
<td>connect</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>satisfy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>cross</td>
<td>laugh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I am **concerned about** your health. You’re not taking good care of yourself.
2. Shhh! The teacher is **explaining** the assignment, and I want to hear what he’s saying.
3. Paris is famous for the Eiffel Tower. Bangkok is **known** for its floating market, which is a favorite tourist attraction.
4. In elementary school, all of the children are **limited** to textbooks. They don’t have to buy their own.
5. Everyone is **concerning** over the weather. It’s going to rain all day.
6. Diane is a perfectionist when it comes to developing her photographs. She’s been in the darkroom for hours and won’t come out until she is completely **concerned** the prints.
7. The Atlantic Ocean is **concerning** the Pacific Ocean by the Panama Canal. Ships can go from one ocean to the other without having to sail around the southern tip of South America.
8. While I was **concerning** the street, a car came out of nowhere and almost hit me.
9. Most teenagers are very busy after school. They are **concerning** many extracurricular activities, such as sports and special interest clubs.
10. An alloy is a metal compound that is **concerning** two or more metals.
11. Mrs. Hill doesn’t have to travel alone. Her daughter is **concerned** to Rome.
12. We are fortunate people. We are **concerning** a happy home and good health. We have many things to be thankful for.
13. The enrollment in that class is **concerning** 25 students. You’d better sign up for it early. Otherwise, you won’t be able to get in.
14. My neighbors are quite inconsiderate. They make so much noise that I can’t get to sleep at night. I am very **concerning** them.
15. The weather was awful. It was raining so hard that it was impossible to see across the valley, and the wind was **concerning** so hard that it was difficult to walk.
Directions: Complete the sentences by using an appropriate form of get and the past participle of the verbs in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break</th>
<th>hurt</th>
<th>start</th>
<th>tear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bury</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>stick</td>
<td>worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hire</td>
<td>soak</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I had a terrible day. First the heel of my shoe broke off, then my dress __get torn__ in the elevator door. I’m glad the day is over!

2. Oh! Look at that beautiful vase on the floor. How did it _________________?

3. A: You’re late. What happened?
   B: We _________________. We took the wrong exit from the highway, and it took a long time to figure out where we were.

4. A: I really need a job.
   B: Why don’t you apply for a job at the fast-food restaurant? They’re looking for help. I’m sure you’ll _________________.

5. A: Did Susan ________________ when she fell down the stairs?
   B: Not badly. Just a few bumps and bruises. She’ll be fine.

6. A: You’re here! I ________________ about you. What happened to make you so late?
   B: I couldn’t start my car. The battery was dead.

7. Maureen _______________ thoroughly ______________ when her canoe tipped over and she fell into the river. She looked like a drowned rat.

8. In two weeks the school term will be finished. I’d better ________________ on my term paper before it’s too late. I’ve been procrastinating too long.
9. It was a real tragedy. The rains were torrential, and the mudslide completely covered everything. Three houses _________________ in the mud when it rolled down the hillside. We could barely see the rooftops.

10. A: I heard about your embarrassing situation last night.
   B: It was awful! I put my big toe in the faucet while I was taking a bath, and it ________________! I couldn’t pull it out no matter how hard I tried.

◊ PRACTICE 20. The passive with get. (Chart 11-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using an appropriate form of get and the past participle of the verbs in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accept</th>
<th>dress</th>
<th>embarrass</th>
<th>invite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>elect</td>
<td>fire</td>
<td>mug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheat</td>
<td>electrocute</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>ruin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I shouldn’t have parked my car near the construction site. It ________________ by falling rocks. Now it’s covered with dents and scratches.

2. Tom has applied to three top universities. Since he’s an excellent student, I’m sure he’ll ________________ by at least one of them. If he doesn’t, there are other good schools he can attend.

3. Alex thought he had gotten a good deal when he bought a diamond ring from some guy on the street, but the “stone” turned out to be glass and was practically worthless. Alex ________________.

4. A: I can’t believe Paul ________________ from his job. I thought he was doing well.
   B: He was, but then he had a major disagreement with his boss, and tempers were flying. I hope he gets his job back.

5. A: Let’s take the subway.
   B: Not me! The last time I was on the subway, I ________________ . A man knocked me down and stole my wallet.

6. A: Did you ________________ to the Saunders’ dinner party tonight?
   B: Yes, but I can’t go.

7. A: You’re all out of breath!
   B: I was late getting home and had to ________________ quickly. Then I ran all the way over here.
   A: Well, that explains why your collar is up and your tie is crooked.

8. The animal was running through the woods when it suddenly ________________ in the hunter’s trap.

9. It was a close election. The new president ________________ by a very small margin.
10. What are you doing?! Don’t let the cord to your electric hair dryer fall into the sink. You’ll ________________!

11. We managed to save some of the furniture, but many of our things ________________ when the floodwaters poured into our house.

12. During the school play, little Annie ________________ when she couldn’t remember the lines she was supposed to say.

◊ PRACTICE 21. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using an appropriate form (PRESENT OR PAST PARTICIPLE) of the italicized word.

1. The book interests me. (a) It is an _____________ book. (b) I am _____________ in it.

2. That chemical irritates your skin. (a) The chemical is _________________. (b) Your skin is _________________.

3. The trip tired everybody. (a) Everyone was _________________. (b) The trip was _________________.

4. Ann boiled an egg. (a) She took the egg out of the ________________ water. (b) She had a ________________ egg for breakfast.

5. The news upset us. (a) We were _________________. (b) The news was _________________.

6. The instructions on the box for assembling the tool confuse me. (a) They are _________________. (b) I am thoroughly _________________.

7. Bob’s grades disappointed his parents. (a) His grades were _________________. (b) His parents were _________________.

8. My father often reassured me. (a) He was a very ________________ person. (b) I always felt ________________ when I was around him.

9. I waited for two hours to see the doctor, and it really frustrated me! (a) Long waits such as that can be very _________________. (b) I was _________________.

10. Anna has a noise in her car that disturbs her. (a) It is a ________________ noise. (b) She is ________________ when she hears it.

11. Jessica’s arguments convinced us. (a) She presented ________________ arguments. (b) We were _________________.

12. The tender love story moved the audience. (a) It was a ________________ story. (b) The audience felt _________________.

The Passive 107
13. Their behavior shocked us. (a) It was ____________________ behavior. (b) We were ____________________.

14. The sad movie depressed me. (a) I was ___________ ___________ . (b) It was a ____________________ movie.

15. The unkind teacher's harsh words humiliated the student. (a) The ____________________ student hung his head in shame. (b) The student never forgot that ____________________ experience.

16. The newspaper account of the new medical discovery intrigued me. (a) It was an ____________________ account. (b) Other ____________________ people wrote the newspaper to get more information.

◊ PRACTICE 22. Participial adjectives. (Chart 11-8)
Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses.

1. The poor people who live in shacks south of the city don't have (run) _________________ water.

2. No one may attend the lecture except (invite) _________________ guests.

3. The (suggest) _________________ remedy for the common cold is to rest and to drink plenty of fluids.

4. Because we have a (write) _________________ agreement, our landlord won't be able to raise our rent for two years.

5. After an (exhaust) _________________ trip of twelve hours, Jason fell asleep at the dinner table.

6. There are many (stimulate) _________________ activities in a large city.

7. The anthropologist recorded the tribe's (speak) _________________ language with a small tape recorder.

8. I like to hear the sound of gently (fall) _________________ rain.

9. (Freeze) _________________ fish is as nutritious as fresh fish, but it doesn't taste quite as good.

10. The (invade) _________________ army plundered the villages of food and valuables.

11. Skydiving is a (thrill) _________________ experience.

12. Ben's tasteless jokes didn't produce the (intend) _________________ effect. Instead, his guests were offended.

13. The professor dispelled the tense atmosphere in the classroom by beginning her lecture with some (amuse) _________________ anecdotes.
14. That country is highly industrialized but has very little arable land. Its economy depends upon the export of various (manufacture) ____________ goods in exchange for imported agricultural products.

15. When I get home from work, I’m going to take a long, (relax) ____________ bath.

16. The scientist reviewed all of his procedures for the experiment after the (expect) ____________ results did not occur.

17. When Brenda heard the news of the (approach) ____________ hurricane, she bought flashlight batteries, candles, and canned food to prepare for the storm.

18. Bright children have (inquire) ____________ minds.

19. The game was played in our stadium. The (visit) ____________ team scored the (win) ____________ goal in the last seconds of the soccer game. Nevertheless, the (disappoint) ____________ fans continued to cheer our team.

20. I heard some (encourage) ____________ news.

21. Sally spends her vacations in the mountains. The fresh air invigorates her. She likes the cool, (invigorate) ____________ air.

22. Waste from the factory poured into the river and contaminated it. Some of the villagers got sick from eating (contaminate) ____________ fish.

◊ PRACTICE 23. Verb form review: active and passive. (Chapters 1 → 5 and 11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. Only coffee and dessert (serve) ____________ at the reception yesterday.

2. Kim wants very badly to make the Olympic team next year. She (train) ____________ hard for the last two years.

3. I’ve looked in my purse, on the dresser, in my coat pocket, and on all of the tables in the house, but I can’t find my keys anywhere. They (lose) ____________.

4. Some people in my country don’t take politics seriously. In a recent parliamentary election, a cartoon character named Donald Duck (receive) ____________ 291 votes.

5. According to present company policy, bonuses for the most sales (give) ____________ to the staff at the end of July every year.

6. According to our Constitution, everyone is equal. But in truth, some minorities (discriminate) ____________ against in our country. In the last 20 years, new laws (enact) ____________ to help ensure equality in housing and job opportunities.

7. Mark is a genius. By the time he graduated, he (offer) ____________ jobs by a dozen computer companies.
8. When I (finish) __________ my work, I’m going to take a walk.

9. After the test papers (return) __________ to the students in class tomorrow, the students (give) __________ their next assignment.

10. The Olympic Games began in 776 B.C. in Olympia, a small town in Greece. At that time, only Greeks (allow) __________ to compete in them.

11. I (fool, not) __________ when Linda told us she’d won a million dollars at the racetrack. I knew she was only kidding.

12. There are certain (establish) __________ procedures that must (follow) __________ in conducting a scientific experiment.

13. Due to his abrasive, (irritate) __________ manner, Mr. Morrow has difficulty getting along with his co-workers. He (replace) __________ by Mr. Han next month as the coordinator of the production plans.

14. When Jake put a coin in the (vend) __________ machine for a can of soda pop, nothing came out. So in a fit of temper, he (kick) __________ it hard. Suddenly, it (fall) __________ over, right on top of Jake, who (injure, seriously) __________ __________. Jake (end) __________ up in the hospital for three weeks, and today he (wear, still) __________ a cast on his arm. I bet that’s the last time he ever kicks a (vend) __________ machine.
15. I have a serious problem with my (propose) _______________ class schedule this semester. The chemistry class that I need for my science requirement (offer, not) _______________ _______________ this semester. I don't know what to do. I need that class in order to graduate in June.

16. A: Arthur (jog) ______________________ for a full hour. He must be tired.
B: Why is he jogging so much these days?
A: He (plan) ______________________ to run in the 10k race in Chicago next month, and he wants to be ready for it.

17. A census is a survey of the population of a country. In the United States, a population census (conduct) ______________________ by the government every ten years. Questionnaires (send) ______________________ to every household in the country. People (ask) ______________________ about such things as their employment, education, housing, and family size. After the information (collect) ______________________, it (publish) ______________________ by the Census Bureau. Many government agencies (use) ______________________ this information to make plans for the future about housing, agriculture, urban development, public transportation, and schools.
Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: Ms. Haugen ___ at the Ajax Company.
A. is employing    B. employed    C. employing    D. is employed

1. I still can’t believe it! My bicycle ______ last night.
A. was stolen    B. was stealing    C. stolen    D. stole

2. The current constitutional problem is ______ by the top legal minds in the country.
A. studying    B. being studied    C. been studied

3. Something funny ______ in class yesterday.
A. happened    B. was happened    C. happens    D. is happened

4. The child’s arm was swollen because he ______ by a bee.
A. stung    B. had stung    C. had been stung

5. Today, many serious childhood diseases ______ by early immunization.
A. are preventing    B. can prevent    C. prevent    D. can be prevented

6. I ______ with you on that subject.
A. am agree    B. am agreed    C. agreeing    D. agree

7. Many U.S. automobiles ______ in Detroit, Michigan.
A. manufacture    B. have manufactured    C. are manufactured    D. are manufacturing

8. Let’s go ahead and do it now. Nothing ______ by waiting.
A. accomplishes    B. accomplished    C. has accomplished    D. will be accomplished

9. “When ______?”
   “In 1928.”
A. penicillin was discovered    C. was penicillin discovered
B. did penicillin discovered    D. did penicillin discover

10. In recent years, the government has imposed pollution controls on automobile manufacturers. Both domestic and imported automobiles must ______ anti-pollution devices.
A. equip with    C. equip by
B. be equipped with    D. be equipped by

11. A shortage of water is a problem in many parts of the world. In some areas, water ______ from the ground faster than nature can replenish the supply.
A. is being taken    B. has been taking    C. is taking    D. has taken

12. Vitamin C ______ by the human body. It gets into the bloodstream quickly.
A. absorbs easily    C. is easily absorbed
B. is easily absorbing    D. absorbed easily
13. "When can I have my car back?"
   "I think it'll _____ late this afternoon."
   A. finish       B. be finished      C. have finished    D. be finish

14. I didn't think my interview went very well, but I guess it must have. Despite all my anxiety, I _____ for the job I wanted. I'm really going to work hard to justify their confidence.
   A. was hiring    B. hired          C. got hiring       D. got hired

15. My country _____ the pursuit of world peace.
   A. is dedicating to          C. is dedicating by
   B. is dedicated to                 D. is dedicated by

16. About 15,000 years ago, northern Wisconsin _____ under ice a mile deep.
   A. buried       B. was burying    C. was buried     D. had buried

17. Ed was new on the job, but he quickly fit himself into the _____ routine of the office.
   A. established    B. establishing  C. establishes   D. establish

18. The Mayan Indians _____ an accurate and sophisticated calendar more than seven centuries ago.
   A. were developed   B. developed    C. are developed  D. have been developed

19. George is _____ Lisa.
   A. marry with    B. marry to       C. married with   D. married to

20. The rescuers _____ for their bravery and fortitude in locating the lost mountain climbers.
   A. were praised   B. praised       C. were praising  D. praising
Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: Ms. Haugen ______ at the Ajax Company.
A. is employing  B. employed  C. employing  D. is employed

1. “Can’t we do something about the situation?”
   “Something ______ right now.”
   A. is doing  B. is done  C. is being done  D. has been doing

2. “Are you interested in scuba diving?”
   “Very. Undersea life is ______.”
   A. fascinated  B. fascinating  C. being fascinating  D. being fascinated

3. The university ______ by private funds as well as by tuition income and grants.
   A. is supported  B. supports  C. is supporting  D. has supported

4. My car made strange noises, sputtered to a stop, and then wouldn’t start again. Fortunately, the mechanic at my garage ______ the source of the problem.
   A. was discover  C. was discovered
   B. discovered  D. has been discovered

5. “Ms. Jones, please type those letters before noon.”
   “They’ve already ______, sir. They’re on your desk.”
   A. typed  B. been typed  C. being typed  D. been being typed

6. “Has the committee made its decision yet?”
   “Not yet. They are still ______ the proposal.”
   A. considering  C. being considered
   B. been considered  D. considered

7. In some rural areas of the United States, health care ______ by only a small number of doctors, nurses, and other health professionals. It’s often more than they can handle.
   A. is providing  C. provides
   B. is being provided  D. provided

8. “How did that window ______?”
   “I don’t know.”
   A. get broken  B. broke  C. got broken  D. broken

9. Renoir is one of the most popular French impressionist painters. His paintings ______ masterpieces all over the world.
   A. had considered  C. are considered
   B. are considering  D. consider

10. As the fairy tale goes, the prince ______ into a frog by an evil magician, and only a kiss from a beautiful princess could restore him to his original state.
    A. turned  C. was turned
    B. was turning  D. had been turning

11. When I woke up and looked outside, the landscape had changed. The ground had been lightly ______ with a dusting of snow during the night.
    A. covering  B. cover  C. covers  D. covered
12. We can’t even walk in this storm. Let’s wait in the hallway where we’ll be _______ the strong winds until things quiet down.
   A. protected from   B. protected by   C. protecting from   D. protecting by

13. “_______ about the eight o’clock flight to Chicago?”
   “Not yet.”
   A. Has been an announcement made   C. Has an announcement been made
   B. Has an announcement made       D. Has been made an announcement

14. Last night a tornado swept through Rockville. It ______ everything in its path.
   A. destroyed       C. was being destroyed
   B. was destroyed   D. had been destroyed

15. Be sure to wash these vegetables thoroughly. A lot of pesticide residue ______ on unwashed produce.
   A. can find       B. can found       C. can be found   D. can be finding

16. The building of the bridge had been delayed for three years because of political problems on both sides of the river. Finally, it ______ because the public demanded action, and now many hours of driving have been saved for daily commuters.
   A. was constructed C. constructed
   B. gets constructed D. has constructed

17. On Friday afternoon before a three-day holiday weekend, the highways ______ people on their way out of the city.
   A. are crowding by               C. are crowded with
   B. are being crowd with         D. crowd by

18. Fortunately, the hospital’s new air-conditioning system ______ when the first heat wave of the summer arrived.
   A. had installed               C. had been installed
   B. installed                   D. had been installing

19. It’s hard to believe that my application for a scholarship ______. I was sure I’d get it. I don’t know now if I’ll go to school next year.
   A. was denied                 B. denied
   C. was denying                D. has denied

20. The man died because medical help was not summoned. A doctor should ______ immediately.
   A. have called               B. been called
   C. called                   D. have been called
CHAPTER 12
Noun Clauses

◊ PRACTICE 1. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Identify noun clauses and questions. Look at the underlined part of each sentence. If
the underlined part is a question, circle Q. If it is a noun clause, circle N.Cl. Add the necessary
punctuation.

1. Q N.Cl. I couldn’t hear him. **What did he say?**
2. Q N.Cl. I couldn’t hear what he said.
3. Q N.Cl. I need some information. **Where does Tom live?** I have to send him a letter.
4. Q N.Cl. I need to know where Tom lives. I have to send him a letter.
5. Q N.Cl. There’s something I don’t understand. **Why did Barb cancel her vacation plans?**
6. Q N.Cl. I don’t understand why Barb canceled her vacation plans.
7. Q N.Cl. I can’t tell you what they did. You’ll have to ask Jim.
8. Q N.Cl. **What did they do?** Please tell me.
9. Q N.Cl. Do you know that woman? **Who is she?** She looks familiar.
10. Q N.Cl. Do you see that woman over there? Do you know who she is. She looks familiar.
11. Q N.Cl. **Where did Ann go?** Do you know?
12. Q N.Cl. **Where Ann went** is a secret.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: If the given words are a question, insert a capital letter and a question mark. If the
given words are a noun clause, write “I don’t know” and a final period.

1. **W** where is he?
2. I don’t know where he is.
3. I don’t know what he did.
4. **W** what did he do?
5. how old is he
Practice 3. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Make a question from the given sentence. The words in parentheses should be the answer to the question you make. Use a question word (who, what, how, etc.). Then change the question to a noun clause.

1. That man is (Mr. Robertson).
   Question: ____________
   Noun clause: I want to know ____________

2. George lives (in Los Angeles).
   Question: ____________________________
   Noun clause: I want to know ____________________________

3. Ann bought (a new dictionary).
   Question: ____________________________
   Noun clause: Do you know ____________________________

4. It is (350 miles) to Denver from here.
   Question: ____________________________
   Noun clause: I need to know ____________________________

5. Jack was late to class (because he missed the bus).
   Question: ____________________________
   Noun clause: The teacher wants to know ____________________________
6. That is (Ann’s) pen.

QUESTION: ____________________________

NOUN CLAUSE: Tom wants to know ____________________________

7. Alex saw (Ms. Frost) at the meeting.

QUESTION: ____________________________

NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know ____________________________

8. (Jack) saw Ms. Frost at the meeting.

QUESTION: ____________________________

NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know ____________________________

9. Alice likes (this) book best, (not that one).

QUESTION: ____________________________

NOUN CLAUSE: I want to know ____________________________

10. The plane is supposed to land (at 7:14 p.m.).

QUESTION: ____________________________

NOUN CLAUSE: Could you tell me ____________________________

◊ PRACTICE 4. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Make questions and noun clauses.

Example:

SPEAKER A: Make a question from each given sentence. The words in parentheses should be the answer to your question.

SPEAKER B: Keep your book closed. Change Speaker A’s question into a noun clause. Begin your sentence with “(Name of Speaker A) wants to know . . . .”

1. Fred* lives (in an apartment).
   Speaker A: Where does Fred live?
   Speaker B: (Yoko) wants to know where Fred lives.

2. It's (ten o'clock).
   Speaker A: What time is it?
   Speaker B: (Roberto) wants to know what time it is.

3. Tom wants (a watch) for his birthday.

4. Jane gets to school (by bus).

*To Student A: Use the name of a class member instead of the name in the exercise if you wish. For example: Where does Ali live? (instead of Where does Fred live?)
5. Vacation starts (on June 3rd).

6. Sue left class early (because she didn't feel well).

7. The movie is going to last (two hours and ten minutes).

8. Mary called (Jim).

9. (Mary) called Jim.

10. Alice talked to the teacher about (the test).

11. Alice talked to (the teacher) about the test.

12. (Alice) talked to the teacher about the test.

13. Sue's plane will arrive (at 8:05).

14. (Two) students will be absent from class tomorrow.

15. There are (over 10,000) lakes in Minnesota.

16. It's (twenty-five miles) to Springfield from here.

17. Jane (studied) last night.

18. We're supposed to buy (this) book, (not that book).

19. Ann likes (chocolate) ice cream the best.

20. A robin's egg is (turquoise blue).

21. That woman is (Mrs. Anderson).

22. (Mr. Anderson) is talking on the telephone.

23. That's (Sam's) notebook.

24. (Jessica's) car was stolen.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Questions and noun clauses that begin with a question word.
(Charts 12-1 and 12-2; Appendix Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Use the words in parentheses to complete the sentences. Use any appropriate verb tense. Some of the completions contain noun clauses and some contain questions.

1. A: John is searching every drawer. Do you know what (he's looking for)? (he, look for)

   B: I have no idea. Why don't I just ask him? John? What (are you looking for)? (you, look for)
2. A: I heard that Sam changed his mind about going on the picnic. Why ___________ ___________ to stay home? Is something wrong? (he, decide)
   B: I don’t know. Maybe Jane can tell us why ________________ not to come with us. Let’s ask her. I hope he’s okay. (he, decide)

3. A: Whose book ________________? (this, be)
   B: It’s not mine. I don’t know whose _________________. (it, be)

4. A: Did Jack get enough food when he went to the market? How much fish _______________ _______________? It takes a lot of fish to feed 12 people. (he, buy)
   B: Just relax. I don’t know exactly how much fish ________________, but I’m sure there’ll be enough for dinner for all of us. (he, buy)

5. A: I need a math tutor. Do you know who ________________? (John’s tutor, be)
   B: No. Let me ask Phil. Excuse me, Phil? Who ________________? Do you know? (John’s tutor, be)

6. A: Lucy, why ________________ for the exam? You could have done much better if you’d been prepared. (you, study, not)
   B: Well, Professor Morris, why ________________ for the exam is a long story. I intended to, but . . . (I, study, not)

◊ PRACTICE 6. Changing yes/no and information questions to noun clauses.
(Charts 12-2 and 12-3)

Directions: Complete each sentence by changing the question in parentheses to a noun clause.

1. (Will it rain?) I wonder ___________.
2. (When will it rain?) I wonder ___________.
3. (Is Sam at home?)
   I don’t know _______________ at home.
4. (Where is Sam?)
   I don’t know _______________.
5. (Did Jane call?)
   Ask Tom _______________.
6. (What time did she call?)
   Ask Tom _______________.
7. (Why is the earth called “the water planet”?)
   Do you know _______________ “the water planet”?
8. (How far is it from New York City to Jakarta?)
   I wonder _______________ from New York to Jakarta.
9. (Has Susan ever been in Portugal?)
   I wonder ___________________________ in Portugal.

10. (Does she speak Portuguese?)
    I wonder ___________________________ Portuguese.

11. (Who did Ann play tennis with?)
    I wonder ___________________________ tennis with.

12. (Who won the tennis match?)
    I wonder ___________________________ the tennis match.

13. (Did Ann win?)
    I wonder ___________________________.

14. (Do all creatures, including fish and insects, feel pain in the same way as humans do?)
    I wonder ___________________________ pain in the same way as humans do.

15. (Can birds communicate with each other?)
    Do you know ___________________________ with each other?

16. (How do birds communicate with each other?)
    Have you ever studied ___________________________ with each other?

17. (Where is the nearest post office?)
    Do you know ___________________________?

18. (Is there a post office near here?)
    Do you know ___________________________ near here?
PRACTICE 7. Question words and whether followed by infinitives. (Chart 12-4)

Directions: Using the idea in the question in parentheses, complete each sentence with a question word or whether followed by an infinitive.

1. (Where should I buy the meat for the lamb stew?)
   I don't know __________ the meat for the lamb stew.

2. (Should I stay home or go to the movie?)
   Tom can't decide __________ stay _______ home or _______ go _______ to the movie.

3. (How can I fix the toaster?)
   Jack doesn't know _______ fix _______ the toaster.

4. (Should I look for another job?)
   Jason is wondering _______ (or not) to look _______ for another job.

5. (Where can I get a map of the city?)
   Ann wants to know ____________________________________________ a map of the city.

6. (Should I go to the meeting?)
   Al is trying to decide _______________________________ to the meeting.

7. (What time should I pick you up?)
   I need to know ________________________________ you up.

8. (Who should I talk to about this problem?)
   I don't know ________________________________ to about this problem.

9. (Should I take a nap or do my homework?)
   I can't decide __________________________ a nap or ________ my homework.

10. (How can I solve this problem for you?)
    My adviser can't figure out ________________________________ this problem for me.

11. (Where should I tell them to meet us?)
    I'm not sure ________________________________ them to meet us.

12. (How long am I supposed to cook this meat?)
    I can't remember ________________________________ this meat.

13. (What should I wear to the ceremony?)
    I can't decide ________________________________ to the ceremony.

14. (How much coffee should I make for the meeting?)
    You'll have to tell me ________________________________ for the meeting.

15. (Which essay should I use for the contest?)
    Susan can't decide ________________________________ for the contest.

16. (Should I take a year off from work and travel around the world? Or should I keep working and save my money?)
    Alice can't decide ________________________________ a year off from work and ___________ around the world, or ________ working and _________ her money.
**PRACTICE 8. That-clauses. (Chart 12-5)**

*Directions:* Combine each pair of sentences into one that contains a noun clause. Begin the new sentence with That or It.

*Examples:* The weather is not going to improve. That is apparent.

- It is apparent that the weather is not going to improve. OR
- That the weather is not going to improve is apparent.

Pollution diminishes the quality of our lives. That is hard to deny.

- That pollution diminishes the quality of our lives is hard to deny. OR
- It is hard to deny that pollution diminishes the quality of our lives.

1. No one stopped to help Sam when he had car trouble. That is surprising.

2. People in modern cities are distrustful of each other. That is unfortunate.

3. People in my village always help each other. That is still true.

4. People need each other and need to help each other. That is undeniably true.

5. People have a moral duty to help others in need. That seems obvious to me.

6. People today are afraid to help strangers. That is a pity.

7. People in cities live in densely populated areas but don’t know their neighbors. That seems strange to me.

**PRACTICE 9. Using the fact that. (Chart 12-5)**

*Directions:* Combine each pair of sentences into one sentence by using the fact that.

1. I studied for three months for the examination. Regardless of that, I barely passed.
   
   -> Regardless of the fact that I studied for three months for the examination, I barely passed.

2. Jim lost our tickets to the concert. There’s nothing we can do about that.

3. We are going to miss one of the best concerts of the year because of Jim’s carelessness. That makes me a little angry.

4. We can’t go to the concert. In view of that, let’s plan to go to a movie.

5. I couldn’t speak a word of Italian and understood very little. Except for that, I had a wonderful time visiting my Italian cousins in Rome.

6. Many people living in Miami speak only Spanish. When I first visited Florida, I was surprised by that.

7. Bobby broke my grandmother’s antique flower vase. That isn’t important.

8. He lied about it. That is what bothers me.
9. Prof. Brown, who had had almost no teaching experience, was hired to teach the advanced physics courses. At first, some of us objected to that, but she has proven herself to be one of the best.

10. That automobile has the best safety record of any car manufactured this year. I am impressed by that and would definitely recommend that you buy that make.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Quoted speech. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: Add the necessary punctuation and capitalization to these sentences. Do not change the word order or add or delete any words.

1. The athlete said where is my uniform
   → The athlete said, “Where is my uniform?”

2. I can’t remember Margaret said where I put my purse

3. Sandy asked her sister how can I help you get through this difficulty

4. I’ll answer your question later he whispered I’m trying to hear what the speaker is saying

5. As the students entered the room, the teacher said please take your seats quickly

6. Why did I ever take this job Barry wondered aloud

7. After crashing into me and knocking all of my packages to the ground, the man stopped abruptly, turned to me and said softly excuse me

8. Do we want four more years of corruption and debt the candidate shouted into the microphone no the crowd screamed

9. The woman behind the fast-food counter shouted who’s next
   I am three people replied at the same time
   Which one of you is really next she asked impatiently
   I was here first said a young woman elbowing here way up to the counter I want a hamburger
   You were not hollered an older man standing next to her I was here before you were give me a chicken sandwich and a cup of coffee
   Wait a minute I was in line first said a young man give me a cheeseburger and a chocolate shake
   The woman behind the restaurant counter spotted a little boy politely waiting his turn she turned to him and said hi, Sonny what can I get for you
Practise 11. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Change the sentences by changing quoted to reported speech. Use formal sequence of tenses.

1. Tom said, “I am busy.” → Tom said that he ___was___ busy.
2. Tom said, “I need some help.” → Tom said that he ________________ some help.
3. Tom said, “I am having a good time.” → Tom said that he ______________ a good time.
4. Tom said, “I have finished my work.” → Tom said that he ________________ his work.
5. Tom said, “I finished it an hour ago.” → Tom said that he ________________ it an hour ago.
6. Tom said, “I will arrive at noon.” → Tom said that he ________________ at noon.
7. Tom said, “I am going to be there at noon.” → Tom said that he ________________ there at noon.
8. Tom said, “I can solve that problem.” → Tom said that he ________________ that problem.
9. Tom said, “I may come early.” → Tom said that he ________________ early.
10. Tom said, “I might come early.” → Tom said that he ________________ early.
11. Tom said, “I must leave at eight.” → Tom said that he ________________ at eight.
12. Tom said, “I have to leave at eight.” → Tom said that he ________________ at eight.
13. Tom said, “I should go to the library.” → Tom said that he ________________ to the library.
14. Tom said, “I ought to go to the library.” → Tom said that he ________________ to the library.
15. Tom said, “Stay here.” → Tom told me ________________ here.
16. Tom said, “Don’t move.” → Tom told me ________________.
17. Tom said, “Are you comfortable?” → Tom asked me if I ________________ comfortable.
18. Tom said, “When did you arrive?” → Tom asked me when I ________________.

Practise 12. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the quoted speech to reported speech. Use formal sequence of tenses as appropriate. (Pay attention to whether the reporting verb is past or present.)

1. I asked Martha, “Are you planning to enter law school?”
   I asked Martha if/whether she was planning __________ to enter law school.
2. Ed just asked me, “What time does the movie begin?”
   Ed wants to know __________ what time the movie begins.
3. Fred asked, “Can we still get tickets for the concert?”
   Fred asked __________ if/whether we could still get __________ tickets for the concert.
4. Thomas said to us, "How can I help you?"
   Thomas wants to know how he can help us.

5. Eva asked, "Can you help me, John?"
   Eva asked John her.

6. Charles said, "When will the final decision be made?"
   Charles wanted to know.

7. Frank asked Elizabeth, "Where have you been all afternoon?"
   Frank asked Elizabeth all afternoon.

8. Bill just said, "What is Kim's native language?"
   Bill wants to know.

9. Yesterday Ron said to Bob, "What's the problem?"
   Ron asked Bob her.

10. I asked myself, "Am I doing the right thing?"
    I wondered the right thing.

11. All of the farmers are asking, "When is this terrible drought going to end?"
    All of the farmers are wondering to end.

12. George asked me, "What time do I have to be at the laboratory in the morning?"
    George asked me to be at the laboratory in the morning.

13. Beth asked, "Who should I give this message to?"
    Beth asked me her.

14. Our tour guide said, "We'll be leaving around 7:00 in the morning."
    Our tour guide told us around 7:00 in the morning.

15. Nancy asked, "Why didn't you call me?"
    Nancy wanted to know her.

◊ PRACTICE 13. Reported speech. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences using the information in the dialogue. Use past verb forms in the noun clauses if appropriate and possible.

1. Joanne asked me, "Do you know Dave Clark?"
   "Yes," I replied. "I've known him for many years. Why do you want to know?"
   Joanne asked me if I knew Dave Clark. I replied that I had known him for many years and asked her why she wanted to know.

2. I asked Mary, "Why do you still smoke?"
   Mary replied, "I've tried to quit many times, but I just don't seem to be able to."
   When I asked Mary why she , she replied that she to quit many times, but she just to be able to.
3. The teacher asked, "Bobby, what is the capital of Australia?"
   Bobby replied, "I'm not sure, but I think it's Sydney."
   Yesterday in class, Bobby's teacher asked him ___________________________. He answered that he ___________ sure, but that he _________________ Sydney.

4. The children inquired of their father, "Will we be able to visit the Air and Space Museum and the Natural History Museum, too?"
   Their father said, "We will if we leave the hotel before 10 o'clock tomorrow morning."
   The children asked their father whether they ______________________ able to visit the Air and Space Museum and the Natural History Museum, too. He told them they ________________ if they ______________ the hotel before 10 o'clock the next morning.

5. I told Jenny, "It's pouring outside. You'd better take an umbrella."
   Jenny said, "It'll stop soon. I don't need one."
   I told Jenny that it ________________ outside and that she ________________ an umbrella. However, Jenny said she thought the rain ________________ soon and that she ________________ one.

6. "Where are you going, Ann?" I asked.
   "I'm on my way to the market," she replied. "Do you want to come with me?"
   "I'd like to, but I have to stay home. I have a lot of work to do."
   "Okay," Ann said. "Is there anything I can pick up for you at the market?"
   "How about a few bananas? And some apples if they're fresh?"
   "Sure. I'd be happy to."
   When I asked Ann where she _____________________, she said she _____________ on her way to the market and ________________ me to come with her. I said I ________________ to, but that I __________ to stay home because I __________ a lot of work to do. Ann kindly asked me if there ________________ anything she ________________ pick up for me at the market. I asked her to pick up a few bananas and some apples if they ________________ fresh. She said she'd be happy to.

7. "Where are you from?" asked the passenger sitting next to me on the plane.
   "Chicago," I said.
   "That's nice. I'm from Mapleton. It's a small town in northern Michigan. Have you heard of it?"
   "Oh yes, I have," I said. "Michigan is a beautiful state. I've been there on vacation many times."
   "Were you in Michigan on vacation this year?"
   "No. I went far away from home this year. I went to India," I replied.
   "Oh, that's nice. Is it a long drive from Chicago to India?" she asked me. My mouth fell open. I didn't know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.
The passenger sitting next to me on the plane ________ me where I ________ from. I ________ her I ________ from Chicago. She ________ that she ________ from Mapleton, a small town in northern Michigan. She wondered if I ________ ________ ________ of it, and I told her that I ________ . I went on to say that I thought Michigan ________ a beautiful state and explained that I ________ ________ there on vacation many times. She ________ me if I ________ ________ in Michigan on vacation this year. I replied that I ________ ________ and ________ her that I ________ ________ far away, to India. Then she asked me if it ________ a long drive from Chicago to India! My mouth fell open. I didn’t know how to respond. Some people certainly need to study geography.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Using the subjunctive. (Chart 12-8)
Directions: Complete the sentences, using the idea of the words in parentheses.

1. (You should organize a camping trip.)
   The girls proposed that their scout leader ________ a camping trip.

2. (Ms. Hanson thinks that the director should divide our class into two sections.)
   Ms. Hanson recommended that our class ________ ________ into two sections.

3. (You must call home every week.)
   Dan’s parents insisted that he ________ ________ home every week.

4. (Someone must tell her the truth about her illness.)
   It is essential that she ________ ________ the truth about her illness.

5. (Open your suitcases for inspection.)
   The customs official demanded that all passengers ________ ________ their suitcases.

6. (Ann, you should take some art courses.)
   The counselor recommended that Ann ________ ________ some art courses.

7. (All parts of the motor must work correctly.)
   It is vital that all parts of the motor ________ ________ in proper working order.

8. (Please mail all packages at the central office.)
   The director requests that all packages ________ ________ at the central office.

9. (Soldiers must obey their officers.)
   It is imperative that soldiers ________ ________ their officers.

10. (We must remember to give the babysitter certain phone numbers to call in case of emergency.)
    It is important that the babysitter ________ ________ ________ phone numbers to call in case of emergency.
PRACTICE 15. Using -ever words. (Chart 12-9)

Directions: Complete these sentences by using -ever words.

1. As vice-president of international sales, Robert has complete control over his travel schedule. He can travel _______ whenever ______ he wants.

2. Robert is free to decide which countries he will visit during his overseas trips. He can travel _______ wherever ______ he wants.

3. The English professor told us that we could write our papers on ________________ subject we wanted as long as it related to the topics we discussed in class this semester.

4. There are only two appointment time slots remaining. You may select ________________ one you prefer.

5. To Ellen, the end justifies the means. She will do ________________ she has to do in order to accomplish her objective.

6. Linda is very amiable and gregarious. She makes friends with ________________ she meets.

7. It doesn’t matter which class you take to fulfill this requirement. Just take ________________ one fits best into your schedule.

8. ________________ is the last to leave the room should turn off the lights and lock the door.

9. I know that Norman will succeed. He’ll do ________________ is required to succeed.

10. My wife and I are going to ride our bicycles across the country. We will ride for six to seven hours every day, then stop ________________ we happen to be at the end of the day.
Example: He asked me where ____ B__.
A. did I live          B. I lived          C. do you live          D. that I lived

1. I talked to Bob two weeks ago. I thought he wanted to know about my cat, but I misunderstood him. He asked me where ______, not my cat.
   A. is my hat          B. my hat was          C. my hat is          D. was my hat

2. “The people in the apartment upstairs must have a lot of children.”
   “I don’t know how many ______, but it sounds like they have a dozen.”
   A. children do they have          C. children they have
   B. do they have children          D. they have children

3. Do you know ______? I myself have no idea.
   A. how many years the earth is          C. how long is the earth
   B. how old the earth is          D. how much time has been the earth

4. “There’s too much noise in this room. I can’t understand what ______.”
   A. is the professor saying          C. that the professor is saying
   B. is saying the professor          D. the professor is saying

5. When I was little, my father gave me some advice. He said ______ talk to strangers.
   A. I shouldn’t          B. that shouldn’t          C. don’t          D. that I don’t

6. “I didn’t expect Ann’s husband to be here at the opera with her.”
   “I’m surprised, too. Ann must have insisted that ______ with her.”
   A. he come          B. he comes          C. he came          D. he had come

7. “Ms. Wright, can you give me a little extra help typing some letters today?”
   “Sorry, I can’t. The boss has an urgent report for me to write. She demanded that it ______ on her desk by 5 P.M. today.”
   A. was          B. will be          C. is          D. be

8. “Did you tell Carol where ______ us this evening?”
   “Yes, I did. I can’t understand why she is late.”
   A. should she meet          C. she meets
   B. she to meet          D. to meet

9. A fortune-teller predicted ______ inherit a lot of money before the end of the year.
   A. that I would          B. that I          C. what I will          D. what I

10. “Bill Frazer seems like a good person for the job, but we don’t know why he left his last job.”
    “I know why. He told me ______ a serious policy disagreement with his boss last January.”
    A. if he’d had          B. he’d had          C. what he’d had          D. that he had

11. “Is it true that you fell asleep in class yesterday and began to snore?”
    “Unfortunately, yes. ______ is unbelievable! I’m very embarrassed.”
    A. That I could do such a thing it          C. I could do such a thing it
    B. That I could do such a thing          D. I could do such a thing
12. “Officer, can you tell me how to get to Springfield?”
   “Sure. What part of Springfield ______ to go to?”
   A. do you want B. you want C. that you want D. where you want

13. “Is it true ______ the law says there is no smoking in restaurants in this city?”
   A. that what B. what C. if D. that

14. ______ prompt is important to our boss.
   A. A person is B. If a person is
   C. Whether or not a person is

15. A scientific observer of wildlife must note every detail of how ______ in their environment:
   their eating and sleeping habits, their social relationships, and their methods of self-
   protection.
   A. do animals live B. live animals C. do live animals D. animals live

16. The mystery movie was clever and suspenseful. The audience couldn’t guess ______
    committed the murder until the surprise ending.
   A. who he B. who had C. that who D. that

17. How do you like your new school? Tell me ______.
   A. who in your class is B. who is in your class
   C. who your class is D. your class who is in it

18. “What do you recommend ______ about this tax problem?”
   “I strongly suggest that we consult an expert as soon as possible.”
   A. do we do B. we will do C. we do D. should we do

19. The college does not grant degrees simply to ______ pays the cost of tuition; the student
    must satisfy the academic requirements.
   A. whoever B. who C. whomever D. whoever that

20. “What are you going to buy in this store?”
   “Nothing ______ want is much too expensive.”
Example: He asked me where B.
   A. did I live B. I lived C. do you live D. that I lived

1. "Does anybody know ______ on the ground?"
   "Your guess is as good as mine."
   A. how long this plane will be B. how long will this plane be
   C. how long will this plane be D. that how long this plane will be

2. "This restaurant is very expensive!"
   "It is, but order ______ want. Your birthday is a very special occasion."
   A. what is it you B. whatever you
   C. what you do D. whatever you do

3. Why did Beth ask you ______ a bicycle?
   A. that if you had B. do you have C. that you had D. if you had

4. "What did your grammar teacher want to talk to you about?"
   "I did badly on the last test. She ______ studied for it."
   A. said why hadn’t I B. asked why hadn’t I
   C. said why I hadn’t D. asked why I hadn’t

5. "Why are you staring out the window? What ______ about?"
   "Nothing."
   A. you are thinking B. you think
   C. are you thinking D. do you are thinking

6. "I can’t decide what color I want for my bedroom. What do you think?"
   "You should choose ______ color you want. You’re the one who will have to live with it."
   A. whichever that B. whatever C. however D. that what

7. "Did you remember to tell Marge ______ she should bring to the meeting tomorrow?"
   "Oh, my gosh! I completely forgot! I’m sorry."
   A. that B. what C. if D. that what

8. "My aunt has been feeling bad since Uncle George died. Is it because she’s depressed?"
   "I think so. ______ can cause debilitating physical symptoms is a medical fact."
   A. Depression B. That depression it C. That depression D. It is that depression

9. There was an earthquake on the coast yesterday. Fortunately, there was no loss of life. However, because of the danger of collapsing sea walls, it was essential that the area ______ evacuated quickly.
   A. to be B. will be C. be D. is

10. ______ saying was so important that I asked everyone to stop talking and listen.
    A. What the woman was B. The woman was
    C. That the woman was D. What was the woman
11. “This cake is terrible. What happened?”
   “It’s my grandmother’s recipe, but she forgot to tell me how long _______ it.”
   A. did I bake       B. should I bake      C. do I bake       D. to bake

12. “Let’s go to Riverton this weekend.”
   “Sounds like fun. _______ from here?”
   A. How far is       B. How far it is     C. It how far is   D. How far is it

13. “Somebody forgot this hat. I wonder _______.”
   A. whose is this hat    B. whose hat is
   B. whose hat this is   D. is this whose hat

14. Edward’s interview was very intense. The interviewer wanted to know many facts about his personal life, and even asked him _______ had ever used any illegal drugs of any kind.
   A. that if he     B. that he  C. if or not he   D. whether or not he

15. It is hoped that all present-day communicable diseases will be conquered. However, _______ about certain diseases is still not sufficient to prevent them from spreading easily among the population.
   A. what we know     B. what do we know   D. that we know what

16. “Why didn’t Henry attend the meeting this morning?”
   “He’s been very sick. His doctor insisted that he _______ in bed this week.”
   A. will stay      B. stayed     C. stays       D. stay

17. Nobody yet knew what _______ to cause the dam to burst, but the residents of the area organized quickly to protect life and property against the rising floods.
   A. happens        B. had happened  C. happen      D. did it happen

18. Did the teacher explain how _______ this problem?”
   A. do we solve     B. can we solve   C. to solve     D. solve

19. _______ the National Weather Bureau predicted severe storms did not deter the fishing boats from going out into the open seas.
   A. The fact that   B. That fact is that   D. The fact is that

20. Tom walked into the huge hall to register for classes. At first, he simply looked around and wondered what _______ supposed to do.
   A. was he       B. am I     C. he was     D. I am
PRACTICE 2. Basic patterns of adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-4)

Directions: In the spaces, write all the pronouns possible to complete each sentence. Write Ø if the sentence is correct without adding a pronoun.

1. Mr. Green is the man who(m) I was talking about.

2. She is the woman that sits next to me in class.

3. The hat that Tom is wearing is unusual.

4. Hunger and poverty are worldwide problems to which solutions must be found.

5. I enjoyed talking with the man I sat next to on the plane.

6. People fear flying avoid traveling by plane.

7. That is the man whose daughter won the spelling bee.

8. The people about whom the novelist wrote were factory workers and their families.

9. A barrel is a large container that is made of wood or metal.
PART I. Using subject pronouns in adjective clauses.

1. The bat is the only mammal which can fly.

2. People don’t get enough sleep may become short-tempered and irritable.

3. The cold weather swept in from the north damaged the fruit crop.

4. Alex bought a bicycle which is specially designed for long-distance racing.

5. I read about a woman that makes old-fashioned clocks for a living.

PART II. Using object pronouns in adjective clauses.

6. We used the map that my sister drew for us.

7. The teacher I like the most is Mrs. Grange.

8. Louise, tell us about the movie you saw last night.
9. The subject about Dr. Gold spoke was interesting.

10. The subjects we talk about in class are interesting.

11. The person to Ann spoke could not answer her question.

12. I enjoyed the people I talked to at the party.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Adjective clause patterns. (Charts 13-1 → 13-4)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using all possible forms. Use (b) as an adjective clause.

1. (a) Louis knows the woman.   (b) The woman is meeting us at the airport.
   → Louis knows the woman \{ who \} is meeting us at the airport.

2. (a) The chair is an antique.   (b) Sally inherited it from her grandmother.

3. (a) The bench was wet.   (b) I sat on it.

4. (a) The man finished the job in four days.   (b) I hired him to paint my house.

5. (a) I miss seeing the old woman.   (b) She used to sell flowers on that street corner.

6. (a) The architect is brilliant.   (b) Mario works with him.

7. (a) Mary tutors students.   (b) They need extra help in geometry.

8. (a) I took a picture of the rainbow.   (b) It appeared in the sky after the shower.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Adjective clauses: using whose. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using whose in an adjective clause.

1. (a) Do you know the man?   (b) His car is parked over there.
   → Do you know the man whose car is parked over there?

2. (a) I know a woman.   (b) Her name is May Day.

3. (a) The people were very hospitable.   (b) We visited their home.

4. (a) The school principal walked down the hallway to find the boy.   (b) His parents had been injured in an automobile accident.

5. (a) Mrs. Lake is the teacher.   (b) I enjoy her class the most.

6. (a) Any company is stifling the creativity of its workforce.   (b) Their employees are in constant fear of losing their jobs.
◊ PRACTICE 6. Adjective clauses: using where and when. (Charts 13-7 and 13-8)

Directions: Begin your response with “That is . . . .” Use where or when in an adjective clause.

Example: You were born in that city.
Response: That is the city where I was born.

1. We have class in that room.
2. We ate dinner at that restaurant.
3. Anna works in that building.
4. I was born in that year.
5. You eat lunch at that cafeteria.
6. The monsoons arrive in that month.
7. Alex lives on that street.
8. You spent your vacation on that island.
9. You went swimming in that lake.
10. You grew up in that town.
11. The space flight to Mars is scheduled to leave on that day.
12. The earthquake occurred in that country.
13. The examination will be given in that room.
14. You lived in that city until you were ten years old.
15. You felt the happiest at that time.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Adjective clauses. (Charts 13-1 → 13-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer or answers.

1. Yoko told me about students ______ have taken the entrance exam 13 times.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that

2. The secretary ______ I talked to didn’t know where the meeting was.
   A. which  B. whom  C. that  D. Ø

3. You need to talk to a person ______ you can trust. You will feel better if you do.
   A. whose  B. which  C. whom  D. Ø

4. Bob is the kind of person to ______ one can talk about anything.
   A. who  B. whom  C. that  D. him

5. He is a person ______ friends trust him.
   A. who  B. his  C. that  D. whose

6. I’m looking for an electric can opener ______ also can sharpen knives.
   A. who  B. which  C. that  D. Ø

7. People ______ live in glass houses shouldn’t throw stones.*
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. Ø

8. The problems ______ Tony has seem insurmountable.
   A. what  B. he  C. that  D. Ø

*This is an idiom that means people shouldn’t criticize others for faults they themselves have. For example, a lazy person shouldn’t criticize another person for being lazy.
9. The man ______ I introduced you to last night may be the next president of the university.
   A. which    B. whom    C. that    D. Ø

10. Cathy is trustworthy. She’s a person upon ______ you can always depend.
    A. who    B. whom    C. that    D. Ø

11. Your career should focus on a field in ______ you are genuinely interested.
    A. which    B. what    C. that    D. Ø

12. People ______ outlook on life is optimistic are usually happy people.
    A. whose    B. whom    C. that    D. which

◊ PRACTICE 8. Adjective clauses: subject-verb agreement.
   (Charts 13-1 and 13-2; Chapter 6)
   Directions: Choose the correct verb in italics.

1. There are three students in my class who speaks, speak French.

2. There is one student in my class who speaks, speak Greek.

3. The patients who is, are treated at City Hospital doesn’t, don’t need to have private physicians.

4. The courses this school offers, offer is, are listed in the catalog.

5. A pedometer is an instrument that measure measures the distance a person walks, walk.

6. People who suffers, suffer from extreme shyness can sometimes overcome their problem by taking a public speaking class.

7. In the months that has, have passed since the accident, Robert has regained the use of his legs.

8. Malnutrition and illiteracy are among the problems in the world that has, have no simple solutions.

9. Most advertisements are directed toward adults and teenagers, but you can see commercials on television that is, are aimed at prompting children to persuade their parents to buy certain products.

10. The requirements of the school as written in the catalog states, state that all students who wishes, wish to attend must take an entrance exam.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)
   Directions: Circle YES if the adjective clause requires commas and add them in the appropriate places. Circle NO if the adjective clause does not require commas.

1. YES NO I made an appointment with a doctor who is considered an expert on eye disorders.

2. YES NO I made an appointment with Dr. Raven, who is considered an expert on eye disorders.

3. YES NO The car that Al bought had had three previous owners, but it was in excellent condition.

4. YES NO We thoroughly enjoyed the music which we heard at the concert last Sunday.
5. YES NO Bogota which is the capital of Colombia is a cosmopolitan city.
6. YES NO They climbed Mount Rainier which is in the State of Washington twice last year.
7. YES NO Emeralds which are valuable gemstones are mined in Colombia.
8. YES NO The company offered the position to John whose department performed best this year.
9. YES NO On our trip to Africa we visited Nairobi which is near several fascinating game reserves and then traveled to Egypt to see the pyramids.
10. YES NO I think the waiter who took our order used to work at Captain Bob's Restaurant.
11. YES NO Someone who understands physics better than I do is going to have to help you.
12. YES NO Larry was very close to his only brother who was a famous social historian.
13. YES NO Violent tropical storms that occur in western Asia are called typhoons.
14. YES NO Similar storms that occur on the Atlantic side of the Americas are called hurricanes rather than typhoons.
15. YES NO A typhoon which is a violent tropical storm can cause great destruction.
16. YES NO According to the news report, the typhoon that threatened to strike the Indonesian coast has moved away from land and toward open water.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)
Directions: Choose the correct answer or answers.

1. Ms. Donaldson, _____ A _____ teaches linguistics at the university, recently received recognition for her research on the use of gestures in communication.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

2. A woman _____ A, D _____ teaches linguistics at the university received an award for outstanding research.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

3. The earth, _____ is the fifth largest planet in the solar system, is the third planet from the sun.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

4. A grant of $1.5 million was awarded to Dr. Sato, _____ has impressed the scientific community with his research on the common cold.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

5. The award for the Most Valuable Player was won by a player _____ the coaches and the entire team respect.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

6. The award was won by Dennis Johnson, _____ the coach highly respects.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

7. My accountant, _____ understands the complexities of the tax system, is doing my taxes this year.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø

8. The school board voted to close a neighborhood elementary school. The decision, _____ affected over 200 students, was not warmly received in the community.
   A. who B. whom C. which D. that E. Ø
9. Our office needs a secretary ______ knows how to use various word processing programs.
   A. who       B. whom       C. which     D. that     E. Ø

10. The winner of the Nobel Prize in physics dedicated the honor to his high school physics teacher, ______ had been an inspiration during his early years.
   A. who       B. whom       C. which     D. that     E. Ø

11. The consultant ______ was hired to advise us never really understood our situation.
   A. who       B. whom       C. which     D. that     E. Ø

12. I gave the check to Oliver, ______ promptly cashed it and spent all the money before the day was out.
   A. who       B. whom       C. which     D. that     E. Ø

13. The check ______ I gave Oliver was for work he’d done for me.
   A. who       B. whom       C. which     D. that     E. Ø

◊ PRACTICE 11. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Chart 13-10)

Directions: Choose the correct explanation of the meaning of each sentence.

1. The students, who attend class five hours per day, have become quite proficient in their new language.
   (a) All of the students attend class for five hours per day.
   b. Only some of the students attend class for five hours per day.

2. The students who attend class five hours per day have become quite proficient in their new language.
   a. All of the students attend class for five hours per day.
   b. Only some of the students attend class for five hours per day.

3. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists, who were to begin playing.
   a. All of the violinists were to begin playing.
   b. Only some of the violinists were to begin playing.

4. The orchestra conductor signaled the violinists who were to begin playing.
   a. All of the violinists were to begin playing.
   b. Only some of the violinists were to begin playing.

5. I put the vase on top of the TV set, which is in the living room.
   a. I have more than one TV set.
   b. I have only one TV set.

6. I put the vase on top of the TV set that is in the living room.
   a. I have more than one TV set.
   b. I have only one TV set.

7. Trees which lose their leaves in winter are called deciduous trees.
   a. All trees lose their leaves in winter.
   b. Only some trees lose their leaves in winter.

8. Pine trees, which are evergreen, grow well in a cold climate.
   a. All pine trees are evergreen.
   b. Only some pine trees are evergreen.
PRACTICE 12. Punctuating adjective clauses. (Charts 13-10 → 13-13)

Directions: Circle YES if the adjective clause requires commas and add the commas in the appropriate places. Circle NO if the adjective clause does not require commas.

1. YES NO Thirty people, two of whom were members of the crew, were killed in the ferry accident.
2. YES NO I’m trying to convince my mother to buy a small car which has front-wheel drive instead of a large car with rear-wheel drive.
3. YES NO Over 500 students took the entrance examination the results of which will be posted in the administration building at the end of the month.
4. YES NO The newspapers carried the story of an accident in which four pedestrians were injured.
5. YES NO The newly married couple that lives next door just moved here from California.
6. YES NO The new supervisor was not happy with his work crew none of whom seemed interested in doing quality work.
7. YES NO My oldest brother in whose house I lived for six months when I was ten has been a father to me in many ways.
8. YES NO Tom is always interrupting me which makes me mad.
9. YES NO To express the uselessness of worrying, Mark Twain once said, “I’ve had a lot of problems in my life most of which never happened.”

PRACTICE 13. Expressions of quantity in adjective clauses. (Chart 13-11)

Directions: Combine the sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

1. I received two job offers. I accepted neither of them.
   → I received two job offers, neither of which I accepted.
2. I have three brothers. Two of them are professional athletes.
3. Jerry is engaged in several business ventures. Only one of them is profitable.
4. The United States of America is a union of fifty states. The majority of them are located east of the Mississippi River.
5. The two women have already dissolved their business partnership. Both of them are changing careers.
6. Tom is proud of his success. Much of it has been due to hard work, but some of it has been due to good luck.


Directions: Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

1. Only a few of the movies that are shown at the Gray Theater are suitable for children.
   → Only a few of the movies shown at the Gray Theater are suitable for children.
2. We visited Madrid, which is the capital of Spain.
   → We visited Madrid, the capital of Spain.
3. The couple who live in the house next door are both college professors.
4. Astronomy, which is the study of planets and stars, is one of the world’s oldest sciences.
5. Only a small fraction of the eggs that are laid by a fish actually hatch and survive to adulthood.

6. Jasmine, which is a viny plant with fragrant flowers, grows only in warm places.

7. Arizona, which was once thought to be a useless desert, is today a rapidly growing industrial and agricultural state.

8. Simon Bolivar, who was a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.

9. In hot weather, many people enjoy lemonade, which is a drink that is made from lemon juice, water, and sugar.

10. I was awakened by the sound of laughter which came from the room which was next to mine at the motel.

11. Few tourists ever see a jaguar, which is a spotted wild cat that is native to tropical America.

◊ PRACTICE 15. Punctuating adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)
Directions: Add commas where necessary.

1. A national holiday has been established in memory of Martin Luther King, Jr. the leader of the civil rights movement in the United States in the 1950s and 1960s.

2. Neil Armstrong the first person to set foot on the moon reported that the surface was fine and powdery.

3. Mark Twain is an author known far and wide as one of the greatest American humorists.

4. Susan B. Anthony one of the first leaders of the campaign for women’s rights worked tirelessly during her lifetime to gain the right to vote for women.

◊ PRACTICE 16. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)
Directions: Combine the sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective phrase.

1. Louisville was founded in 1778. It is the largest city in Kentucky.
   
   + Louisville, the largest city in Kentucky, was founded in 1778.

2. John Quincy Adams was born on July 11, 1767. He was the sixth president of the United States.

3. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are used in Helsinki. It is the capital of Finland.

4. The Washington National Monument is a famous landmark in the nation’s capital. It is a towering obelisk made of white marble.

5. Honolulu has consistently pleasant weather. It is best known to the traveler for Waikiki Beach.

6. Libya is a leading producer of oil. It is a country in North Africa.
PRACTICE 17. Adjective phrases. (Charts 13-14 and 13-15)

Directions: Change all of the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

1. None of the pedestrians who were walking up and down the busy street stopped to help or even inquire about the elderly man who was slumped in the doorway of an apparently unoccupied building.
   → None of the pedestrians walking up and down the busy street stopped to help or even inquire about the elderly man slumped in the doorway of an apparently unoccupied building.

2. Food that passes from the mouth to the stomach goes through a tube which is called the esophagus.

3. Animals that are born in a zoo generally adjust to captivity better than those that are captured in the wild.

4. The children attended a special movie program that consisted of cartoons that featured Donald Duck and Mickey Mouse.

5. One of the most important foodstuffs in the world is flour, which is a fine powder that is made by grinding wheat or other grains.

6. Nero, who was Emperor of Rome from A.D. 54 to 68, is believed to have murdered both his mother and his wife.

7. The conclusion which is presented in that book states that most of the automobiles which are produced by American industry in the 1960s and '70s had some defect.

8. Pictures that showed the brutality of war entered the living rooms of millions of TV watchers on the nightly news.

9. The Indians who lived in Peru before the discovery of the New World by Europeans belonged to the Incan culture.

10. My uncle Elias, who is a restaurant owner, often buys fish and shellfish from boats that are docked at the local pier. Customers come from miles around to dine on a seafood feast that is considered to be the best in all of the northeastern United States.

11. Hundreds of volunteers went to a northern village yesterday to reinforce firefighters who are trying to save a settlement which is threatened by a forest fire. The fire started when a cigarette ignited oil which was leaking from a machine which is used to cut timber.

12. Researchers have developed a way to mark genes so that they glow in the dark, which is a technique that scientists can use to follow specific genetic activity of cells which are within plants and animals. This development, which was announced by the National Science Foundation, which is the sponsor of the research, should prove useful to scientists who study the basic functions of organisms.
PRACTICE 18. Error analysis: adjective clauses and phrases. (Charts 13-2 → 13-15)

Directions: All of the following sentences contain errors in adjective clauses, adjective phrases, or punctuation. Find the errors and correct them, using any appropriate form.

1. When we walked past the theater, there were a lot of people waited in a long line outside the box office.

2. Students who living on campus are close to their classrooms and the library.

3. If you need any information, see the librarian sits at the central desk on the second floor.

4. My oldest sister is Anna is 21 years old.

5. Hiroko was born in Sapporo that is a city in Japan.

6. Patrick who is my oldest brother. He is married and has one child.

7. The person sits next to me is someone I've never met him.

8. My favorite place in the world is a small city is located on the southern coast of Brazil.

9. Last Saturday I attended a party giving by one of my friends. My friend, who his apartment is in another town, was very glad I could come.

10. Dr. Darnell was the only person to whom I wanted to see.

11. There are eighty students, are from all over the world, study English at this school.

12. The people who we met them on our trip last May are going to visit us in October.

13. Dianne Jones that used to teach Spanish has organized a tour of Central America for senior citizens.

14. I've met many people since I came here who some of them are from my country.

15. People can speak English can be understood in many countries.
Example: Friends are people ___B___ close to us.
   A. who is       B. who are       C. which is       D. which are

1. “Who is eligible for the scholarship?”
   “Anyone ______ scholastic record is above average can apply for the scholarship.”
   A. who has a    B. has a        C. who’s a        D. whose

2. Dr. Sales is a person ______.
   A. in whom I don’t have much confidence C. whom I don’t have much confidence in him
   B. in that I don’t have much confidence  D. I don’t have much confidence

3. “Is April twenty-first the day ______?”
   “No, the twenty-second.”
   A. you’ll arrive then                     C. on that you’ll arrive
   B. when you’ll arrive                     D. when you’ll arrive on

4. The severe drought ______ occurred last summer ruined the corn crop.
   A. that it                                  B. which it
   C. it                                      D. that

5. Florida, ______ the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.
   A. is                                   B. known as
   C. is known as                           D. that is known as

6. The new shopping mall is gigantic. It’s advertised as a place ______ you can find just
   about anything you might want to buy.
   A. where                                B. which
   C. in where                             D. in that

7. Lola’s marriage has been arranged by her family. She is marrying a man ______.
   A. that she hardly knows him            C. she hardly knows
   B. whom she hardly knows him            D. she hardly knows him

8. People who exercise frequently have greater physical endurance than those ______.
   A. who doesn’t                           B. that doesn’t
   C. which don’t                           D. who don’t

9. “Is this the address to ______ you want the package sent?”
   A. where                                B. that
   C. which                                D. whom

10. Ann quit her job at the advertising agency, ______ surprised everyone.
   A. which                                B. that
   C. who                                  D. that it

11. That book is by a famous anthropologist. It’s about the people in Samoa ______ for two
    years.
    A. that she lived                       C. among whom she lived
    B. that she lived among them           D. where she lived among them

12. The missing man’s family is desperately seeking anyone ______ information about his
    activities.
    A. has                                  B. having
    C. who have                             D. have
13. The publishers expect that the new biography of Simon Bolivar will be bought by people ______ in Latin American history.
   A. who are interested  C. interested
   B. are interested      D. they are interested

14. I have always wanted to visit Paris, ______ of France.
   A. is the capital      C. that is the capital
   B. which the capital is D. the capital

15. The chemistry book ______ was a little expensive.
   A. that I bought it    B. I bought that  C. what I bought  D. I bought

16. "Have you ever met the man ______ over there?"
   "No. Who is he?"
   A. stands            C. is standing
   B. standing         D. who he is standing

17. "Do you have the book ______ the teacher?"
   "Yes, I do."
   A. that it belongs to C. to which belongs
   B. to which belongs to D. that belongs to

18. The voters were overwhelmingly against the candidate ______ proposals called for higher taxes.
   A. who his          B. whose         C. whom he had    D. that his

19. "Do you remember Mrs. Goddard, ______ taught us English composition?"
   "I certainly do."
   A. who            B. whom          C. that          D. which

20. I have three brothers, ______ are businessmen.
   A. that all of them C. all of whom
   B. who they all     D. who all of them
PRACTICE 20. TEST B: Adjective clauses. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: Friends are people _____ close to us.

A. who is  B. who are  C. which is  D. which are

1. “Were you able to locate the person _____ wallet you found?”
   “Luckily, yes.”
   A. which  B. that his  C. whose  D. that’s

2. Some fish is frozen, but _____ is best.
   A. fish is fresh  C. fish fresh
   B. fresh fish  D. fresh fish is caught

3. “Why do you get up at 4:00 A.M.?”
   “Because it’s the only time _____ without being interrupted.”
   A. when I can work on my book  C. when I can work on my book then
   B. when I can work on my book at  D. at when I can work on my book

4. “You seem so happy today.”
   “I am. You are looking at a person _____ has just been accepted into medical school!”
   A. who  B. who she  C. whom she  D. whom

5. “The movie _____ last night was terrific.”
   “What’s it about?”
   A. I went  B. I went to it  C. I went to  D. that I went

6. Many people lost their homes in the earthquake. The government needs to establish more shelters to care for those _____ have homes.
   A. who doesn’t  B. who don’t  C. which doesn’t  D. which don’t

7. The problem _____ never occurred.
   A. I hadn’t expected it  C. that I had expected it
   B. who I had expected  D. I had expected

8. I had to drive to the factory to pick up my brother, _____ car wouldn’t start.
   A. who his  B. who  C. who’s  D. whose

9. I read a book about Picasso, _____.
   A. is a Spanish painter  C. who a Spanish painter is
   B. a Spanish painter  D. that is a Spanish painter

10. The people _____ the acrobat turn circles in the air were horrified when he missed the outstretched hands of his partner and fell to his death.
    A. watched  B. watch  C. watching  D. were watching

11. “My writing has improved a lot in this class.”
    “Mine has, too. All the students _____ do well in writing.”
    A. whom Mr. Davis teaches them  C. that Mr. Davis teaches them
    B. which Mr. Davis teaches  D. Mr. Davis teaches

Adjective Clauses 149
12. "Have you seen the place ______ the graduation ceremony will be held?"
   "Yes. It's big enough to hold 5,000 people."
   A. in that B. where C. is where that D. which

13. "How's your class this term?"
   "Great. I have seventeen students, most of ______ speak English very well."
   A. who B. those C. whom D. which

14. "Will everyone like the book?"
   "No. Only people ______ interested in anthropology."
   A. are B. who are C. in whom are D. that is

15. "How did you enjoy your dinner with Mr. Jackson?"
   "It was boring. He talked only about himself, ______ almost put us to sleep."
   A. which B. that C. who D. that he

16. My grandfather, ______ a wise man, has greatly influenced my life.
   A. is B. that is C. who is D. who he is

17. "Is Dr. Brown the person ______ you wish to speak?"
   "Yes, please."
   A. that B. whom C. to that D. to whom

18. In the movie, a teenager ______ to pursue a singing career meets resistance from his
    strong-willed father.
   A. wants B. wanted C. wanting D. who want

19. "Excuse me, but there is something about ______ immediately."
    "Certainly."
   A. which I must speak to you C. that I must speak to you about
   B. which I must speak to you about it D. that I must speak to you

20. Little Women, ______ in 1868, is my sister's favorite book.
    A. is a novel published C. a novel was published
    B. a novel published D. was a novel published
CHAPTER 14
Gerunds and Infinitives,
Part 1

◊ PRACTICE 1. Gerunds as objects of prepositions. (Chart 14-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions followed by gerunds. Use the verbs in the
given list. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>see</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>kill</td>
<td>open</td>
<td>talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>lock</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Instead of asking for help on each arithmetic problem, you should use your book and try to figure out the answers yourself.

2. I look forward ________________ you next time I’m in town. I’ll be sure to let you know ahead of time so that we can plan to get together.

3. Alice told us that she was tired ________________ the dishes every night.

4. The four-year-old was blamed ________________ the glass candy dish.

5. Because of the bomb scare, no one was allowed in the building. People were prevented ________________ the front door by a guard who was stationed there.

6. You should listen to other people instead ________________ about yourself all the time.

7. What do you feel ________________ for dinner? Does chicken and rice sound good?

8. Frank is an environmentalist who believes animals should be protected from hunters. He objects ________________ wild animals for sport.

9. Please don’t argue ________________ your homework. Just do it.

10. Marie is responsible ________________ all the doors and windows and ________________ sure all the lights are turned off before she leaves work in the evening.

11. Mario spent all month preparing for the tennis match, but in spite ________________ for many hours each day, he lost the match to Ivan.
**PRACTICE 2. Gerunds as objects of prepositions. (Charts 14-2 and 14-3)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences in column A with the ideas in column B. Be sure to link them with an appropriate preposition.

*Example:* I thanked my classmate . . .

→ I thanked my classmate for helping me with my homework.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I thanked my classmate . . .</td>
<td>A. answer students’ questions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The treasurer is responsible . .</td>
<td>B. get a new doll for her birthday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The students complained . .</td>
<td>✓C. help me with my homework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I apologized . .</td>
<td>D. lift heavy weights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. A bodybuilder is capable . .</td>
<td>E. get me a pillow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. A teacher is used* . .</td>
<td>F. step on my friend’s toe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The rainy weather prevented us . .</td>
<td>G. enter a military base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. All of the children participated . .</td>
<td>H. balance the checkbook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Unauthorized persons are prohibited . .</td>
<td>I. be forced to work overtime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. The little girl was excited . .</td>
<td>J. go on a picnic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. I thanked the flight attendant . .</td>
<td>K. have too many tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. The employees objected . .</td>
<td>L. make decorations for their classroom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 3. Verbs followed by gerunds. (Charts 14-4 and 14-5)**

*Directions:* Make sentences using the given verbs.

*Examples:* enjoy + watch → Do you enjoy watching old movies on television?

mind + have to be → I don’t mind having to be in class at 8:00 A.M.

put off + pack → Dan usually puts off packing his suitcase until the very last minute.

1. enjoy + take
2. avoid + eat
3. go + jog
4. finish + do
5. suggest + change
6. consider + go + swim
7. stop + cry
8. discuss + go + shop
9. mention + have to go
10. delay + put
11. mind + take
12. keep + ask
13. quit + worry about
14. postpone + take

---

*COMPARE:

*Used* + to + *-ing* means “accustomed to doing something.”

Mary is *used to living* in a cold climate. = Mary is accustomed to living in a cold climate.

*Used* + to + simple form (infinitive) expresses habitual past activities.

Jack *used to live* in Chicago. = Jack lived in Chicago in the past, but now he doesn’t.
◊ PRACTICE 4. Special expressions followed by -ing. (Chart 14-6)

Directions: Combine the given ideas into one sentence.

1. play soccer . . . spend . . . all yesterday afternoon . . . we
   • We spent all yesterday afternoon playing soccer.
2. a really good time . . . all of us . . . have . . . play soccer in the park . . . yesterday
3. find . . . have trouble . . . Omar . . . my house . . . last night
4. my bicycle . . . my mother . . . try to steal . . . catch . . . some neighborhood kids . . .
   yesterday
5. at the window . . . stand . . . when the boss walked into the office . . . all of the employees . . .
   watch the parade on the street below
6. my father always said, “. . . read novels . . . your time . . . from other kinds of books . . .
   when you could be learning something worthwhile . . . don’t waste”
7. when Mrs. Smith checked on the children last night . . . play a game . . . find . . . instead of
   sleeping . . . them . . . she
8. Susan . . . find . . . when I opened the door . . . I . . . on her bed . . . cry . . . lie

◊ PRACTICE 5. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-1 • 14-7)

Directions: Select the correct answer for each sentence.

1. Whenever we met, Jack avoided _____ at me.
   A. to look  B. looking
2. Most people enjoy ______ to different parts of the world.
   A. to travel  B. traveling
3. Marjorie needs ______ another job. Her present company is going out of business.
   A. to find  B. finding
4. May I change the TV channel, or do you want ______ more of this program?
   A. to watch  B. watching
5. Joan is considering ______ her major from pre-med studies to psychology.
   A. to change  B. changing
6. Although Joe slammed on his brakes, he couldn’t avoid ______ the small dog that suddenly
   darted out in front of his car.
   A. to hit  B. hitting
7. I hope _____ my autobiography before I die. Do you think anyone would read it?
   A. to write  B. writing
8. Joyce thanked us for _____ them to dinner and said that they wanted to have us over for
   dinner next week.
   A. to invite  B. inviting
9. If you delay ______ your bills, you will only incur more and more interest charges.
   A. to pay  B. paying
10. My lawyer advised me not _____ anything further about the accident.
    A. to say  B. saying
11. A procrastinator is one who habitually postpones _______ things — especially tasks that are unpleasant.
   A. to do       B. doing

12. You should plan _______ at the stadium early or you won’t be able to get good seats.
   A. to arrive   B. arriving

13. My mom asked me _______ up some eggs at the supermarket on my way home from work.
   A. to pick     B. picking

14. Nobody has offered _______ the house next door, so I think they’re going to lower the price.
   A. to buy      B. buying

15. The highway patrol advises _______ the old route through the city because the interstate highway is under major repairs.
   A. to take     B. taking

16. Would you mind _______ that apple for me? My arthritis is acting up in my right hand.
   A. to peel     B. peeling

17. Stop _______ me! I’ll get everything finished before I go to bed.
   A. to nag      B. nagging

18. When the university suggested _______ the tuition again, the student senate protested vigorously.
   A. to raise    B. raising

19. Are we permitted _______ guests to the ceremony? I’d like to invite my friend to join us.
   A. to bring    B. bringing

20. The city council agreed _______ the architect’s proposed design for a new parking garage.
   A. to accept   B. accepting

◇ PRACTICE 6. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Restate the given sentences. Choose the most appropriate reporting verb in parentheses. Make it active or passive as appropriate. Include an infinitive in the completion and any other necessary words.

1. The teacher said to Jim, “Would you give your book to Mary, please?”
   (ask, tell, order)
   → The teacher _______ Jim _______ give _______ his book to Mary.

2. The sign said, “No parking in this area. Violators will be towed away.”
   (invite, warn, force)
   → Drivers _______ warned _______ not to park _______ the area.

3. Before Bobby went to bed, his father said, “Don’t forget to brush your teeth.”
   (invite, allow, remind)
   → Before Bobby went to bed, his father _______ Bobby _______ brush _______ his teeth.

4. Under the law, drivers and all passengers must wear seat belts while in a moving vehicle.
   (encourage, require, permit)
   → Drivers and passengers _______ _______ wear _______ seat belts while in a moving vehicle.
5. When I asked the nurse about my skin rash, she said, “You should consult a dermatologist.”
   
   \( \text{(ask, permit, advise)} \)
   
   → The nurse ____________________________ a dermatologist.

6. The fire chief said, “Everyone must leave the building immediately.”
   
   \( \text{(order, remind, allow)} \)
   
   → Everyone ____________________________ the building immediately.

7. The instructor said to the students, “You will have exactly one hour to complete the exam.”
   
   \( \text{(order, expect, warn)} \)
   
   → The students ____________________________ the exam in one hour.

8. Because he forgot last year, I told my husband several times that he should buy some flowers for his mother on Mother’s Day.
   
   \( \text{(remind, require, allow)} \)
   
   → I ____________________________ some flowers for his mother on Mother’s Day.

9. My garage mechanic said, “You should get a tune-up every 5,000 miles.”
   
   \( \text{(ask, order, advise)} \)
   
   → My garage mechanic ____________________________ a tune-up every 5,000 miles.

10. The factory manager said to the employees, “Do not come late. If you do, you will lose your jobs.”
    
    \( \text{(ask, warn, encourage)} \)
    
    → The employees ____________________________ late.

11. The sign on the side door says, “Do not enter,” so we have to use a different door.
    
    \( \text{(ask, permit, force)} \)
    
    → Nobody ____________________________ the side door.

12. The little girl said to her father, “Daddy, I really like this tricycle. Can we buy it?”
    
    \( \text{(require, ask, advise)} \)
    
    → The little girl ____________________________ the tricycle for her.

13. We often told our grandfather, “Your experiences as a sailor in the navy were fascinating. You should write a book about them.”
    
    \( \text{(remind, encourage, require)} \)
    
    → We ____________________________ a book about his experiences in the navy.

14. The judge said to the defendant, “You must not shout in the courtroom again.”
    
    \( \text{(ask, order, encourage)} \)
    
    → The defendant ____________________________ in the courtroom again.

\[ \text{◊ PRACTICE 7. Verbs followed by infinitives. (Chart 14-7)} \]

\( \text{Directions: Report what the speakers say by using a verb from the following list and an infinitive phrase. Use each verb in the list only once. Make your sentence passive if the speaker is not specifically identified.} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>advise</th>
<th>ask</th>
<th>invite</th>
<th>remind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow</td>
<td>encourage</td>
<td>order</td>
<td>warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. During the water shortage, someone in authority said to the public, “Curtail your use of water as much as possible.”
   
   → During the water shortage, the public was asked to curtail its use of water as much as possible.

2. Laura said to her roommate, “Don't forget to set your alarm clock for 6:00.”
3. Mrs. Jones said to the children, “Each of you may have one piece of candy.”
4. The doctor said to my father, “It would be best if you limited your sugar consumption.”
5. My parents often said to me, “Good for you! It’s good to be independent!”
6. Someone said to the children, “Don’t swim in the lake without an adult present.”
7. The police officer shouted to the reckless driver, “Pull over!”
8. Rose said to Jerry, “I’d like you to come to my house Sunday night to meet my parents.”

◊ PRACTICE 8. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chart 14-8)

Directions: Choose the best answer or answers. In some cases, BOTH answers are correct.

1. John was trying ______ the door with the wrong key.
   A. unlocking       B. to unlock

2. The audience began ______ before the curtains closed.
   A. clapping        B. to clap

3. The soccer teams continued ______ even though it began to snow.
   A. playing        B. to play

4. We like ______ outside when the weather is warm and sunny.
   A. eating         B. to eat

5. We began ______ to the news when we heard the Olympics mentioned.
   A. listening      B. to listen

6. I was just beginning ______ asleep when the phone rang.
   A. falling        B. to fall

7. I really hate ______ late for appointments.
   A. being          B. to be

8. The cake was starting ______ when I took it out of the oven.
   A. burning        B. to burn

9. She’s so impatient! She can’t stand ______ in line for anything.
   A. waiting        B. to wait

10. I prefer ______ my bicycle to work because the automobile traffic is too heavy.
    A. riding         B. to ride

11. Lillian prefers ______ to taking the bus.
    A. walking        B. to walk

12. Tim prefers ______ than to jog for exercise.
    A. walking        B. to walk

13. The baby loves ______ in the car.
    A. riding         B. to ride

14. Near the end of the performance, the audience began ______ their feet on the floor.
    A. stamping       B. to stamp
15. The audience began to clap and _______ their feet on the floor.
   A. stamping   B. (to) stamp

16. The audience began clapping and _______ their feet on the floor.
   A. stamping   B. (to) stamp

17. My son sometimes forgets _______ the stove when he is finished cooking.
   A. turning off   B. to turn off

18. Alex will never forget _______ his first helicopter ride.
   A. taking   B. to take

19. Would you please remember _______ away all the tapes when you’re finished listening to
    them?
   A. putting   B. to put

20. I remember _______ them away when I finished with them last night.
   A. putting   B. to put

21. I remember _______ Bolivia for the first time. It’s a beautiful country.
   A. visiting   B. to visit

22. What am I going to do? I forgot _______ my calculus text, and I need it for the review
    today.
   A. bringing   B. to bring

23. My boss regrets _______ his secretary now that she is gone.
   A. firing   B. to fire

24. The letter said, “I regret _______ you that your application has been denied.”
   A. informing   B. to inform

25. I haven’t been able to get in touch with Shannon. I tried _______ her. Then I tried
    _______ her a letter. I tried _______ a message with her brother when I talked to him.
    Nothing worked.
   A. calling . . . writing . . . leaving   B. to call . . . to write . . . to leave

26. I always try _______ my bills on time, but sometimes I’m a little late.
   A. paying   B. to pay

◊ PRACTICE 9. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Work with another person. One of you should read the beginning of the sentence,
and the other, without looking at the book, should supply the correct response: to do it or
doing it. (If you are studying alone, cover up the answers in parentheses and check yourself as
you go.)

Example: A: I enjoy . . .
         B: . . . doing it.

1. I dislike ........................................................................... (doing it.)
2. She was ordered ........................................................ (to do it.)
3. I urged my friend .......................................................... (to do it.)
4. Can he afford .............................................................. (to do it?)
5. We all discussed ........................................ (doing it.)
6. The institute requires us ................................ (to do it.)
7. We will eventually complete ........................ (doing it.)
8. The whole class practiced ............................... (doing it.)
9. I really don't care ........................................ (to do it.)
10. My friend recommended not ......................... (doing it.)
11. She was expected ....................................... (to do it.)
12. Bill resented his roommate ............................ (doing it.)
13. Did the criminal admit ................................. (doing it?)
14. Please allow us ......................................... (to do it.)
15. The whole family anticipated ......................... (doing it.)
16. No one recollected .................................... (doing it.)
17. Did you risk .............................................. (doing it?)
18. Did they recall .......................................... (doing it?)
19. My friend challenged me .............................. (to do it.)
20. The teacher postponed ................................. (doing it.)
21. Do you mind ............................................. (doing it?)
22. Why did he pretend .................................... (to do it?)
23. The teacher arranged ................................. (to do it.)
24. The regulations permit us ............................ (to do it.)
25. The dentist wanted to delay ......................... (doing it.)
26. Can anyone learn ...................................... (to do it?)
27. Did your roommate offer ............................. (to do it?)
28. He doesn't deny ....................................... (doing it.)
29. Somehow, the dog managed ......................... (to do it.)
30. Everyone avoided ..................................... (doing it.)
31. The boy dared Al ...................................... (to do it.)
32. Our teacher threatened ............................... (to do it.)
33. The contestant practiced ............................. (doing it.)
34. My friend consented .................................. (to do it.)
35. I miss .................................................... (doing it.)

◊ PRACTICE 10. Gerund vs. Infinitive. (Charts 14-2 → 14-10)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, using the words in parentheses.

1. The store offered ................................. (to refund) the money I paid for the book I returned. (refund)
2. Don't pretend ................................. (to be) what you aren't. (be)
3. I persuaded my brother-in-law not ........................... (to buy) that old car. (buy)
4. Annie denied ................................. (to throw) the brick through the window. (throw)
5. My father expects me ............................... (to get) high marks in school. (get)
6. According to the sign on the restaurant door, all diners are required ............................... (to wear) shirts and shoes. (wear)
7. We are planning ................................. (to visit) several historical sites in Moscow. (visit)
8. There appears ______________ no way to change our reservation for the play at this late date. (be)

9. For some strange reason, I keep ______________ today is Saturday. (think)

10. All of the members agreed ______________ the emergency meeting. (attend)

11. I've arranged ______________ work early tomorrow. (leave)

12. Even though Anna had never cut anyone's hair before, she readily consented ______________ her husband's hair. (cut)

13. Mary decided ______________ her friend's critical remarks. (ignore)

14. My roommate says I have a terrible voice, so I stopped ______________ in the shower. (sing)

15. Did the doctor mention ______________ any foods in particular? (avoid)

16. The cashier always remembers ______________ the money in her cash register each day before she leaves work. (count)

17. Let's hurry! We must finish ______________ the office before 3:00 today. (paint)

18. The student with the highest average deserves ______________ an “A.” (get)

19. I appreciate your ______________ for my dinner. I'll buy next time. (pay)

20. The physically handicapped child struggled ______________ up with the other children on the playground, but she couldn't. (keep)

21. Janice misses ______________ walks with her father in the evening now that she has moved away from home. (take)
22. The customs official demanded ___________ what was inside the gift-wrapped box. (know)

23. We've discussed ______________ to New York in the fall, but I'm worried about our children having to adjust to a new school system and new friends. (move)

24. Children shouldn't be allowed ______________ violent programs on TV. (watch)

25. In a fit of anger, I ordered my neighbor ______________ his mule off my property. (keep)

◊ PRACTICE 11. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-2 → 14-10)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, gerund or infinitive, using the words in parentheses.

1. The doctor was forced ___________ immediately to save the patient's life. (operate)

2. The newspaper hired Bill ______________ pictures of the championship match between the two boxers. (shoot)

3. Most passengers dislike ______________ to sit in small, uncomfortable seats on transoceanic flights. (have)

4. I choose ______________ to Stanford University for my undergraduate studies. (go)

5. I must drive more carefully. I can't risk ______________ another speeding ticket. (get)

6. All of the members agreed ______________ the emergency meeting. (attend)

7. Jack promised ______________ to the meeting. (come)

8. The sign warns you not ______________ right on a red light. (turn)

9. Did Dick mean ______________ Sue about the surprise party, or did it slip out accidentally? (tell)

10. You must keep ______________ on the computer until you understand how to use all of the programs. (practice)

11. Our class volunteered ______________ the classroom during the maintenance workers' strike. (clean)

12. When you get through ______________ the newspaper, I could use your help in the kitchen. (read)

13. I think we should delay ______________ these reports to the main office. (send)

14. The judge demanded ______________ the original document, not the photocopy. (see)

15. After hearing the weather report, I advise you not ______________ skiing this afternoon. (go)

16. George is interested in ______________ an art class. (take)

17. I was furious. I threatened never ______________ to him again. (speak)

18. My parents appreciated ______________ the thank-you note you sent them. (receive)
19. The committee is planning _____________ next Friday. (meet)
20. If I don’t leave on the 15th, I will miss _____________ home in time for my mother’s birthday party. (get)
21. I know you’re anxious to get out of here and get back home, but you should seriously consider _____________ in the hospital a few more days. (stay)
22. Alex refused _____________ for his rude behavior. (apologize)
23. When I was in the army, I had to swear _____________ my senior officers’ orders. (obey)
24. I don’t recall _____________ your dictionary anywhere in the apartment. Maybe you left it in the classroom. (see)
25. Mrs. Lind required the children _____________ off their muddy boots before they came into the house. (take)

◊ PRACTICE 12. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. The groom anticipated ______ the wedding ceremony.
   A. enjoying  B. to enjoy

2. The department store agreed ______ back the damaged radio.
   A. taking  B. to take

3. Would the doctor mind ______ some time talking to me after the examination?
   A. spending  B. to spend

4. We miss ______ Professor Sanders in Asian history this quarter.
   A. having  B. to have

5. Dan failed ______ the firefighter’s examination and was quite upset.
   A. passing  B. to pass

6. The travelers anticipated ______ safely at their destination.
   A. arriving  B. to arrive

7. She expects ______ her baby at the new hospital.
   A. delivering  B. to deliver

8. The bad weather caused us ______ our connecting flight to Rome.
   A. missing  B. to miss

9. We dislike ______ dinner at 9:00 P.M.
   A. eating  B. to eat

10. Most of the students completed ______ their research papers on time.
    A. writing  B. to write

11. My niece hopes ______ with me to Disneyland next April.
    A. traveling  B. to travel
12. This note will remind me _____ the chicken for dinner tomorrow night.
   A. defrosting               B. to defrost

13. Willy denied _____ a whole bag of chocolate chip cookies before lunch.
   A. eating                  B. to eat

14. You must swear _____ the truth in a court of law.
   A. telling                 B. to tell

15. I didn’t mean _____ him.
   A. interrupting            B. to interrupt

◊ PRACTICE 13. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Create sentences from the following verb combinations. Select any tense for the first verb, but use a gerund or infinitive for the second verb. Include a (PRO)NOUN OBJECT if necessary.

Examples: can’t afford + buy → I can’t afford to buy a new car for at least another year.
           dare + dive → My friends dared me to dive into the pool.

1. keep + play
2. direct + save
3. regret + tell
4. manage + get
5. remind + take
6. be used to + stay
7. persuade + not buy
8. mention + give
9. suggest + go
10. can’t imagine + travel
11. recommend + take
12. convince + go + swim
13. miss + be
14. not appreciate + hear
15. fail + tell
16. resent + be
17. resist + eat
18. claim + know
19. deserve + get
20. not recall + say
21. look forward to + see
22. beg + give
23. agree + hire + work
24. remember + tell + be
25. urge + practice + speak
26. tell + keep + try + call
PRACTICE 14. Using *if* + infinitive. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Restate the sentences by changing a sentence with a gerund as the subject to a sentence with *it* + *an infinitive phrase*, and vice-versa.

1. Teasing animals is cruel. → *It is cruel to tease animals.*

2. It wasn't difficult to find their house. → *Finding their house wasn't difficult.*

3. Voting in every election is important.

4. It was exciting to meet the king and queen.

5. Hearing the other side of the story would be interesting.

6. It is unusual to see Joan awake early in the morning.

7. If you know how, it is easy to float in the water for a long time.

8. Mastering a second language takes time and patience.

9. Driving to Atlanta will take us ten hours.

10. It takes courage to dive into the sea from a high cliff.
CHAPTER 15
Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

◊ PRACTICE 1. In order to. (Chart 15-1)
Directions: Add in order if possible. If nothing should be added, write Ø.

1. Emily likes Ø to go ice skating every weekend.

2. Please open the door in order to let some fresh air in.

3. Elizabeth has to practice at least four hours every day _______ to be ready for her piano recital next month.

4. Shelley sent me an e-mail _______ to inform me that the meeting had been canceled.

5. We’ve decided _______ not to take a vacation this year.

6. Did you remember _______ to call Mr. Johnson?

7. After dinner we drove to the top of a hill outside the city _______ to watch the sunset.

8. The children were making so much noise that I had to shout at them _______ to get their attention.

9. Jane is so disgusted by politics and politicians these days that she refuses _______ to vote in either local or national elections.

10. We waded across the mountain stream _______ to continue our hike to Wall’s Meadow.

11. We stopped briefly on the other side of the stream _______ to rest before beginning one of the steepest parts of the climb.

12. One of the climbers hesitated _______ to continue because of a painful blister on his right heel. He tried _______ to keep up with the rest of us, but finally stopped climbing with us because of the pain.

164
PRACTICE 2. Adjectives followed by infinitives. (Chart 15-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with infinitives.

1. I was glad __________ a letter from you.
2. I was relieved __________ that I had passed the exam.
3. Sue is lucky ___________ alive after the accident.
4. The soldiers were prepared ____________.
5. The children are anxious ___________ to the circus.
6. Dick didn’t feel like going anywhere. He was content ___________ home and ___________ a book.
7. The teacher is always willing ___________ us.
8. The students are motivated ___________ English.
9. Be careful not ___________ on the icy sidewalks!
10. Tom was hesitant ___________ home alone on the dark street.
11. Sally is afraid ___________ home alone.
12. Ann is proud ___________ the top student in her class.
13. I was surprised ___________ Mr. Yamamoto at the meeting.
14. We were sorry ___________ the bad news.

PRACTICE 3. Too vs. very. (Chart 15-3)

Directions: Add too or very to the sentences as appropriate.

1. The box is __________ heavy, but I can lift it.
2. John dropped his physics course because it was __________ difficult for him.
3. I think it’s __________ late to get tickets to the concert. I heard they were all sold.
4. It’s __________ cold today, but I’m still going to take my daily walk.
5. Our cat is fourteen years old. Now he’s __________ old to catch mice in the field across the street.
6. It’s __________ dark to see in here. Please turn on the lights.
7. She was __________ ill. Nevertheless, she came to the family reunion.
8. The boys were __________ busy to help me clean out the garage, so I did it myself.
9. Learning a second language is __________ difficult, but most of the students are doing well.
10. We enjoyed our dinner at the restaurant last night. It was __________ good.
11. Professor Andrews is always ______ interesting, but I'm ______ tired to go to the lecture tonight.

12. He's ______ young to understand. He'll understand when he's older.

13. The meal was ______ good. I enjoyed every morsel.

14. I'm ______ sleepy to watch the rest of the TV movie. Let me know how it turns out.

15. Sally was running ______ fast for me to keep up with her, so I lagged behind.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Using too and enough. (Chart 15-3)

Directions: Combine the given ideas into one sentence. Add to when an infinitive is required.

1. my work ... yesterday ... finish ... enough ... not ... time ... have
   → I didn't have enough time* to finish my work yesterday.

2. enough ... not ... well ... go back to work ... is ... Linda

3. use ... scissors ... too ... are ... for ... sharp ... very young children

4. narrow ... are ... two-way traffic ... the streets in the old part of the city ... too ... for

5. old ... Jimmy ... enough ... not ... ride on the bus by himself ... is

6. many ... in grammar and spelling in the first one ... careless mistakes ... Jules ... because he had made ... had to rewrite his composition ... too

7. everyone assigned to this class ... there ... seats in the classroom ... are ... enough ... not ... for

8. we couldn't go ... too ... call the box office for tickets ... because we waited ... long ... to the musical

◊ PRACTICE 5. Passive infinitives. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. When I told Tim the news, he seemed ______.
   A. to surprise       B. to be surprised

2. The children agreed ______ the candy equally.
   A. to divide       B. to be divided

3. Janice is going to fill out an application. She wants ______ for the job.
   A. to consider       B. to be considered

4. The mail is supposed ______ at noon.
   A. to deliver       B. to be delivered

5. I expect ______ at the airport by my uncle.
   A. to meet        B. to be met

*Also possible: time enough. In everyday English, enough usually precedes the noun.
6. Mr. Steinberg offered ______ us to the train station.
   A. to drive  B. to be driven

7. The children appear ______ about the trip.
   A. to excite  B. to be excited

◊ PRACTICE 6. Passive gerunds. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. I don’t appreciate ______ when I’m speaking.
   A. interrupting  B. being interrupted

2. Avoid ______ your houseplants too much water.
   A. giving  B. being given

3. The mountain climbers are in danger of ______ by an avalanche.
   A. killing  B. being killed

4. Does Dr. Johnson mind ______ at home if his patients need his help?
   A. calling  B. being called

5. I’m interested in ______ my communication skills.
   A. improving  B. being improved

6. Mrs. Gates appreciated ______ breakfast in bed when she wasn’t feeling well.
   A. serving  B. being served

7. Sally’s low test scores kept her from ______ to the university.
   A. admitting  B. being admitted

8. Mr. Miller gave no indication of ______ his mind.
   A. changing  B. being changed

◊ PRACTICE 7. Passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. Instead of ______ about the good news, Tom seemed to be indifferent.
   A. exciting  C. to excite
   B. being excited  D. to be excited

2. The new students hope ______ in many of the school’s social activities.
   A. including  C. to include
   B. being included  D. to be included

3. The owner of the building supply store doesn’t mind ______ his customers discounts when they buy in large quantities.
   A. giving  C. to give
   B. being given  D. to be given

4. Jack got into trouble when he refused ______ his briefcase for the customs officer.
   A. opening  C. to open
   B. being opened  D. to be opened
5. Barbara didn’t mention ______ about her progress report at work, but I’m sure she is.
   A. concerning  
   B. being concerned  
   C. to concern  
   D. to be concerned

6. The City Parks Department is putting in several miles of new trails because so many people have said that they enjoy ______ on them.
   A. walking  
   B. being walked  
   C. to walk  
   D. to be walked

7. You’d better save some money for a rainy day. You can’t count on ______ by your parents every time you get into financial difficulty.
   A. rescuing  
   B. being rescued  
   C. to rescue  
   D. to be rescued

8. Please forgive me. I didn’t mean ______ you.
   A. upsetting  
   B. being upset  
   C. to upset  
   D. to be upset

9. I don’t remember ______ of the decision to change the company policy on vacations. When was it decided?
   A. telling  
   B. being told  
   C. to tell  
   D. to be told

10. Ms. Drake expects ______ about any revisions to her manuscript before it is printed.
    A. consulting  
    B. being consulted  
    C. to consult  
    D. to be consulted

11. Sally gave such a good speech that I couldn’t resist ______ loudly when she finished.
    A. applauding  
    B. being applauded  
    C. to applaud  
    D. to be applauded

12. Tommy admitted ______ the rock through the window.
    A. throwing  
    B. being thrown  
    C. to throw  
    D. to be thrown

13. If you want to develop inner tranquility, you have to stop ______ by every little thing that happens.
    A. bothering  
    B. being bothered  
    C. to bother  
    D. to be bothered

14. Paul really didn’t mind ______ by the party to celebrate his fortieth birthday, although he told his friends that they shouldn’t have done it.
    A. surprising  
    B. being surprised  
    C. to surprise  
    D. to be surprised

15. Anne hopes ______ to join the private club. She could make important business contacts there.
    A. inviting  
    B. being invited  
    C. to invite  
    D. to be invited
PRACTICE 8. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. Are you sure you told me? I don’t recall ______ about it.
   A. having told  C. to have told
   B. having been told  D. to have been told

2. Tom made a bad mistake at work, but his boss didn’t fire him. He’s lucky ______ a second chance.
   A. having given  C. to have given
   B. having been given  D. to have been given

3. Dr. Wilson is a brilliant and dedicated scientist who had expected to be selected as the director of the institute. She was very surprised not ______ the position.
   A. having offered  C. to have offered
   B. having been offered  D. to have been offered

4. By the time their baby arrives, the Johnsons hope ______ painting and decorating the new nursery.
   A. having finished  C. to have finished
   B. having been finished  D. to have been finished

5. The stockbroker denied ______ of the secret business deal.
   A. having informed  C. to have informed
   B. having been informed  D. to have been informed

6. The Smiths wanted to give their son every advantage. However, they now regret ______ him by providing too many material possessions.
   A. having spoiled  C. to have spoiled
   B. having been spoiled  D. to have been spoiled

7. The spy admitted ______ some highly secret information to enemy agents.
   A. having given  C. to have given
   B. having been given  D. to have been given

PRACTICE 9. Past and past-passive infinitives and gerunds. (Chart 15-4)

Directions: Supply an appropriate form for each verb in parentheses.

1. Sharon wants us to tell her the news as soon as we hear anything. If we find out anything about the problem, she wants (tell) ______________ about it immediately.

2. Yesterday Anna wrote a check for fifty dollars, but when she wrote it she knew she didn’t have enough money in the bank to cover it. Today she is very worried about (write) ______________ that check. She has to find a way to put some money in her account right away.

3. A: What’s the difference between “burn up” and “burn down”?
   B: Hmmmm. That’s an interesting question. I don’t recall ever (ask) ______________
   ______________ that question before.
4. Living in a foreign country has been a good experience for me. I am glad that my company sent me to another country to study. I am very pleased (give) _______________ the opportunity to learn about another culture.

5. Martha doesn’t like to have her picture taken. She avoids (photograph) _______________.

6. A: It’s been nice talking to you. I really have enjoyed our conversation, but I have to leave now. I’m very happy (have) _______________ this opportunity to meet you and talk with you. Let’s try to get together again soon.
   B: I’d like that.

7. A: This letter needs (send) _______________ immediately. Will you take care of it?
   B: Right away.

8. Sally is very quick. You have to tell her how to do something only once. She doesn’t need (tell) _______________ twice.

9. A: I thought Sam was sick.
   B: So did I. But he seems (recover) _______________ very quickly. He certainly doesn’t seem (be) _______________ sick now.

10. Last year I studied abroad. I appreciate (have) _______________ the opportunity to live and study in a foreign country.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Using a possessive to modify a gerund. (Chart 15-6)
   Directions: Combine the following. Change that fact to a gerund phrase. Use formal English.

   Example: We answered all of the exam questions correctly. The teacher was pleased with that fact.
   → The teacher was pleased with our answering (or: having answered) all of the exam questions correctly.

   1. I lost my new watch. My mother was angry about that fact.
   2. They are going to spend their vacation with us. We look forward to that fact.
   3. Tony failed the economics test even though he studied hard. No one can understand that fact.
   4. The students are required to pay an extra fee to use the laboratory. I am upset about that fact.
   5. Mary worked late to finish the project. The supervisor appreciated that fact.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Review: gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 14-1 → 15-6)
   Directions: Choose the correct answer.

   1. Alice didn’t expect ______ to Bill’s party.
      A. asking  B. being asked  C. to ask  D. to be asked

   2. I finally finished ______ at 7:00 p.m. and served dinner.
      A. cooking  B. being cooked  C. to cook  D. to be cooked

   3. Sam always remembers ______ in the garage so that the driveway is free for other cars.
      A. parking  B. being parked  C. to park  D. to be parked
4. The nurse suggested ______ two aspirin.
   A. taking           B. being taken       C. to take          D. to be taken

5. Would you mind not ______ the radio until I've finished with this phone call?
   A. turning on       B. being turned on    C. to turn on       D. to be turned on

6. They were fortunate ______ from the fire before the building collapsed.
   A. rescuing          B. to have rescued   C. to rescue         D. to have been rescued

7. The mouse family avoided ______ by coming out only when the house was empty and the two cats were outside.
   A. catching          B. being caught      C. to have been caught D. to be caught

8. The baby continued ______ even after she was picked up.
   A. being crying      B. having cried     C. to cry            D. having been crying

9. Arthur pretended not ______ hurt when his younger sister bit him.
   A. having            B. be               C. to have           D. to have been

10. We were shocked to hear the news of your ______.
    A. having fired      B. having been fired  C. to be fired       D. to have been fired

11. Even though she was much younger than the other children, Alexis demanded ______ in the game they were playing.
    A. including         B. being including  C. to include        D. to be included

12. Our mechanic said that he expects ______ the brakes on the car before we pick it up.
    A. fixing            B. being fixed     C. to have fixed     D. to have been fixed

13. Marge's children are used to ______ after school every day. They don't have to walk home.
    A. picking up        B. being picked up C. be picked up      D. pick up

14. The bus driver was so tired of ______ the same route every day that he asked for a transfer.
    A. to drive           B. being driven   C. driving           D. drive

15. I'm sure it's not my fault that Peter found out what we were planning. I don't remember ______ anyone about it.
    A. having told       B. being told     C. to tell           D. to be told
PRACTICE 12. Using verbs of perception. (Chart 15-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in the list. Use each word only once. Use the simple form or the -ing form, whichever seems better to you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>emerge</th>
<th>perform</th>
<th>prevent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chirp</td>
<td>explain</td>
<td>practice</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td>melt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Whenever I have free time, I like to watch the basketball team _practice_.

2. A few years ago, I saw a dog ___________ a child from wandering into a busy street by standing in front of her and not letting her get by.

3. It was a thrill to see my brother ___________ the chess tournament last year.

4. I was amazed to see the firefighters ___________ so soon after my call.

5. The boy watched the butterfly ___________ from its cocoon.

6. It is educational for children to observe adults ___________ their daily tasks.

7. When I look at my gym teacher ___________ the rope, it looks easy, but when I try it, it is hard.

8. Hearing the birds ___________ tells us that spring has indeed arrived.

9. I listened to the teacher ___________ how to solve the math problem.

10. I held out my hand and watched each snowflake ___________ as soon as it touched my skin.

172 CHAPTER 15
PRACTICE 13. *Let, help, and causative verbs.* (Charts 15-8 and 15-9)

*Directions:* Choose the correct answer(s).

1. Instead of buying a new pair of shoes, I had my old ones ____ C ____.
   A. repair    B. to repair    C. repaired

2. I helped my daughter A. B. ____ her homework.
   A. finish    B. to finish    C. finished

3. I made my son ____ the windows before he could go outside to play with his friends.
   A. wash    B. to wash    C. washed

4. Maria had her landlord ____ the broken window before winter.
   A. fix    B. to fix    C. fixed

5. To please my daughter, I had her old bicycle ____ bright red.
   A. paint    B. to paint    C. painted

6. Sam was reluctant, but we finally got him ____ his guitar for us.
   A. play    B. to play    C. played

7. When I had to make an emergency phone call, the secretary let me ____ her phone.
   A. use    B. to use    C. used

8. Jack, could you help me ____ a place in the garden to plant some tomatoes?
   A. dig    B. to dig    C. dug

9. Before we leave, let’s have Shelley ____ a map for us so we won’t get lost.
   A. draw    B. to draw    C. drawn

10. Are you going to let me ____ that last piece of blueberry pie?
    A. eat    B. to eat    C. eaten

PRACTICE 14. *Verb form review.* (Charts 14-1 → 15-9)

*Directions:* Choose the correct answer.

1. I enjoy ____ to the park on summer evenings.
   A. to go    B. going    C. being gone    D. go

2. Don’t forget ____ home as soon as you arrive at your destination.
   A. to call    B. calling    C. having called    D. to be called

3. When I kept getting unwanted calls, I called the phone company and had my phone number _____. The process was easier than I expected it to be.
   A. change    B. changed    C. to change    D. changing

4. Jean should seriously consider ____ an actress. She is a very talented performer.
   A. to become    B. become    C. becoming    D. will become

5. ____ television to the exclusion of all other activities is not a healthy habit for a growing child.
   A. To be watched    B. Being watched    C. Watching    D. Watch
6. After their children had grown up, Mr. and Mrs. Sills decided ______ to a condominium in the city. They’ve never been sorry.
   A. to have moved  B. moving  C. move  D. to move

7. I truly appreciated ______ to give the commencement address, but I wasn’t able to accept the honor because of a previous commitment.
   A. asking  B. to have asked  C. to ask  D. having been asked

8. The store manager caught the cashier ______ money from the cash register and promptly called the police. They discovered that it had been going on for a long time.
   A. to sneak  B. sneaking  C. to have sneaked  D. being sneaked

9. My roommate’s handwriting is very bad, so he had me ______ his paper for him last night.
   A. to type  B. type  C. to have typed  D. typed

10. The municipal authorities advised ______ all drinking water during the emergency.
    A. to boil  B. to be boiled  C. boiling  D. boil

11. If we leave now for our trip, we can drive half the distance before we stop ______ lunch.
    A. having  B. to have  C. having had  D. for having

12. Our schedule is not working out. We should discuss ______ our daily routine. I don’t feel as though we’re getting enough accomplished.
    A. changing  B. to change  C. to have changed  D. being changed

13. I can’t recall ______ that old movie, but maybe I did many years ago.
    A. having seen  B. to have seen  C. to see  D. having been seen

14. Our school basketball team won the championship game by ______ two points in the last five seconds. It was the most exciting game I have ever attended.
    A. being scored  B. to score  C. scoring  D. score

15. The flight attendants made all the passengers ______ their seat belts during the turbulence.
    A. to buckle  B. to have buckled  C. buckling  D. buckle

16. It has become necessary ______ water in the metropolitan area because of the severe drought.
    A. rationing  B. ration  C. to have rationed  D. to ration

17. You can’t blame Ralph for ______ to eat that dessert. It looked delicious.
    A. to be tempted  B. tempted  C. be tempted  D. having been tempted

18. Let’s leave early so we’ll be ahead of the rush of commuters. We can’t risk ______ in heavy traffic during rush hour.
    A. holding up  B. being held up  C. having held up  D. to hold up

19. It is always interesting ______ people in airports while you’re waiting for a flight.
    A. being observed  B. observe  C. to have observed  D. to observe

20. I got everyone in the family ______ Jane’s birthday card before I sent it to her.
    A. sign  B. signed  C. to sign  D. having signed
PRACTICE 15. Verb form review. (Charts 14-1 → 15-9)

Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Bill decided (buy) _______ to buy _______ a new car rather than a used one.

2. We delayed (open) _______ the doors of the examination room until exactly 9:00.

3. I really dislike (ask) _______ to answer questions in class when I haven’t prepared my lesson.

4. I certainly didn’t anticipate (have) _______ to wait in line for three hours for tickets to the baseball game!

5. When I was younger, I used (wear) _______ mini-skirts and bright colors. Now I am accustomed to (dress) _______ more conservatively.

6. Skydivers must have nerves of steel. I can’t imagine (jump) _______ out of a plane and (fall) _______ to the earth. What if the parachute didn’t open?

7. We are looking forward to (take) _______ on a tour of Athens by our Greek friends.
8. I told the mail carrier that we would be away for two weeks on vacation. I asked her _stop_ ____________ (deliver) ______________ our mail until the 21st. She told me _fill_ ________ __________ out a form at the post office so that the post office would hold our mail until we returned.

9. The elderly man next door is just sitting in his rocking chair _gaze_ ______________ out the window. I wish there were something I could do _cheer_ ______________ him up.

10. I resent _have_ ____________ to work on this project with Fred. I know I’ll end up with most of the work falling on my shoulders.

11. Rick moved from a big city to a small town. He appreciates _be_ ______________ able to drive to work in five minutes with very little traffic congestion.

12. The power lines outside my house were dangerous. I finally got the power company _move_ ______________ them to a safer place.

13. I wanted _help_ ______________ them _resolve_ ______________ their differences, but Sally persuaded me _interfere, not_ ______________

14. Sara was encouraged by her teachers _apply_ ______________ for study at the Art Institute.

15. I was happy _learn_ ______________ of your new position in the company, but I was disappointed _discover_ ______________ that you had recommended _promote_ ______________ Carl to your old position instead of me.

16. I don’t mind _remind_ ______________ you every day _lock_ ______________ the door when you leave the apartment, but I would appreciate your _try_ ______________ _remember_ ______________ on your own.

17. Now I remember your _ask_ ______________ me to bring sandwiches to the picnic. Your complaints about my _forget_ ______________ things seem justified. I’m sorry.

18. After our automobile accident, the insurance company had a stack of papers for us to sign, but our lawyer advised us _sign, not_ ______________ them until she had a chance to study them very carefully.

19. John was responsible for _notify_ ______________ everyone about the meeting, but he apparently failed _call_ ______________ several people. As a result, not enough people showed up, and we have to try to get everybody together again soon.

20. You shouldn’t let children _play_ ______________ with matches.
21. Art smelled something (*burn*) _____________. When he ran into the kitchen, he saw fire (*come*) _____________ out of the oven and panicked. If Barbara hadn’t come running in with the fire extinguisher, I don’t know what would have happened.

![Image of a kitchen scene with smoke]

22. I finally told him (*be*) ____________ quiet for a minute and (*listen*) ____________ to what I had to say.

23. Irene was lying in bed (*think*) ______________ about what a wonderful time she’d had.

24. The illogic of his statements made me (*tear*) ____________ my hair out.

25. Recently Jo has been spending most of her time (*do*) ____________ research for a book on pioneer women.

26. Mary Beth suggested (*go*) ____________ on a picnic.

27. Isabel expected (*admit*) ________________ to the university, but she wasn’t.

28. Jason wouldn’t let them (*take*) ____________ his picture.

29. I couldn’t understand what the passage said, so I had my friend (*translate*) ____________ it for me.

30. No, that’s not what I meant (*say*) ____________. *How can I make you (*understand*) ____________?*

31. I have finally assembled enough information (*begin*) ________________ writing my thesis.

32. It’s a serious problem. *Something needs (*do*) ______________ about it soon.*

33. I was terribly disappointed (*discover*) ________________ that he had lied to me.
34. I had the operator (put) __________ the call through for me.
35. No one could make Ted (feel) __________ afraid. He refused (intimidate) __________ ____________ by anyone.
36. I don’t see how she can possibly avoid (fail) ________________ the course.
37. Do something! Don’t just sit there (twiddle) ______________ your thumbs.
38. I don’t know how to get to Harry’s house, so I had him (draw) ____________ a map for me.
39. Barbara has a wonderful sense of humor. She can always make me (laugh) ____________.
40. The teacher had the class (open) ____________ their books to page 185.
41. I found my roommate in the other room (sleep) ________________ on the floor in the middle of the day.
42. They refused (pay) ________________ their taxes, so they were sent to jail.
43. I admit (be) ____________ a little nervous about the job interview. I don’t know what (expect) ________________.
44. I found a coin (lie) ________________ on the sidewalk.

◊ PRACTICE 16. Verb form review. (Charts 14-1 • 15-9)
Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.

1. After I decided (have) ________________ a garage (build) ____________ next to the house, I hired a carpenter (do) ____________ the work.

2. The coach didn’t let anyone (watch) ____________ the team (practice) ________________ before the championship game. He wanted to keep the opposing team from (find) ________________ out about the new plays he had devised.

3. My son is playing in his first piano recital this evening. I’m looking forward to (hear) ________________ him (play) ____________, but I know he’s worried about (forget) ________________ the right notes and (make) ________________ a fool of himself. I told him just (relax) ____________ and (enjoy) ____________ himself.

4. There’s not much point in (waste) ________________ a lot of time and energy on that project. It’s likely (fail) ____________ no matter what we do. Spend your time (do) ________________ something more worthwhile.
5. (Attend) __________________ the dance proved to be an (embarrass) __________________ experience for me, especially since I don’t know how to dance. I felt like a fish out of water. I wanted (hide) __________________ someplace or (get) __________________ out of there, but my friend wouldn’t let me (leave) __________________.

6. I’m over sixty now, but I enjoy (recall) __________________ my high-school days. I remember (choose) __________________ by my classmates as “Most Likely to Succeed” when I was a senior. My best friend was chosen as “Least Likely to Succeed,” and he is now the president of an electronics company. Once in a while when we get together, we have a good time (look) __________________ through the high-school yearbook and (laugh) __________________ at the way we looked then. We reminisce about (act) __________________ in school dramas and (play) __________________ on the basketball team. We remember (be) __________________ serious young men who knew how to have fun. We congratulate ourselves for (achieve) __________________ more than we had thought we could when we were eighteen.

7. Our house needs (clean) ______________________ . The floors need (sweep) ______________________ . The dishes need (wash) ______________________ . The furniture needs (dust) ______________________ . However, I think I’ll read a book. (Read) ______________________ is a lot more interesting than (do) ______________ housework.

8. As an adult, I very much appreciate (give) ______________________ the opportunity to travel extensively with my parents when I was a child. Those experiences were important in (form) ______________________ my view of the world. I learned (accept) ______________________ different customs and beliefs. At times, I would resist (go) ______________________ away on another trip, especially when I was a teenager. In the end, I always accompanied my parents, and I am grateful that I did. I didn’t understand at that time how those trips would influence my later life. My (be) ______________ a compassionate and caring adult is due in large part to my (expose) ______________________ to many different ways of life as a child.

9. (Find) __________________ a cure for the common cold does not appear (be) ______________ imminent. Colds are caused by hundreds of different viruses. You can possibly avoid (expose) ______________________ to the viruses by (stay) ______________________ away from those with colds, but it’s almost impossible (avoid) ______________________ the viruses
completely. If you want (minimize) ________________ the risk of (get) ________________ a cold, it is prudent (get) ________________ enough rest and (eat) ________________ properly. Some people believe in (take) ________________ large amounts of Vitamin C. In the long run, it is probably easier (prevent) ________________ (catch) ________________ a cold than it is to cure one.

10. Modern cars have systems that protect us from (inconvenience) ________________ ________________ or (hurt) ________________ by our own carelessness. In most cars, when the keys are left in the ignition, a buzz sounds in order (remind) ________________ the driver (remove) ________________ them. In some models, if the driver does not remember (turn) ________________ off the lights, it does not matter because the lights go off automatically. In some cases, when the seat belts are not buckled, the ignition does not start, and then the driver is actually forced (buckle) ________________ up. Often when the driver has failed (shut) ________________ a door properly, another signal noise may be given. A few cars emit sounds to warn us (fill) ________________ the tank before it is completely empty.

It is easy (forget) ________________ (do) ________________ many routine tasks in (drive) ________________ a car. The automatic warning systems help drivers (avoid) ________________ (make) ________________ some common mistakes. While some people may resent (instruct) ________________ by their own automobiles (perform) ________________ certain procedures, many others do not mind at all (remind) ________________ (carry) ________________ out these easily overlooked procedures.
Example: The office staff decided ___C__ a retirement party for Dolores.
   A. having had       B. to have had       C. to have       D. having

1. I don’t blame you for not _____ outside in this awful weather.
   A. wanting to go    B. wanting go      C. want to go     D. to want go

2. I think I hear someone ______ the back window. Do you hear it, too?
   A. trying open      B. trying to open   C. try opening    D. try to open

3. When Alan was questioned by the police, he admitted knowing about the embezzlement of funds from his company, but denied _____ in any way.
   A. to be involved    B. involving       C. having involved D. being involved

4. Mr. Lee was upset by _____ him the truth.
   A. our not having told C. we didn’t tell
   B. us not tell       D. not to tell

5. We considered _____ after work.
   A. to go shop        B. going shopping  C. going to shop  D. to go to shop

6. Jack offered _____ care of my garden while I was out of town.
   A. take             B. taking          C. to have taken D. to take

7. Could you please come over? I need you _____ the refrigerator.
   A. help me moving    C. to help me move
   B. helping me to move D. help me to move

8. I just heard that there’s been a major accident that has all of the traffic tied up. If we want to get to the play on time, we’d better avoid _____ the highway.
   A. having taken     B. take            C. to take       D. taking

9. The painting was beautiful. I stood there _____ it for a long time.
   A. for admiring     B. being admired   C. admire        D. admiring

10. Jim should have asked for help instead _____ to do it himself.
    A. of trying        B. to try          C. try           D. from trying

11. A plane with an engine on fire approached the runway. _____ was frightening. There could have been a terrible accident.
    A. Watch it landing C. To watch it land
    B. Watching it land D. Watching to land it

12. The customs officer opened the suitcase _____ if anything illegal was being brought into the country.
    A. seeing           B. for seeing     C. see           D. to see

13. Sometimes very young children have trouble _____ fact from fiction and may believe that dragons actually exist.
    A. to separate      B. separating     C. to be separated D. for separating
14. Do you have an excuse ______ late to class two days in a row?
   A. for to be         B. for being        C. to be            D. being

15. Jack made me ______ him next week.
   A. to promise to call  C. promise to call
   B. to promise calling  D. promise calling

16. I got Barbara ______ her car for the weekend.
   A. to let me to borrow  C. to let me borrow
   B. let me borrow        D. let me to borrow

17. I'll never forget ______ that race. What a thrill!
   A. to win             B. win
   C. being won          D. winning

18. No one has better qualifications. Carol is certain ______ for the job.
   A. to choose          B. having chosen
   C. to be chosen       D. being chosen

19. I was enjoying my book, but I stopped ______ a program on TV.
   A. reading to watch   C. to read for watching
   B. to read to watch   D. reading for to watch

20. Who is the woman talking to Mr. Quinn? I don’t recall ______ her around the office before.
   A. to have seen       B. seeing
   C. to see             D. being seen
Example: The office staff decided __C__ a retirement party for Dolores.

A. having had  B. to have had  C. to have  D. having

1. Roger proved that the accident wasn’t his fault by ____A____ two witnesses who testified in his favor.

A. produce  B. produced  C. to produce  D. producing

2. The front door is warped from the humidity. We have a difficult time ____B____ it.

A. open  B. to open  C. having opened  D. opening

3. I stood up at the meeting and demanded ____B____. At last, I got the chance to express my opinion.

A. to be heard  C. having been heard  B. to hear  D. to have heard

4. Did you ever finish ____A____ the office for that new client of yours?

A. to design  B. designing  C. designed  D. having designed

5. It's a beautiful day, and I have my brother's boat. Would you like to go ____C____?

A. to sail  B. sailing  C. to sailing  D. for sailing

6. I called a plumber ____B____ the kitchen sink.

A. for repairing  B. for to repair  C. to repair  D. to be repaired

7. I'm angry because you didn't tell me the truth. I don't like ____D____.

A. deceiving  B. to deceive  C. being deceived  D. having deceived

8. A good teacher makes her students ____B____ the world from new perspectives.

A. to view  B. viewing  C. view  D. to be viewed

9. Please remember ____B____ your hand during the test if you have a question.

A. raising  B. to raise  C. having raised  D. to have raised

10. It is important ____B____ care of your health.

A. to take  B. to be taken  C. take  D. taken

11. ____B____ in restaurants as often as they do is very expensive.

A. Being eaten  C. Having been eating  B. Having eaten  D. Eating

12. I expect Mary ____B____ here early tonight. She should arrive in the next half hour.

A. to come  B. coming  C. having come  D. to have come

13. I advised my niece not ____B____ at an early age.

A. marrying  C. to marry  B. being married  D. to have been married

14. Shhh! I hear someone ____B____ in the distance. Do you hear it, too?

A. shout  B. shouted  C. to shout  D. shouting
15. I don’t understand ______ your job so suddenly. Why did you do that?
   A. your quitting  
   B. you to have quit  
   C. to quit  
   D. you quit  

16. Last night, we saw a meteor ______ through the sky.
   A. streaked  
   B. to streak  
   C. streak  
   D. to have streaked  

17. My parents wouldn’t let me ______ up late when I was a child.
   A. to be stay  
   B. staying  
   C. to stay  
   D. stay  

18. Children should be encouraged ______ their individual interests.
   A. develop  
   B. to be developed  
   C. to develop  
   D. developing  

19. This room is too dark. We need ______ a lighter shade.
   A. to have it painted  
   B. to be painted  
   C. painting it  
   D. to have it paint  

20. I’m sorry I never graduated. I’ve always regretted not ______ college.
   A. to finish  
   B. finish  
   C. finished  
   D. having finished
### PRACTICE 1. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)

**Directions:** Write the words that are parallel in each of the sentences.

1. These apples are fresh and sweet.
   - fresh (adjective) + sweet (adjective)

2. These apples and pears are fresh.
   - (noun) + (noun)

3. I washed and dried the apples.
   - (verb) + (verb)

4. I am washing and drying the apples.
   - (verb) + (verb)

5. We ate the fruit happily and quickly.
   - (adverb) + (adverb)

6. I enjoy biting into a fresh apple and tasting the juicy sweetness.
   - (gerund) + (gerund)

7. I like to bite into a fresh apple and taste the juicy sweetness.
   - (infinitive) + (infinitive)

8. Those imported apples are delicious but expensive.
   - (adjective) + (adjective)

9. Apples, pears, and bananas are kinds of fruit.
   - (noun) + (noun) + (noun)

10. Those apples are red, ripe, and juicy.
    - (adjective) + (adjective) + (adjective)

### PRACTICE 2. Parallel structure: use of commas. (Chart 16-1)

**Directions:** Add commas as appropriate.

1. Jack was calm and quiet. *(no commas)*
2. Jack was calm, quiet, and serene.
   - *Jack was calm, quiet,* and serene.

---

*The comma before *and* in a series is optional. See Chart 16-1.*
3. The children sang and danced.
4. The children sang danced and played games.
5. Tom and Tariq joined the soccer game.
6. Tom Tariq and Francisco joined the soccer game.
7. I told the children to sit down be quiet and open their reading books.
8. I told the children to sit down and be quiet.
9. Did you know that the pupil* of your eye expands and contracts slightly with each heartbeat?
10. Our waitress’s tray held two cups of coffee three glasses of water and one glass of orange juice.
11. My parents were strict but fair with their children.
12. Is a newborn blue whale smaller or larger than an adult elephant?

◊ PRACTICE 3. Parallel structure. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)
Directions: Write “C” if the parallel structure is CORRECT. Write “I” if the parallel structure is INCORRECT, and make any necessary corrections. Underline the parallel elements of the sentences.

1. ___ I admire him for his intelligence, cheerful disposition, and ___ honesty.
2. ___ Abraham Lincoln was a lawyer and a politician.
3. ______ The boat sailed across the lake smoothly and quiet.
4. ______ Barb studies each problem carefully and works out a solution.
5. ______ Aluminum is plentiful and relatively inexpensive.
6. ______ Many visitors to Los Angeles enjoy visiting Disneyland and to tour movie studios.
7. ______ Children are usually interested in but a little frightened by snakes.
8. ______ Either fainting can result from a lack of oxygen or a loss of blood.
9. ______ So far this term, the students in the writing class have learned how to write thesis statements, organize their material, and summarizing their conclusions.
10. ______ When I looked more closely, I saw that it was not coffee but chocolate on my necktie.
11. ______ Not only universities support medical research but also many government agencies.
12. ______ Physics explains why water freezes and how the sun produces heat.
13. ______ All plants need light, a suitable climate, and an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
14. ______ With their keen sight, fine hearing, and refined sense of smell, wolves hunt day or night in quest of elk, deer, moose, or caribou.

*The pupil of one’s eye is the dark center of the eye.
15. ______ The comedian made people laugh by telling jokes and make funny faces.

16. ______ Tina is always understanding, patient, and sensitive when helping her friends with their problems.

17. ______ Not only the post office but also all banks close on national holidays.

18. ______ Walking briskly for 30 minutes or to run for 15 minutes will burn an approximately equal number of calories.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Parallel structure. (Chart 16-1)
Directions: Choose the letter of the phrase from the list that best completes each sentence. Use each phrase in the list only once.

A. reliable health care  E. provide quality education
B. carefully  F. responsible
C. excellence in  G. seeking practical solutions
D. in agriculture  H. who finds a way to get the important jobs done

1. Mr. Turner has had wide experience. He has worked in business, in the news media, and _____.

2. People want safe homes, good schools, and ______.

3. As a taxpayer, I want my money used wisely and ______.

4. Mrs. Adams is respected for researching issues and ______.

5. Ms. Hunter has established a record of effective and ______ leadership in government.

6. She has worked hard to control excess government spending, protect our environment, and ______.

7. Carol is a hard-working personnel manager who welcomes challenges and ______.

8. I will continue to fight for adequate funding of and ______ education.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Paired conjunctions: subject-verb agreement. (Chart 16-2)
Directions: Supply the correct present tense form of the verb in parentheses.

1. (know) Neither the students nor the teacher ______ the answer.

2. (know) Neither the teacher nor the students ______ the answer.

3. (know) Not only the students but also the teacher ____________ the answer.

4. (know) Not only the teacher but also the students ____________ the answer.

5. (know) Both the teacher and the students ____________ the answer.

6. (want) Neither Alan nor Carol ____________ to go skiing this weekend.

7. (like) Both John and Ted ____________ to go cross-country skiing.

8. (have) Either Jack or Alice ____________ the information you need.

9. (agree) Neither my parents nor my brother ____________ with my decision.
10. (be) Both intelligence and skill ________________ essential to good teaching.

11. (realize) Neither my classmates nor my teacher ________________ that I have no idea what’s going on in class.

12. (think) Not only Laura’s husband but also her children ________________ she should return to school and finish her graduate degree.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Paired conjunctions. (Chart 16-2)

Directions: Combine the following into sentences which contain parallel structure. Use the paired conjunctions in parentheses. Pay special attention to the exact place you put the paired conjunctions in the combined sentence.

1. Many people don’t drink coffee. Many people don’t drink alcohol. (neither . . . nor)
   → Many people drink neither coffee nor alcohol.

2. Barbara is fluent in Chinese. She is also fluent in Japanese. (not only . . . but also)

3. I’m sorry to say that Paul has no patience. He has no sensitivity to others. (neither . . . nor)

4. She can sing. She can dance. (both . . . and)

5. If you want to change your class schedule, you should talk to your teacher, or you should talk to your academic counselor. (either . . . or)

6. Diana is intelligent. She is very creative. (both . . . and)

7. You may begin working tomorrow or you may begin next week. (either . . . or)

8. Michael didn’t tell his mother about the trouble he had gotten into. He didn’t tell his father about the trouble he had gotten into. (neither . . . nor)

9. Success in karate requires balance and skill. Success in karate requires concentration and mental alertness. (not only . . . but also)
PRACTICE 7. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas.
(Charts 16-1 and 16-3)

Directions: Punctuate these sentences by adding periods (.) or commas (,) as necessary. Do not add any words. Capitalize letters where necessary. Some sentences need no changes.

1. I like French cooking my wife prefers Italian cooking.
   → I like French cooking. My wife prefers Italian cooking.

2. I like French cooking but my wife prefers Italian cooking.
   → I like French cooking, but my wife prefers Italian cooking. (optional comma)

3. I've read that book it's very good.

4. I've read that book but I didn't like it.

5. I opened the door and asked my friend to come in.

6. I opened the door my sister answered the phone.

7. I opened the door and my sister answered the phone.

8. Minerals are common materials they are found in rocks and soil.

9. The most common solid materials on earth are minerals they are found in rocks soil and water.

10. You can travel to England by plane or you can go by ship if you prefer.

11. You can travel to England by plane or by ship.

12. Jason was going to study all night so he declined our invitation to dinner.

13. Jason declined our invitation to dinner he needed to stay home and study.

14. The wind was howling outside yet it was warm and comfortable indoors.

15. I hurried to answer the phone for I didn't want the children to wake up.

16. Last weekend we went camping it rained the entire time.

17. The highway was under construction so we had to take a different route to work.

18. No one thought we would win the championship yet our team won by a large margin.

19. We arrived at the theater late but the play had not yet begun we were quite surprised.

20. A central heating system provides heat for an entire building from one central place most central heating systems service only one building but some systems heat a group of buildings, such as those at a military base a campus or an apartment complex.

PRACTICE 8. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas.
(Charts 16-1 and 16-3)

Directions: Find and correct the errors in punctuation and capitalization.

I spent yesterday with my brother. We had a really good time he's visiting me for a couple of days so I decided not to go to work yesterday we spent the day in the city first I
took him to the waterfront we went to the aquarium, where we saw fearsome sharks some wonderfully funny marine mammals and all kinds of tropical fish after the aquarium, we went downtown to a big mall and went shopping my brother doesn’t like to shop as much as I do so we didn’t stay there long.

I had trouble thinking of a place to take him for lunch for he’s a strict vegetarian luckily I finally remembered a restaurant that has vegan food so we went there and had a wonderful lunch of fresh vegetables and whole grains I’m not a vegetarian yet I must say that I really enjoyed the meal.

In the afternoon it started raining so we went to a movie it was pretty good but had too much violence for me I felt tense when we left the theater I prefer comedies or dramas my brother loved the movie.

We ended the day with a good home-cooked meal and some good talk in my living room it was a good day I like spending time with my brother.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Combining independent clauses: periods and commas.
(Charts 16-1 and 16-3)

Directions: Find and correct the errors in punctuation and capitalization.

Some of the most interesting working women of the American West in the nineteenth century were African-American women Mary Fields was one of them she had been born a slave in the mid-1800s in the South but moved west to the Rocky Mountains as a free woman in 1884 her first job was hauling freight she drove a wagon and delivered freight in the valleys and mountains of Montana she was tall strong and fast on the draw* she didn’t hesitate to protect her wagon of goods with her gun.

She drove a freight wagon for many years then in her late fifties she opened a restaurant but her business failed so in her sixties she became a stagecoach driver carrying the U.S. mail because of outlaws, driving a mailcoach was dangerous yet her mailcoach always arrived safely in her seventies she opened her own laundry business she continued successfully in that business until her death in 1914.

Mary Fields deserves our respect and can be seen as a role model by young women everywhere for she rose above unfortunate circumstances and became a determined hardworking and successful businesswoman

*"Fast on the draw" means that she could pull her gun out of her belt or holster and shoot fast.
CHAPTER 17
Adverb Clauses

◊ PRACTICE 1. Adverb Clauses. (Chart 17-1)
Directions: Change the position of the adverb clause in the sentence. Underline the adverb clause in the given sentence, and underline the adverb clause in the new sentence. Punctuate carefully.

Example: Sue dropped a carton of eggs as she was leaving the store.
   → As Sue was leaving the store, she dropped a carton of eggs.*

1. We'll all take a walk in the park after Dad finishes working on the car.
2. Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week, he has had to use crutches to walk.
3. Because I already had my boarding pass, I didn't have to stand in line at the airline counter.
4. Productivity in a factory increases if the workplace is made pleasant.
5. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, the country's name was changed to Sri Lanka.
6. Ms. Johnson regularly returns her e-mail messages as soon as she has some free time from her principal duties.
7. Tarik will be able to work more efficiently once he becomes familiar with the new computer program.
8. When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Periods and commas. (Charts 16-1, 16-3, and 17-1)
Directions: Add periods and commas as necessary. Do not change, add, or omit any words. Capitalize as necessary.

1. The lake was calm Tom went fishing.
   → The lake was calm, Tom went fishing.
2. Because the lake was calm Tom went fishing.
   → Because the lake was calm, Tom went fishing.

*Also possible: As she was leaving the store, Sue dropped a carton of eggs.
3. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm he caught two fish.
4. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm and caught two fish.
5. When Tom went fishing the lake was calm he caught two fish.
6. The lake was calm so Tom went fishing he caught two fish.
7. Because the lake was calm and quiet Tom went fishing.
8. The lake was calm quiet and clear when Tom went fishing.
9. Mr. Hood is admired because he dedicated his life to helping the poor he is well known for his work on behalf of homeless people.
10. Microscopes automobile dashboards and cameras are awkward for left-handed people to use they are designed for right-handed people when “lefties” use these items they have to use their right hand to do the things that they would normally do with their left hand.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Verb tenses in adverb clauses of time. (Chapter 5 and Chart 17-1)
Directions: Choose the letter of the correct answer.

1. After Marco ______ his degree, he plans to seek employment in an engineering firm.
   A. will finish
   B. will have finished
   C. finishes
   D. is finishing

2. By the time Colette leaves work today, she ______ the budget report.
   A. will finish
   B. has finished
   C. will have finished
   D. finishes

3. When my aunt ______ into the airport tomorrow, I’ll be at work, so I can’t pick her up.
   A. will get
   B. got
   C. will have gotten
   D. gets

4. Natasha heard a small “meow” and looked down to discover a kitten at her feet. When she saw it, she ______.
   A. was smiling
   B. had smiled
   C. smiled
   D. smiles

5. Ahmed has trouble keeping a job. By the time Ahmed was thirty, he ______ eight different jobs.
   A. had
   B. was having
   C. had had
   D. had been having

6. Maria waits until her husband Al ______ to work before she calls her friends on the phone.
   A. will go
   B. went
   C. will have gone
   D. goes

7. I went to an opera at Lincoln Center the last time I ______ to New York City.
   A. go
   B. went
   C. had gone
   D. have gone

8. When the police arrived, the building was empty. The thieves ______ and escaped through an unlocked window.
   A. will have entered
   B. had entered
   C. have entered
   D. entered

9. It seems that whenever I try to take some quiet time for myself, the phone ______.
   A. has been ringing
   B. is ringing
   C. rings
   D. has rung
10. I'll invite the Thompsons to the potluck the next time I ______ them.
   A. see B. will see C. will have seen D. have seen

11. I ______ hard to help support my family ever since I was a child.
   A. worked B. work C. am working D. have worked

12. A small animal ran across the path in front of me as I ______ through the woods.
   A. was walking B. had walked C. am walking D. had been walking

◊ PRACTICE 4. Using adverb clauses to show cause-and-effect relationships. (Chart 17-2)

Directions: Combine the sentences, using the word or phrase in parentheses. Add commas where necessary. Make two sentences for each, showing the two possible positions of the adverb clause. Underline the adverb clause.

Example: Our flight was delayed. We decided to take a long walk around the terminal. (since)
          → Since our flight was delayed, we decided to take a long walk around the terminal.
          → We decided to take a long walk around the terminal since our flight was delayed.

1. My registration was canceled. I didn’t pay my fees on time. (because)

2. Erica has qualified for the Olympics in speedskating. She must train even more vigorously. (now that)

3. We decided not to buy the house on Fourth Street. It’s directly below flight patterns from the nearby international airport. (since)

◊ PRACTICE 5. Using even though vs. because. (Charts 17-2 and 17-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with even though or because.

1. I put on my raincoat ______ it was a bright, sunny day.
2. I put on my raincoat ______ it was raining.
3. ______________ Sue is a good student, she received a scholarship.
4. ______________ Ann is a good student, she didn’t receive a scholarship.
5. ______________ it was raining, we went for a walk.
6. ______________ it was raining, we didn’t go for a walk.
7. This letter was delivered ______________ it didn’t have enough postage.
8. That letter was returned to the sender ______________ it didn’t have enough postage.
9. I’m going horseback riding with Judy this afternoon ______________ I’m afraid of horses.
10. I’m going horseback riding with Judy this afternoon ______________ I enjoy it.
11. ______________ you’ve made it clear that you don’t want any help, I have to at least offer to help you.
12. I knew that I should get some sleep, but I just couldn’t put my book down _____________.
I was really enjoying it.

13. ____________ Tom didn’t know how to dance, he wanted to go to the school dance 
___________ he felt lonely sitting at home and staring blankly at the TV while all of 
his friends were having fun together.

14. My hair stylist subscribes to three different fashion magazines _____________ she’s not 
interested in clothes. She subscribes to them _____________ her customers like them.

Diamond Symbols:

$\diamond$ PRACTICE 6. Direct contrast: while and whereas. (Chart 17-4)

Directions: Write “C” if the sentence (including punctuation) is CORRECT. Write “I” if the 
sentence is INCORRECT.

1. ______ While some chairs are soft, others are hard.
2. ______ While some chairs are hard, others are soft.
3. ______ Some chairs are soft, while others are hard.
4. ______ Some chairs are hard, while others are soft.
5. ______ Whereas some chairs are soft, others are hard.
6. ______ Some chairs are hard, whereas others are soft.
7. ______ Some chairs are soft, whereas others are hard.
8. ______ Whereas some chairs are hard, others are soft.
9. ______ While some chairs are soft, others are comfortable.

$\diamond$ PRACTICE 7. If-clauses. (Chart 17-5)

Directions: Underline the if-clause. Correct any errors in verb forms.

 rains

1. Let’s not go to the park if it will rain tomorrow.
2. If my car doesn’t start tomorrow morning, I’ll take the bus to work. (no change)
3. If I have free time during my work day, I send e-mail messages to friends.
4. I’ll send you an e-mail if I will have some free time tomorrow.
5. If we don’t leave within the next ten minutes, we are late to the theater.
6. If we will leave within the next two minutes, we will make it to the theater on time.

$\diamond$ PRACTICE 8. Using whether or not and even if. (Chart 17-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences, using the given information.

1. Tom is going to go to the horse races no matter what. He doesn’t care if his wife approves.
   In other words, Tom is going to go to the horse races even if his wife ___________.
   He’s going to go whether his wife ____________ or not.
2. Fatima is determined to buy an expensive car. It doesn’t matter to her if she can’t afford it. In other words, Fatima is going to buy an expensive car whether she ____________ it or not. She’s going to buy one even if she ____________ it.

3. William wears his raincoat every day. He wears it when it’s raining. He wears it when it’s not raining. In other words, William wears his raincoat whether it ____________ or not. He wears it even if it ________________.

4. Some students don’t understand what the teacher is saying, but still they smile and nod. In other words, even if they ________________ what the teacher is saying, they smile and nod. They smile and nod whether they ________________ what the teacher is saying or not.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Using in case and in the event that. (Chart 17-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using in case. Decide if it goes in the first blank or in the second blank. Add necessary punctuation and capitalization.

PART I.

1. ________________ you need to get in touch with me, I’ll be in my office until late this evening.

2. ________________ we’ll be at the Swan Hotel ________________ you need to call us.

3. Mary is willing to work with you on your design project. ________________ you find that you need help with it ________________ she’ll be back in town next Monday and can meet with you then.

4. ________________ my boss has to stay near a phone all weekend ________________ the company wants him to go to London to close the deal they’ve been working on all month.

5. ________________ I’m not back in time to make dinner ________________ I put the phone number for carry-out Chinese food on the refrigerator. You can call and order the food for yourself.

PART II. Complete the sentences using in the event that.

6. ________________ Janet is late for work again tomorrow, she will be fired.

7. Are you sure you’re taking enough money with you? ________________ you’d better take a credit card with you ________________ you run out of cash.

8. The political situation is getting more unstable and dangerous. ________________ my family plans to leave the country ________________ there is civil war.

9. Just to be on the safe side, ________________ I always take a change of clothes in my carry-on bag ________________ the airline loses my luggage.

10. Ann is one of five people nominated for an award to be given at the banquet this evening. ________________ she has already prepared an acceptance speech ________________ she wins it tonight.
PRACTICE 10. Using unless vs. if and only if. (Charts 17-8 and 17-9)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. I’ll give you a hand ______ you need it, but I hope I don’t hurt my back.
   A. unless   B. if

2. I can’t buy a car ______ I save enough money.
   A. unless   B. only if

3. Our kids are allowed to watch television after dinner ______ they have finished their homework. Homework must come first.
   A. unless   B. only if

4. There can be peace in the world ______ all nations sincerely lend their energy to that effort.
   A. unless   B. only if

5. I’m afraid the battery is dead. ______ I buy a new one, the car won’t start.
   A. Unless   B. If

6. Let’s plan on an old-fashioned sit-down dinner with the whole family at the table at once. I’ll prepare a really special dinner ______ you all promise to be home on time this evening.
   A. unless   B. only if

PRACTICE 11. Adverb clauses of condition. (Charts 17-5 → 17-9)

Directions: Choose the correct words in italics so that the sentences make sense.

1. I’ll pass the course only if I (pass, don’t pass) the final examination.

2. I’m going to go, not going to go to the park unless the weather is nice.

3. I’m going to the park unless it rains, doesn’t rain.

4. Tom doesn’t like to work. He’ll get a job unless, only if he has to.

5. I always eat, never eat breakfast unless I get up late and don’t have enough time.

6. I always finish my homework even if, only if I’m sleepy and want to go to bed.

7. You will, won’t learn to play the violin well unless you practice every day.

8. Even if the president calls, wake, don’t wake me up. I don’t want to talk to anyone. I want to sleep.

9. Jack is going to come to the game with us today if, unless his boss gives him the afternoon off.

10. Borrow, Don’t borrow money from your friends unless you absolutely must.
PRACTICE 12. Using only if vs. if: subject-verb inversion. (Chart 17-9)

Directions: Change the position of the adverb clause to the front of the sentence. Make any necessary changes in the verb of the main clause.

1. I can finish this work on time only if you help me.
   → Only if you help me can I finish this work on time.

2. I can finish this work on time if you help me.
   → If you help me, I can finish this work on time.

3. I will go only if I am invited.

4. I will go if I am invited.

5. I eat only if I am hungry.

6. I usually eat some fruit if I am hungry during the morning.

7. You will be considered for that job only if you know both Arabic and Spanish.

8. John goes to the market only if the refrigerator is empty.

9. I will tell you the truth about what happened only if you promise not to get angry.

10. I won't marry you if you can't learn to communicate your feelings.

PRACTICE 13. Summary: adverb clauses. (Chapter 17)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. Alice will tutor you in math ______ you promise to do everything she says.
   A. unless  B. only if  C. whereas  D. even though

2. Oscar won't pass his math course ______ he gets a tutor.
   A. because  B. in the event that  C. unless  D. only if

3. Most people you meet will be polite to you ______ you are polite to them.
   A. in case  B. only if  C. unless  D. if

4. I'm glad that my mother made me take piano lessons when I was a child ______ I hated it at the time. Now, I play the piano every day.
   A. even though  B. because  C. unless  D. if

5. Chicken eggs will not hatch ______ they are kept at the proper temperature.
   A. because  B. unless  C. only if  D. even though

6. You'd better take your raincoat with you ______ the weather changes. It could rain before you get home again.
   A. now that  B. even if  C. in case  D. only if
7. Ms. Jackson was assigned the fifth-grade science class ______ she has the best qualifications among the available faculty.
   A. although  B. whereas  C. if  D. since

8. My sister can fall asleep under any conditions, but I can’t get to sleep ______ the light is off and the room is perfectly quiet.
   A. if  B. unless  C. in case  D. now that

9. The majority will of the people rules in a democracy, ______ in a dictatorship, power is in the hands of a single person.
   A. because  B. even though  C. while  D. unless

10. The cheapest way to get from an airport to a hotel is to take an airport bus, but I’m not sure if River City has one. ______ there is no airport bus, you can always take a taxi.
    A. Unless  B. Now that  C. In the event that  D. Even though

11. ______ my country has a new democratic government, the people at last have more freedom.
    A. Even though  B. Even if  C. In the event that  D. Now that

12. Parents love and support their children ______ the children misbehave or do foolish things.
    A. even if  B. since  C. if  D. only if
CHAPTER 18
Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

◊ PRACTICE 1. Reduction of adverb clauses to modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 → 18-3)
Directions: Change the adverb clause to a modifying phrase.

opening
1. Since he opened his new business, Bob has been working 16 hours a day.
2. I shut off the lights before I left the room.
3. While he was herding his goats in the mountains, an Ethiopian named Kaldi discovered the coffee plant more than 1200 years ago.
4. Before they marched into battle, ancient Ethiopian soldiers ate a mixture of raw coffee beans and fat for extra energy.
5. After I had met the movie star in person, I understood why she was so popular.
6. I found my keys after I searched through all my pockets.
7. When it was first brought to Europe, the tomato was thought to be poisonous.
8. Since it was first imported into Australia many years ago, the rabbit has become a serious pest because it has no natural enemies there.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 → 18-3)
Directions: Underline the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause. Change the adverb clauses to modifying phrases, if possible.

1. While Sam was driving to work in the rain, his car got a flat tire. → (no change)
2. While Sam was driving to work, he had a flat tire.
   → While driving to work, Sam had a flat tire.
3. Before Nick left on his trip, his son gave him a big hug and a kiss.
4. Before Nick left on his trip, he gave his itinerary to his secretary.
5. After Tom had worked hard in the garden all afternoon, he took a shower and then went to the movies with his friends.
6. After Sunita had made a delicious chicken curry for her friends, they wanted the recipe.
7. Before a friend tries to do something hard, an American may say “Break a leg!” to wish him or her good luck.
8. Emily always straightens her desk before she leaves the office at the end of the day.
PRACTICE 3. Verb forms in adverb clauses and modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 → 18-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.

1. a. Before **leave** ______ leaving on his trip, Tom renewed his passport.
   b. Before Tom **leave** ______ left on his trip, he renewed his passport.

2. a. After Thomas Edison **invent** ______ invented/had invented the light bulb, he went on to create many other useful inventions.
   b. After **invent** ______ inventing/having invented the light bulb, Thomas Edison went on to create many other useful inventions.

3. a. While **work** ______ with uranium ore, Marie Curie discovered two new elements, radium and polonium.
   b. While she **work** ______ with uranium ore, Marie Curie discovered two new elements, radium and polonium.

4. a. Before an astronaut **fly** ______ on a space mission, s/he will have undergone thousands of hours of training.
   b. Before **fly** ______ on a space mission, an astronaut will have undergone thousands of hours of training.

5. a. After they **study** ______ the stars, the ancient Mayans in Central America developed a very accurate solar calendar.
   b. After **study** ______ the stars, the ancient Mayans in Central America developed a very accurate solar calendar.

6. a. Since **learn** ______ that cigarettes cause cancer, many people have stopped smoking.
   b. Since they **learn** ______ that cigarettes cause cancer, many people have stopped smoking.

7. a. Aspirin can be poisonous when it **take** ______ in excessive amounts.
   b. Aspirin can be poisonous when **take** ______ in excessive amounts.

8. a. When **take** ______ aspirin, you should be sure to follow the directions on the bottle.
   b. When you **take** ______ aspirin, you should be sure to follow the directions on the bottle.

9. a. I took a wrong turn while I **drive** ______ to my uncle’s house and ended up back where I started.
   b. I took a wrong turn while **drive** ______ to my uncle’s house and ended up back where I started.
PRACTICE 4. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Directions: Combine the two sentences, making a modifying phrase out of the first sentence, if possible.

1. Larry didn’t want to disturb his sleeping wife. He tiptoed out of the room.
   \[\text{Not wanting to disturb his sleeping wife, Larry tiptoed out of the room.}\]

2. Larry didn’t want to disturb his sleeping wife. She needed to catch up on her sleep.
   \[\text{(no change)}\]

3. I misunderstood the directions to the hotel. I arrived one hour late for the dinner party.

4. I misunderstood the directions to the hotel. The taxi driver didn’t know how to get there either.

5. The taxi driver misunderstood my directions to the hotel. He took me to the wrong place.

6. Ann remembered that she hadn’t turned off the oven. She went directly home.

7. I met Gina after work. She suggested playing tennis.

8. My family and I live in the Pacific Northwest, where it rains a great deal. We are accustomed to cool, damp weather.

PRACTICE 5. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 \(\rightarrow\) 18-5)

Directions: Make sentences that combine a modifying phrase with a main clause. Write the capital letter of the most logical main clause to complete the sentence. Use each capital letter only once.

**Modifying phrases**

1. Trying to understand the physics problem, _____
2. Since injuring my arm, _____
3. Fighting for her life, _____
4. Wanting to ask a question, _____
5. Exhausted after washing the windows, _____
6. Not wanting to disturb the manager, _____
7. Upon hearing the announcement that their plane was delayed, _____
8. Talking with the employees after work, _____
9. Attempting to enter the freeway, _____
10. Currently selling at record-low prices, _____
11. Stepping onto the platform to receive their medals, _____
12. Before turning in your exam paper, _____

**Main clauses**

A. the desperate woman grasped a floating log after the boat capsized.
B. I collapsed in my chair for a rest.
C. the taxi driver caused a multiple-car accident.
D. carefully proofread all your answers.
E. the students repeated the experiment.
F. the athletes waved to the cheering crowd.
G. the little girl raised her hand.
H. the manager learned of their dissatisfaction with their jobs.
I. the passengers angrily walked back to the ticket counter.
J. I haven’t been able to play tennis.
K. gold is considered a good investment.
L. the worker in charge of Section B of the assembly line told the assistant manager about the problem.
PRACTICE 6. Modifying phrases with upon. (Chart 18-5)

Directions: Write completions using the ideas in the given list.

She learned the problem was not at all serious.
She was told she got it.
He heard these words.
He investigated the cause.
✓ I arrived at the airport.
I reached the other side of the lake.

1. It had been a long, uncomfortable trip. Upon __arriving at the airport__, I quickly unfastened my seat belt and stood in the aisle waiting my turn to disembark.

2. I rented a small fishing boat last weekend, but I ended up doing more rowing than fishing. The motor died halfway across the lake, so I had to row to shore. It was a long distance away. Upon ________________________________, I was exhausted.

3. At first, we thought the fire had been caused by lightning. However, upon ________________________________, the fire chief determined it had been caused by faulty electrical wiring.

4. Amy felt terrible. She was sure she had some dread disease, so she went to the doctor for some tests. Upon ________________________________, she was extremely relieved.

5. Janet wanted that scholarship with all her heart and soul. Upon ________________________________, she jumped straight up in the air and let out a scream of happiness.

PRACTICE 7. Modifying phrases. (Charts 18-1 → 18-5)

Directions: Write “I” if the sentence is INCORRECT. Write “C” if the sentence is CORRECT.
Reminder: A modifying phrase must modify the subject of the sentence.

1. ____L While taking a trip across Europe this summer, Jane’s camera suddenly quit working.

2. ____C When using a microwave oven for the first time, read the instructions carefully about the kind of dish you can use.

3. _____ Having been given their instructions, the teacher told her students to begin working on the test.

4. _____ After receiving the Nobel Peace Prize in 1979, Mother Teresa returned to Calcutta, India, to work and live among the poor, the sick, and the dying.

5. _____ Having studied Greek for several years, Sarah’s pronunciation was easy to understand.
6. ____ Since returning to her country after graduation, Maria's parents have enjoyed having all their children home again.

7. ____ While bicycling across the United States, the wheels on my bike had to be replaced several times.

8. ____ When told he would have to have surgery, the doctor reassured Bob that he wouldn't have to miss more than a week of work.

9. ____ Upon hearing the bad news, tears began to flow from her eyes.

10. ____ Before driving across a desert, be sure that your car has good tires as well as enough oil, water, and gas to last the trip.
1. _____ Paul brings the money for our lunch, we’ll go right down to the cafeteria.
   A. Since    B. As soon as    C. Now that    D. Until

2. The first time I went swimming in deep water, I sank to the bottom like a rock. _____ I’ve learned to stay afloat, I feel better about the water, but I still can’t swim well.
   A. As soon as    B. The first time    C. When    D. Now that

3. It’s obvious that neither the workers _____ to fight the new rules.
   A. nor the manager intend    B. nor the manager intends
   C. nor the manager intends
   D. intend nor the manager intends

4. _____ I heard the telephone ring, I didn’t answer it.
   A. Because    B. Only if    C. Even though    D. So

5. After _____ to 45 minutes of an extremely boring speech, I found myself nodding off.
   A. was listening    B. listen    C. listening
   D. having listen

6. Why did I stay until the end? I am never going to stay and watch a bad movie again! _____ I am in that situation, I’m going to leave the theater immediately.
   A. The next time    B. Now that    C. After    D. Until

7. “Why aren’t you ready to go?”
   “I am ready.”
   “How can that be? It’s freezing outside, _____ you’re wearing shorts and a T-shirt!”
   A. for    B. so    C. because    D. yet

8. Erin likes to swim, jog, and _____ tennis.
   A. plays    B. play    C. to play    D. playing

9. Since _____ to a warmer and less humid climate, I’ve had no trouble with my asthma.
   A. upon moving    B. I moving    C. moving    D. I move

10. While _____ to help Tim with his math, I got impatient because he wouldn’t pay attention to what I was saying.
    A. I am trying    B. having tried    C. I try    D. trying

11. We’re going to lose this game _____ our team doesn’t start playing better soon.
    A. if    B. unless    C. although    D. whereas

12. Some fish can survive only in salt water, _____ other species can live only in fresh water.
    A. since    B. unless    C. if    D. whereas

13. Joe seemed to be in a good mood, _____ he snapped at me angrily when I asked him to join us.
    A. for    B. so    C. yet    D. and

14. _____ Jan arrives, we will have finished this group project.
    A. By the time    B. Until    C. Now that    D. Since
15. For the most part, young children spend their time playing, eating, and _____ a lot.
   A. they sleep  B. sleeping  C. sleep  D. they are sleeping

16. _____ I get back from my next business trip, I'm taking a few days off. I'm worn out.
   A. Every time  B. Since  C. Now that  D. Once

17. _____ unprepared for the exam, I felt sure I would get a low score.
   A. Having  B. Being  C. Because  D. Upon

18. Ever since _____ Ted the bad news, he's been avoiding me.
   A. I told  B. told  C. telling  D. having told

19. _____ my daughter reaches the age of sixteen, she will be able to drive.
   A. Having  B. Since  C. Once  D. Because

20. Matt will enjoy skiing more the next time he goes to the Alps _____ he has had skiing
    lessons.
   A. unless  B. before  C. now that  D. and
Example: ____ B ____ I get angry and upset, I try to take ten deep breaths.
A. Until B. Whenever C. whereas D. For

1. Before ______ a promotion and transfer to another city, I will discuss it at length with my whole family to be sure that everyone will be able to adjust to the change.
   A. accept C. having been accepted
   B. accepted D. accepting

2. The flowers will soon start to bloom ______ winter is gone and the weather is beginning to get warmer.
   A. even if B. now that C. so D. even though

3. Only if you promise to study hard ______ to tutor you.
   A. will I agree B. agree I C. I agree D. I will agree

4. Great white sharks are dangerous to ______ will attack without warning.
   A. humans, they C. humans. Because they
   B. humans D. humans. They

5. ______ the need to finish this project soon, I want you to work on this overtime for the next few days.
   A. Because B. Despite C. Because of D. Even though

6. ______ the secret of how to make silk remained inside Asia, Europeans were forced to pay incredibly high sums of money for this mysterious material to be brought overland to Europe.
   A. Although B. Only if C. Since D. Until

7. Jack insisted that he didn't need any help, ______ I helped him anyway.
   A. and B. so C. for D. but

8. ______ by the swimming pool, I realized I was getting sunburned.
   A. Because C. While I am lying
   B. Lying D. Even though I was lying

9. ______ it was a formal dinner party, James wore his blue jeans.
   A. Since B. Even though C. In the event that D. Until

10. Ancient Egyptians mummified their dead through the use of chemicals, ______ ancient Peruvians mummified their dead through natural processes by putting dead bodies in extremely dry desert caves.
    A. whereas B. because C. even though D. whether or not

11. Mr. Jackson hopes to avoid surgery. He will not agree to the operation ______ he is convinced that it is absolutely necessary.
    A. in the event that C. if
    B. unless D. only if
12. Some English words have the same pronunciation ______ they are spelled differently, for example, dear and deer:
   A. unless       B. since   C. even though   D. only if

13. Both my books ______ from my room last night.
   A. were stolen and my wallet stolen  C. and my wallet stolen
   B. and my wallet were stolen  D. and my wallet was stolen

14. When ______ a dictionary, you need to be able to understand the symbols and abbreviations it contains.
   A. having used  B. use      C. to use       D. using

15. You must obey the speed limits on public roads. They are designed to keep you safe. You shouldn’t exceed the speed limit ______ you are an experienced race car driver.
   A. even if  B. only if   C. if   D. in the event that

16. My nose got sunburned ______ I wore a hat with a wide brim to shade my face.
   A. if     B. since   C. because   D. even though

17. Do you like jazz? You should go to the jazz festival ______ you like that kind of music.
   A. if     B. unless   C. although   D. while

18. Only if you get to the theater early ______ a chance to get a ticket for tonight’s performance.
   A. you will have  B. have  C. will you have  D. you have

19. The bread was old and stale, ______ Martha ate it anyway.
   A. and  B. so   C. for   D. but

20. ______ you’re better at numbers than I am, why don’t you take over as treasurer of the organization?
   A. Since  B. Only if  C. For that   D. Unless
CHAPTER 19
Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

◊ PRACTICE 1. Because vs. because of. (Charts 17-2 and 19-1)
Directions: Complete the sentences with either because or because of.

1. We delayed our trip ______ because of ______ the bad weather.
2. Sue’s eyes were red ______ because ______ she had been crying.
3. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink __________ pollution.
4. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink __________ it is polluted.
5. Some people think Harry succeeded in business __________ his charming personality rather than his business skills.
6. You can’t enter this secured area __________ you don’t have an official permit.
7. My lecture notes were incomplete __________ the instructor talked too fast.
8. It’s unsafe to travel in that country __________ the ongoing civil war.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Because vs. therefore. (Charts 17-2, 19-1, and 19-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences with either because or therefore.

1. Matt didn’t go to work yesterday ______ because ______ he didn’t feel well.
2. Matt didn’t feel well. ______ Therefore ______, he didn’t go to work yesterday.
3. Sharon hid her feelings from everyone. __________ no one suspected the deep emotional pain she was suffering.
4. No one ever knows what’s going on inside of Sharon ______ she hides her feelings behind a mask of smiles.
5. ______ young Joseph was an inquisitive student, he was always liked by his teachers.
6. The television broadcast was interrupted in the middle of the eighth inning; ______, most of the audience missed the conclusion of the baseball game.
PART I. Complete the sentences with because of, because, or therefore. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

1. Because it rained, we stayed home.
2. It rained. Therefore, we stayed home.
3. We stayed home because of the bad weather.
4. The hurricane was moving directly toward a small coastal town all residents were advised to move inland until it passed.
5. The residents moved inland the hurricane.
6. the hurricane was moving directly toward the town all residents were advised to move inland.
7. Piranhas, which are found in the Amazon River, are ferocious and bloodthirsty fish. When they attack in great numbers, they can devour an entire cow in several minutes their extremely sharp teeth.

PART II. Complete the sentence with due to, since, or consequently. Add any necessary punctuation and capitalization.

8. his poor eyesight John has to sit in the front row in class.
9. John has poor eyesight he has to sit in the front row.
10. John has poor eyesight he has to sit in the front row.
11. Sarah is afraid of heights she will not walk across a bridge.
12. Sarah will not walk across a bridge her fear of heights.
13. Mark is overweight his doctor has advised him to exercise regularly.
14. a diamond is extremely hard it can be used to cut glass.

PART 4. Periods and commas. (Charts 16-3 and 19-3)

Directions: Punctuate the sentences properly, using periods and commas. Capitalize as appropriate.

1. Edward missed the final exam. Therefore, he failed the course.*

2. Edward failed the course because he missed the final exam. (no change)

3. Edward missed the final exam. He simply forgot to go to it.**

---

*The use of a semicolon is also possible:
Edward missed the final exam; therefore, he failed the course.

**The use of a semicolon is also possible:
Edward missed the final exam; he simply forgot to go to it.
4. Because we forgot to make a reservation we couldn’t get a table at our favorite restaurant last night.

5. The waitress kept dropping trays full of dishes therefore she was fired.

6. The waiter kept forgetting customers’ orders so he was fired.

7. Ron is an unpleasant dinner companion because of his uncouth table manners.

8. The needle has been around since prehistoric times the button was invented about 2000 years ago the zipper wasn’t invented until 1890.

9. It is possible for wildlife observers to identify individual zebras because the patterns of stripes on each zebra are unique no two zebras are alike.

10. When students are learning to type, they often practice the sentence “The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog” because it contains all the letters of the alphabet.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Such . . . that and so . . . that. (Chart 19-4)

Directions: Add such or so to the following sentences.

1. It was __such__ a hot day that we canceled our tennis game.
2. The test was __so__ easy that everyone got a high score.
3. The movie was ______ bad that we left early.
4. It was ______ a bad movie that we left early.
5. Professor James is ______ a stern taskmaster that lazy students won’t take his class.
6. The restaurant patron at the table near us was ______ belligerent that we all felt embarrassed, especially when he swept everything off the table and demanded his money back.
7. The intricate metal lacework on the Eiffel Tower in Paris was ______ complicated that the structure took more than two and a half years to complete.
8. Charles and his brother are ______ hard-working carpenters that I’m sure they’ll make a success of their new business.
9. The children had ______ much fun at the carnival that they begged to go again.
10. I feel like I have ______ little energy that I wonder if I’m getting sick.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Such . . . that and so . . . that. (Chart 19-4)

Directions: Combine the sentences by using so . . . that or such . . . that.

1. We took a walk. It was a nice day.
   * It was such a nice day that we took a walk.
2. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
3. I couldn’t understand her. She talked too fast.
4. It was an expensive car. We couldn’t afford to buy it.
5. I don’t feel like going to class. We’re having beautiful weather.
6. Grandpa held me tightly when he hugged me. I couldn’t breathe for a moment.
7. There were few people at the meeting. It was canceled.
8. The classroom has comfortable chairs. The students find it easy to fall asleep.
9. Ted couldn’t get to sleep last night. He was worried about the exam.
10. Jerry got angry. He put his fist through the wall.
11. I have many problems. I can use all the help you can give me.
12. The tornado struck with great force. It lifted automobiles off the ground.
13. I can’t figure out what this sentence says. His handwriting is illegible.
14. David has too many girlfriends. He can’t remember all of their names.
15. Too many people came to the meeting. There were not enough seats for everyone.

◊ PRACTICE 7. So that. (Chart 19-5)

Directions: Combine the ideas using so that.

1. Rachel wanted to watch the news. She turned on the TV.
   - Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.

2. Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment. He didn’t want to forget to go.
   - Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment so that he wouldn’t forget to go.

3. Nancy is carrying extra courses every semester. She wants to graduate early.

4. Jason wants to travel in Europe. He’s tired of work and school and is planning to take a semester off.

5. Suzanne didn’t want to disturb her roommate. She lowered the volume on the TV set.

6. Whenever we are planning a vacation, we call a travel agent. We are able to get expert advice on our itinerary.

7. It’s a good idea for you to learn how to type. You’ll be able to type your own papers when you go to the university.

8. Lynn wanted to make sure that she didn’t forget to take her book back to the library. She tied a string around her finger.

9. Ed took some change from his pocket. He wanted to buy a newspaper.

10. I wanted to listen to the news while I was making dinner. I turned on the TV.

11. I unplugged the phone. I didn’t want to be interrupted while I was working.

12. Yesterday Linda was driving on the highway when her car started making strange noises. After she pulled over to the side of the road, she raised the hood of her car in order to make sure that other drivers knew that she had car trouble.
Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: ______ I was tired, I went to bed.
A. Because of B. Since C. For D. Due to

1. The workers have gone on strike. ______ all production has ceased.
A. Because B. So that C. Now that D. Therefore

2. A small fish needs camouflage to hide itself ______ its enemies cannot find it.
A. so that B. because C. therefore D. due to

3. Our apartment building has had two robberies in the last month, ______ I'm going to put an extra lock on the door and install a telephone in my bedroom.
A. now that B. so that C. so D. since

4. The Chippewas are Native North Americans. Their language is one of the most complex in the world, ______ it contains more than 6,000 verb forms.
A. consequently B. so C. so that D. for

5. ______ the bad grease stain on the carpet, we had to rearrange the furniture before the company arrived.
A. Because B. Now that C. For D. Because of

6. The price of airline tickets has gone down recently. ______ the tickets cost less, more people are flying than before.
A. Consequently B. Because of C. Because D. For

7. Let's ask our teacher how to solve this problem ______ we can't agree on the answer.
A. since B. because of C. consequently D. so

8. The fire raged out of control. It got ______ bad that more firefighters had to be called in.
A. such B. therefore C. so D. so that

9. Dolphins are sometimes caught and killed in commercial fishing nets ______ they often swim in schools with other fish, such as tuna.
A. due to B. because C. so D. therefore

10. We can finally afford to trade in the old car for a new one ______ I've gotten the raise I've been waiting for.
A. so that B. consequently C. now that D. so

11. Two of the factories in our small town have closed. ______, unemployment is high.
A. Consequently B. Because C. So that D. For

12. ______ I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
A. For B. Since C. Due to D. Therefore

13. I needed to finish the marathon race ______ I could prove that I had the strength and stamina to do it. I didn't care whether I won or not.
A. because of B. so that C. for D. therefore
14. The Eskimo* way of life changed dramatically during the 1800s ______ the introduction of firearms and the influx of large numbers of European whalers and fur traders.
   A. because       B. for       C. due to       D. so

15. During extremely hot weather, elephants require both mud and water to keep their skin cool ______ they have no sweat glands.
   A. and       B. because of       C. so       D. due to the fact that

◊ PRACTICE 9. Showing contrast: punctuation. (Chart 19-6)
Direction: Add commas, periods, and capital letters as necessary. Do not add or omit any words. Do not change the order of the words.

1. Annie told the truth, but no one believed her.
2. Annie told the truth. H however, no one believed her.**
3. Even though Annie told the truth no one believed her.
4. No one believed Annie even though she told the truth.
5. Annie told the truth yet no one believed her.
6. Annie told the truth nevertheless no one believed her.
7. In spite of the fact that Annie told the truth no one believed her.
8. No one believed Annie despite the fact that she told the truth.
9. Even though all of my family friends have advised me not to travel abroad during this time of political turmoil I'm leaving next week to begin a trip around the world.
10. Some people think great strides have been made in cleaning up the environment in much of the world however others think the situation is much worse than it was twenty years ago.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Despite/in spite of vs. even though/although. (Chart 19-6)
Direction: Choose the correct completions.

1. a. Even though, Despite her doctor warned her, Carol has continued to smoke nearly three packs of cigarettes a day.
   b. Even though, Despite her doctor's warnings, Carol has continued to smoke nearly three packs of cigarettes a day.
   c. Even though, Despite the warnings her doctor gave her, Carol continues to smoke.
   d. Even though, Despite the fact that her doctor warned her of dangers to her health, Carol continues to smoke.
   e. Even though, Despite she has been warned about the dangers of smoking by her doctor, Carol continues to smoke.

*Eskimos are people who live in the Arctic regions of northern Alaska, northern Canada, and Greenland.
**Also possible: Annie told the truth; however, no one believed her.
2. a. Although, In spite of an approaching storm, the two climbers continued their trek up the mountain.
   b. Although, In spite of a storm was approaching, the two climbers continued their trek.
   c. Although, In spite of there was an approaching storm, the two climbers continued up the mountain.
   d. Although, In spite of the storm that was approaching the mountain area, the two climbers continued their trek.
   e. Although, In spite of the fact that a storm was approaching the mountain area, the two climbers continued their trek.

3. a. Although, Despite his many hours of practice, George failed his driving test for the third time.
   b. Although, Despite he had practiced for many hours, George failed his driving test for the third time.
   c. Although, Despite practicing for many hours, George failed his driving test again.
   d. Although, Despite his mother and father spent hours with him in the car trying to teach him how to drive, George failed his driving test repeatedly.
   e. Although, Despite his mother and father's efforts to teach him how to drive, George failed his driving test.

4. a. Even though, In spite of repeated crop failures due to drought, the villagers are refusing to leave their traditional homeland for resettlement in other areas.
   b. Even though, In spite of their crops have failed repeatedly due to drought, the villagers are refusing to leave their traditional homeland for resettlement in other areas.

214 CHAPTER 19
c. The villagers refuse to leave *even though*, *in spite of* the drought.
d. The villagers refuse to leave *even though*, *in spite of* the drought seriously threatens their food supply.
e. The villagers refuse to leave *even though*, *in spite of* the threat to their food supply because of the continued drought.
f. The villagers refuse to leave *even though*, *in spite of* the threat to their food supply is serious because of the continued drought.
g. The villagers refuse to leave *even though*, *in spite of* their food supply is threatened.
h. The villagers refuse to leave *even though*, *in spite of* their threatened food supply.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Using *in spite of/de spite and *even though/**though/although*. (Chart 19-6)

*Directions:* Choose the phrase from the list that best completes each sentence. Use each completion only once.

A. its many benefits
B. its inherent dangers
C. it has been shown to be safe
D. it has been shown to cause birth defects and sometimes death
E. his fear of heights
F. he is afraid of heights
G. he is normally quite shy and sometimes inarticulate
H. an inability to communicate well in any language besides English
I. having excellent skills in the job category they were trying to fill
J. he had the necessary qualifications

1. In spite of **B**, nuclear energy is a clean and potentially inexhaustible source of energy.
2. In spite of _______, Carl enjoyed his helicopter trip over the Grand Canyon in Arizona.
3. Because of his age, John was not hired even though _______.
4. Although _______, Mark rode an elevator to the top of the World Trade Center in New York for the magnificent view.
5. Although _______, many people avoid using a microwave oven for fear of its rays.
6. Jack usually has little trouble making new friends in another country despite ________.
7. In spite of ________, the use of chemotherapy to treat cancer has many severe side effects.
8. Though ________, Bob managed to give an excellent presentation at the board meeting.
9. Jerry continued to be denied a promotion despite ________.
10. DDT is still used in many countries as a primary insecticide even though ________.
PRACTICE 12. Direct contrast. (Chart 19-7)
Directions: Connect the given ideas, using the words in parentheses. Add commas, periods, semicolons, and capital letters as necessary.

1. (while) red is bright and lively gray is a dull color
   → Red is bright and lively, while gray is a dull color. OR
   → While red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color.

2. (on the other hand) Jane is insecure and unsure of herself her sister is full of self-confidence

3. (while) a rock is heavy a feather is light

4. (whereas) some children are unruly others are quiet and obedient

5. (on the other hand) language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex math and science courses are difficult for him

6. (however) strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy

PRACTICE 13. Cause and effect; showing contrast. (Charts 16-3, 17-2, and 19-1 → 19-7)
Directions: Show the relationship between the ideas by adding any of the following expressions, as appropriate. There may be more than one possible completion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>because</th>
<th>because of</th>
<th>while/whereas</th>
<th>on the other hand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>due to</td>
<td>nevertheless</td>
<td>in spite of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now that</td>
<td>even though</td>
<td>however</td>
<td>despite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>although</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. It was still hot in the room _ even though/although _ I had turned on the air conditioner.

2. Several people in the crowd became ill and fainted _ due to/because of _ the extreme heat.

3. The gardener trimmed the branches on the cherry tree _ I asked him not to.

4. The meat of the puffer fish can cause paralysis or even death if it is improperly prepared.
   _ it remains a delicacy in Japan for brave diners.

5. _ everyone disagreed with him, Brian went ahead with his original plan for the company.

6. The first mention of the game of chess appears in an Indian text written almost 1500 years ago. _ its ancient beginnings, it remains one of the most widely played games in the world today.

7. Alice heard a siren and saw the flashing lights of a police car in her rear-view mirror.
   _ she quickly pulled over to the side of the road and stopped.
8. Most adults carry around certain attitudes and prejudices about the world around them. Most children, _________________, enter new situations without such preconceived notions.

9. They often have to close all of the ski areas in the mountains _________________ severe weather conditions and avalanche danger.

10. _________________ paper was first developed by the ancient Chinese, its English name comes from the word papyrus, the name of an Egyptian water plant.

11. The supervisor must know what everyone in the department is doing _________________ all responsibility for error will fall on her shoulders.

12. _________________ aspirin is relatively safe for most adults, it should be administered very carefully to children, if at all. It can be dangerous to children’s health.

13. The peanut is used today to make everything from cosmetics to explosives _________________ the pioneering scientific work of George Washington Carver in the 1910s and 1920s.

14. In ancient China, yellow was considered to be an imperial color. _________________, only the emperor was allowed to wear it. No one else could have yellow clothing of any kind.

15. _________________ the abacus had been in use in Asia since ancient times, many in the Western world credited 19-year-old Blaise Pascal, a Frenchman, with inventing the first calculating machine in 1642.

16. _________________ she thought she heard the telephone ringing, Marge turned the TV down—only to discover it had been a telephone on the show she was watching.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Using otherwise. (Chart 19–8)
Directions: Make two sentences. Show the relationship between them by using otherwise. In the first sentence, use a modal auxiliary or phrasal modal: should, had better, have to, must, etc.

1. If you don't eat less and get more exercise, you won't lose weight.
   ∗ You should (had better/have to/must) eat less and get more exercise. Otherwise, you won't lose weight.

2. The children can watch TV tonight only if they finish all of their chores.
   ∗ The children have to (had better/should/must) finish all of their chores. Otherwise, they cannot watch TV tonight.

3. Unless you speak up now, the boss will go ahead without knowing that you don’t agree.

4. If you don’t stop at the store on your way home from work, we won’t have anything to eat for dinner tonight.

5. Unless you think it through very carefully, you won’t come up with the right answer.

6. If we don’t catch any fish this morning, we’re going to have beans for dinner again.
7. It's going to be very difficult to finish on time if you don't get someone to help you.
8. Maria is probably going to lose her job unless she finds a way to convince the boss that the error was unavoidable.

* ◊ PRACTICE 15. Expressing conditions. (Charts 17-6 → 17-9 and 19-8)

* Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate form of the verb pass.

1. Keith will graduate if he ___passes___ all of his courses.
2. Sam won't graduate if he ___doesn't pass___ all of his courses.
3. Ed won't graduate unless he __________________ all of his courses.
4. Sue will graduate only if she __________________ all of her courses.
5. Jessica will graduate even if she __________________ all of her courses.
6. Alex won't graduate even if he __________________ all of his courses.
7. Jennifer will graduate unless she __________________ all of her courses.
8. Amy won't graduate in the event that she __________________ all of her courses.
9. Jerry __________________ all of his courses. Otherwise, he won't graduate.
10. Carolyn __________________ all of her courses, or else she won't graduate.
1. I have to eat breakfast in the morning. ________, I get grouchy and hungry before my lunch break.
   A. Consequently  B. And  C. Otherwise  D. However

2. My mouth is burning! This is _______ spicy food that I don’t think I can finish it.
   A. such  B. so  C. very  D. too

3. I couldn’t use the pay phone, _______ I didn’t have any coins with me.
   A. yet  B. despite  C. for  D. even though

4. Bats are fascinating _______ have many interesting and amazing qualities.
   A. animals. Therefore, they  B. animals, they  C. animals. They  D. animals. Because they

5. I need to find an apartment before I can move. _______ I can find one in the next week or so, I will move to Chicago the first of next month.
   A. If  B. Even if  C. Whether  D. Only if

6. Sam and I would love to meet you at a restaurant tonight, but we can do that _______ we can find a babysitter.
   A. if  B. unless  C. only if  D. even if

7. _______ want to take a train trip across western Canada, but my traveling companion wants to fly to Mexico City for our vacation.
   A. Although I  B. Even if I  C. I  D. Despite I

8. Timmy doesn’t do well in school _______ his inability to concentrate on any one thing for longer than a minute or two.
   A. as  B. because of  C. because  D. therefore

9. Tony spent _______ money buying movie tickets that he didn’t have enough left to buy a soft drink or candy bar.
   A. such  B. a lot of  C. too much  D. so much

10. You should learn how to change a tire on your car _______ you can handle an emergency situation if necessary.
    A. so that  B. if  C. for that  D. therefore

11. Cars have become much more complicated. _______, mechanics need more training than in the past.
    A. Because  B. Therefore  C. So that  D. For

12. Not wanting to be late my first day of class, _______ to school after I missed my bus.
    A. so I ran  B. because I ran  C. I ran  D. therefore, I ran

13. It was raining _______ I couldn’t go outside.
    A. because  B. so hard that  C. so that  D. too hard that

14. The Northern Hemisphere has mostly westerly winds _______ the rotation of the earth toward the east.
    A. due to  B. because  C. therefore  D. so
15. Emily is motivated to study _______ she knows that a good education can improve her life.
   A. therefore       B. because of      C. because       D. so

16. Sonia broke her leg in two places. _______ she had to wear a cast and use crutches for three months.
   A. Nevertheless   B. Consequently   C. For that      D. Because

17. Carol showed up for the meeting _______ I asked her not to be there.
   A. even though    B. despite         C. because of    D. because

18. Peter works hard at everything he does. His brother, _______ , seldom puts out much effort.
   A. on the other hand   B. even though  C. otherwise    D. consequently

19. The road will remain safe _______ the flood washes out the bridge.
   A. as long as       B. unless       C. if           D. since

20. _______ I can’t make the presentation myself, I’ve asked my assistant to be prepared to do it for me.
   A. For            C. Only if       
   B. In the event that
   D. On the other hand

21. I have to go to the meeting _______ I want to or not.
   A. because         B. whether       C. even though     D. only if

22. I asked Angela to run the office while I’m gone _______ I know I can depend on her.
   A. unless         B. since          C. Although     D. so that

23. I think I did okay in my speech last night _______ I’d had almost no sleep for 24 hours.
   A. in spite of    B. unless        C. so that     D. despite the fact that

24. I talked to Anna throughout the evening, _______ nothing I said changed her opinion.
   A. yet            B. and           C. otherwise    D. so that

25. After getting home from elementary school, _______.
   A. our house buzzes with the children’s many activities
   B. the dog greets the children at the front door with wagging tail
   C. the children have an hour to play before they begin their homework
   D. the school bus drops the children at the corner near their house
1. ______ the extremely bad weather in the mountains, my friends decided not to cancel their trip across the mountain pass.
   A. Because of  B. In spite of  C. Even if  D. Even though

2. Even though a duck lives on water, it stays dry ______ the oil on its feathers, which prevents water from reaching its skin.
   A. because of  B. since  C. because  D. for

3. Alex cannot express himself clearly and correctly in writing. He will never advance in his job ______ he improves his language skills.
   A. otherwise  B. if  C. only if  D. unless

4. ______ there was no electricity, I was able to read because I had a candle.
   A. Unless  B. Even though  C. Even  D. Only if

5. A fire must have a readily available supply of oxygen. ______, it will stop burning.
   A. Consequently  B. Therefore  C. Otherwise  D. However

6. I studied Spanish for four years in high school. ______, I had trouble talking with people when I was traveling in Spain.
   A. Therefore  B. On the other hand  C. Otherwise  D. Nonetheless

7. I’m sorry you’ve decided not to go with us on the river trip, but ______ you change your mind, there will still be enough room on the boat for you.
   A. even  B. nevertheless  C. in the event that  D. although

8. I like to keep the windows open at night no matter how cold it gets. My wife, ______, prefers a warm bedroom with all windows tightly shut.
   A. nevertheless  B. consequently  C. on the other hand  D. whereas

9. You must lend me the money for the trip. ______, I won’t be able to go.
   A. Consequently  B. Nevertheless  C. Otherwise  D. Although

10. I don’t understand why, but my neighbor Mr. Morrow doesn’t seem to like me. He never smiles at me or speaks to me ______ the many efforts I have made to be friendly and neighborly.
    A. because of  B. in spite of  C. for  D. so

11. ______ the salary meets my expectations, I will accept the job offer.
    A. Due to  B. Even if  C. If  D. Unless

12. Camels have either one hump or two humps. The Arabian camel has one hump. The Bactrian camel, ______, has two humps.
    A. nevertheless  B. however  C. therefore  D. otherwise
13. Ms. Moore, the school counselor, has had years of experience dealing with student problems. ______, she is sometimes confronted by a problem that she cannot handle by herself.
   A. Therefore  B. Nevertheless  C. Otherwise  D. On the other hand

14. Right now all the seats on that flight are taken, sir. ______ there is a cancelation, I will call you.
   A. In the event that  B. Nevertheless  C. Unless  D. Even if

15. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn antelope, ______, can run within minutes of birth.
   A. however  B. nevertheless  C. otherwise  D. even though

16. Jason has become ______ famous that he now ignores his old friends. He shouldn’t do that.
   A. such  B. so  C. so much  D. too

17. Joan worked in a vineyard last summer ______ money for school expenses.
   A. because to earn  B. for she earned  C. so she earns  D. so that she could earn

18. Watching the children fly their kites in the park, ______.
   A. suddenly a gust of wind blew my hat off my head
   B. one of the kites got stuck in a tree
   C. I thought of the times long ago when I did the same thing
   D. it looked like a lot of fun

19. I guess I’m a soft touch. I just lent Jan some money for lunch ______ she never paid me back my last loan.
   A. even though  B. unless  C. or else  D. only if

20. Hundreds of species of Hawaiian flowers have become extinct or rare ______ extensive land development and the grazing of wild goats.
   A. now that  B. due to  C. because  D. for

21. It looks like they’re going to succeed ______ their present difficulties.
   A. despite  B. because of  C. even though  D. yet

22. The professor told me that I was doing well, ______ my final grade was awful.
   A. so  B. therefore  C. in spite of  D. yet

23. ______ Beth has a new car, she no longer takes the commuter train to work. She drives to work every day.
   A. Now that  B. While  C. Although  D. In case

24. Our village had ______ money available for education that the schools had to close.
   A. so little  B. such little  C. so much  D. such much

25. I hadn’t understood his ______ asked him to repeat what he’d said.
   A. directions. I  B. directions because I  C. directions, I  D. directions. However, I
CHAPTER 20
Conditional Sentences and Wishes

◇ PRACTICE 1. Conditional sentences: present/future. (Charts 20-1 → 20-3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses. Some of the sentences are contrary to fact, and some are not.

1. I am not an astronaut. If I (be) were an astronaut, I (take) _______ would take _______ my camera with me on the rocket ship next month.

2. That sounds like a good job offer. I (accept) _______ it if I (be) _______ you.

3. Don’t throw aerosol cans into a fire. An aerosol can (explode) _______ if you (throw) _______ it into a fire.

4. It is expensive to call across the ocean. However, if transoceanic telephone calls (be) _______ cheap, I (call) _______ my family every day and (talk) _______ for hours.

5. The teacher was absent today, so class was canceled. If she (be) _______ absent again tomorrow, class (cancel) _______ tomorrow, too.

6. Sea water is salty. If the oceans (consist) _______ of fresh water, there (be) _______ plenty of water to irrigate all of the deserts in the world to provide an abundant food supply for the entire population of the earth.

◇ PRACTICE 2. Conditional sentences: past time. (Chart 20-4)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. All of the sentences to complete are contrary to fact.

1. I’m sorry you had to take a cab to the airport. I didn’t know you needed a ride. If you (tell) _______ me, I (give) _______ you a ride gladly.

2. I got wet because I didn’t take my umbrella. However, I (get, not) _______ wet if I (remember) _______ to take my umbrella with me yesterday.

3. Many people were not satisfied with the leader after he took office. If they (know) _______ more about his planned economic program, they (vote, not) _______ for him.
4. You made a lot of unnecessary mistakes in your composition. You \(\text{get} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{a better grade}}} if you \text{use} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{either a dictionary or}}} the spell checker on your computer to check your spelling.}}

5. A: Oh, no! I’ve lost it!
B: Lost what?
A: The address for my job interview this afternoon. I wrote it on a match book.
B: A match book! If you \(\text{write} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{the address}}} in your appointment book where it belongs, you \text{lose, not} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{it.}}} When are you going to get organized?}}

6. A: Ann, \(\text{you, take} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{that job}}} if you \text{know} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{that you had to work nights?}}} B: No way. I had no idea I’d have to work the late night hours they’ve had me working.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{PRACTICE 3. Conditional sentences: present/future and past time. (Charts 20-1 \rightarrow 20-4)}
\item Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.
\item 1. If I \(\text{have} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{wings, I \text{have to, not} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{take an airplane to fly home.}}}}}}}}
\item 2. \(\text{people, be} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{able to fly}}} if they \text{have} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{feathers instead of hair?}}}}}
\item 3. This box has got to be in Chicago tomorrow. I’m going to send it by express mail. I’m sure if I \(\text{send} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{it}}} today by overnight express, it \text{arrive} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{in time.}}}}}
\item 4. I didn’t know the Newtons were going to bring two other people to dinner last night. If anyone else \(\text{bring} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{an extra guest, we \text{have, not} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{enough seats at the table.}}}}}}}}
\item 5. A: I don’t understand anything in this class. It’s boring. And I’m getting a failing grade.
B: If I \(\text{feel} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{the way you do about it, I \text{drop} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{the class as soon as possible.}}}}}}}}
\item 6. I’ve never understood why people build houses on flood plains. If we \(\text{have} \) \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{heavy rains in the spring, the river through my hometown \text{rise, always} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{above its banks and \text{flood} \underline{\underline{\underline{\text{the low-lying areas of the town. Some houses have been flooded a half-dozen times in the last 20 years.}}}}}}}}}}}}}
\end{itemize}
7. A: I'm exhausted, and we're no closer to a solution to this problem after nine hours of work.
   B: Why don't you go home and get some sleep, and I'll keep working. If I (discover) ____________ a solution before morning, I (call) ____________ you immediately. I promise.

8. A: I can't believe that you haven't finished that report. What will I use in the committee meeting at noon today?
   B: I'm really sorry. If I (know) ____________ you needed it today, I (stay) ____________ up all night last night and (finish) ____________ it.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4)
   Directions: Using the given information, create conditional sentences. Use if.

   1. I was sick yesterday, so I didn't go to class.
      → If I hadn't been sick yesterday, I would have gone to class.

   2. Because Alan never eats breakfast, he always overeats at lunch.
      → If Alan ate breakfast, he wouldn't overeat at lunch.

   3. Kostas was late to his own wedding because his watch was slow.

   4. I don't ride the bus to work every morning because it's always so crowded.

   5. Sara didn't know that highway 57 was closed, so she didn't take an alternative route.

   6. Camille couldn't finish unloading the truck because no one was there to help her.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Using progressive forms and “mixed time” in conditional sentences. (Charts 20-5 and 20-6)
   Directions: Using the given information, complete the conditional sentences.

   1. It is raining, so we won't finish the game.
      → If it ____________ weren't raining, we ____________ would finish ____________ the game.

   2. I didn't eat lunch, and now I'm hungry.
      → If I ____________ had eaten ____________ lunch, I ____________ wouldn't be ____________ hungry now.

   3. Bob left his wallet at home this morning, and now he doesn't have any money for lunch.
      → If Bob ____________ left ____________ his wallet at home this morning, he ____________ ____________ some money for lunch now.

   4. Carol didn't answer the phone because she was studying.
      → Carol ____________ left ____________ the phone if she ____________ ____________.

   5. The sun was shining, so we went to the beach yesterday.
      → If the sun ____________ ____________, we ____________ to the beach yesterday.
6. Every muscle in my body aches today because I played basketball for three hours last night.
   → Every muscle in my body __________________________ today if I ________________ __________________________ basketball for three hours last night.

7. Barry stops to shake everyone’s hand because he’s running for political office.
   → Barry __________________________ to shake everyone’s hand if he __________________________ __________________________ for political office.

8. We didn’t eat all of the turkey at dinner last night, so we have to have turkey again tonight.
   → If we __________________________ all of the turkey at dinner last night, we __________________________ turkey again tonight.

9. The music was playing loudly at the restaurant, so I didn’t hear everything Mr. Lee said during dinner.
   → If the music __________________________ so loudly, I __________________________ everything Mr. Lee said during dinner.

10. The library is closing now, so Abdul will have to leave before finishing his research.
    → If the library __________________________ now, Abdul __________________________ __________________________ before finishing his research.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Using progressive forms and “mixed time” in conditional sentences.
(Charts 20-5 and 20-6)

Directions: Using the given information, make conditional sentences. Use if.

1. The wind is blowing hard, so I won’t take the boat out for a ride.
   → If the wind weren’t blowing hard, I would take the boat out for a ride.

2. I feel better now because you talked to me about my problems last night.
   → I wouldn’t feel better now if you hadn’t talked to me about my problems last night.

3. Ann carried heavy furniture when she helped her friend move. Her back hurts now.

4. Paulo is working on two jobs right now, so he doesn’t have time to help you with your remodeling.

5. I wasn’t working at the restaurant last night. I didn’t wait on your table.

6. Because Diane asked questions every time she didn’t understand a problem, she has a good understanding of geometry now.

7. A fallen tree was blocking the road, so we didn’t arrive on time.

8. Rita is exhausted today because she didn’t get any sleep last night.

9. Olga and Ivan weren’t paying attention, so they didn’t see the sign marking their exit from the highway.

10. The doctor doesn’t really care about his patients. He didn’t explain the medical procedure to me before surgery.
◊ PRACTICE 7. Omitting if. (Chart 20-7)
Directions: Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

1. If you should need my help, please call.
   → Should you need my help, please call.

2. If I were you, I wouldn’t go there.
   → You, I wouldn’t go there.

3. If I had been offered a job at the law office, I would have gladly accepted.
   → A job at the law office, I would have gladly accepted.

4. If anyone should call, would you please take a message?
   → , would you please take a message?

5. If I were your doctor, I’d insist that you stop smoking.
   → Your doctor, I’d insist you stop smoking.

6. They wouldn’t have visited her house if they had known about her illness.
   → They wouldn’t have visited her house about her illness.

7. I would start giving my sister driving lessons if she were just a little older.
   → I would start giving my sister driving lessons just a little older.

8. If I had not opened the door when I did, I wouldn’t have seen you walk by.
   → the door when I did, I wouldn’t have seen you walk by.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Omitting if. (Chart 20-7)
Directions: Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

1. If I were your age, I’d do things differently.
   → I were your age, I’d do things differently.

2. If Bob should show up while I’m away, please give him my message.

3. If my uncle had stood up to sing, I’d have been embarrassed.

4. If she were ever in trouble, I’d do anything I could to help her.

5. If the manager should question these figures, have her talk to the bookkeeper.

6. I wouldn’t have known about your new job if I hadn’t talked to your mother.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Implied conditions. (Chart 20-8)
Directions: Notice the conditional verbs in the sentences. Then, using the given information, complete the implied if-clauses.

1. Sara’s dad would have picked her up, but I forgot to tell him that she needed a ride.
   → Sara’s dad would have picked her up if I hadn’t forgotten to tell him that she needed a ride.
2. I couldn’t have made it without your help.
→ I couldn’t have made it if __________________________

3. I opened the door slowly. Otherwise, I could have hit someone.
→ If __________________________, I could have hit someone.

4. Doug would have gone with me, but he couldn’t get time off from work.
→ Doug would have gone with me if __________________________

5. Carol: Why didn’t Oscar tell his boss about the problem?
   Alice: He would have gotten into a lot of trouble.
→ Oscar would have gotten into a lot of trouble if __________________________

◇ PRACTICE 10. Review: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8)
Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. If I could speak Spanish, I _____ next year studying in Mexico.
   A. will spend
   B. would have spent
   C. had spent
   D. would spend

2. It would have been a much more serious accident _____ fast at the time.
   A. was she driving
   B. had she been driving
   C. she had driven
   D. if she drove

3. “Can I borrow your car for this evening?”
   “Sure, but Nora’s using it right now. If she _____ it back in time, you’re welcome to borrow it.”
   A. brought
   B. would bring
   C. will bring
   D. brings

4. I didn’t get home until well after midnight last night. Otherwise, I _____ your call.
   A. returned
   B. had returned
   C. would return
   D. would have returned

5. If energy _____ inexpensive and unlimited, many things in the world would be different.
   A. is
   B. will be
   C. were
   D. would be

6. We _____ the game if we’d had a few more minutes.
   A. could have won
   B. won
   C. had won
   D. will win

7. I _____ William with me if I had known you and he didn’t get along with each other.
   A. hadn’t brought
   B. didn’t bring
   C. wouldn’t have brought
   D. won’t bring

8. The lecturer last night didn’t know what he was talking about, but if Dr. Mason _____, I would have listened carefully.
   A. lectured
   B. had been lecturing
   C. was lecturing
   D. would lecture

9. If you _____ to my advice in the first place, you wouldn’t be in this mess right now.
   A. listen
   B. will listen
   C. had listened
   D. listened
10. ______ interested in that subject, I would try to learn more about it.
   A. If I am     B. Should I    C. I was    D. Were I

11. If I ______ the same problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
   A. have     B. would have    C. had had    D. should have

12. I ______ you sooner had someone told me you were in the hospital.
   A. would have visited    C. had visited
   B. visited    D. visit

13. ______ more help, I could call my neighbor.
   A. Needed    B. Should I need    C. I have needed    D. I should need

14. ______ then what I know today, I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.
   A. If I know    B. If I would know    C. Did I know    D. Had I known

15. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people ______ the same language?
   A. speak    B. will speak    C. spoke    D. had spoken

16. If you can give me one good reason for your acting like this, ______ this incident again.
   A. I don't mention    B. I will never mention
   C. I never mention    D. will I never mention

17. I didn't know you were asleep. Otherwise, I ______ so much noise when I came in.
   A. didn't make    B. wouldn't have made
   C. won't make    D. don't make

18. Unless you ______ all of my questions, I can't do anything to help you.
   A. answered    B. answer    C. would answer    D. are answering

19. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I ______ it.
   A. would never have believed    C. hadn't believed
   B. don't believe    D. can't believe

20. If Jake ______ to go on the trip, would you have gone?
   A. doesn't agree    B. didn't agree    C. hadn't agreed    D. wouldn't agree

◊ PRACTICE 11. Review: conditional sentences. (Charts 20-1 • 20-8)
  Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. I'm broke, but I (have) ___________________________ plenty of money now if I (spend, not) ______ ___________________________ so much yesterday.

2. That child had a narrow escape. She (hit) ___________________________ by a car if her mother (pull, not) ______ ___________________________ her out of the street.

3. A: Why were you late for the meeting?
   B: Well, I (be) ___________________________ there on time, but I had a flat tire on the way.
4. A: Did you know that Bob got 100% on the test?
   B: Really? That surprises me. If I didn’t know better, I (think) ____________________
   he cheated.

5. A: How did you do on the test?
   B: Not so well. I (do) ____________________ much better, but I misread the
   directions for the last section.

6. A: Do you really mean it?
   B: Of course! I (say, not) ____________________ it unless I (mean)
   ____________________ it.

7. A: When did Mark graduate?
   B: He didn’t.
   A: Oh?
   B: He had to quit school because of some trouble at home. Otherwise, he (graduate)
   ____________________ last June.

8. A: I hear Dorothy had an accident. Was it serious?
   B: No. Luckily, she wasn’t driving fast at the time of the accident. If she (drive) ________
   ____________________ fast, I’m sure it (be) ____________________
   a more serious accident.

9. Tom’s hobby is collecting stamps from all over the world. If he (travel) ________________
   ________________ to a new country, he (spend, always) ________________
   ________________ time looking for new stamps. That’s how he has acquired such a large
   collection of valuable stamps.

◊ PRACTICE 12. As if/as though. (Chart 20-9)

Directions: Using the information in parentheses, complete the sentences.

1. Tim acts as if he ________ the boss. (Truth: Tim isn’t the boss.)

2. This hole in my shirt looks as if it ________ by a bullet. (Truth: The hole
   wasn’t made by a bullet.)

3. Barbara looked at me as though she ________ me before.
   (Truth: She has met me many times before.)

4. They treat their dog as if it ________ a child. (Truth: The dog isn’t a child.)

5. She went right on talking as though she ________ a word I’d said.
   (Truth: She heard everything I said.)

6. You look so depressed. You look as if you ________ a friend in the world.
   (Truth: You have many friends.)
7. He looked right through me as if I _________________. (Truth: I exist.)

8. Craig bumped the other car and then continued as though nothing _________________.
   (Truth: Something happened.)

9. A: Have Joe and Diane ever met?
   B: I don’t think so. Why?
   A: He came in and started talking to her as if they ________________ old friends.
   (Truth: They aren’t old friends.)

10. I can hear his voice so clearly that it’s as if he ________________ here in this room.
    (Truth: He isn’t here in this room; he’s next door.)

11. It was so quiet that it seemed as if the earth _________________. (Truth: The earth
didn’t stop.)

12. I turned, and there she was. It was as though she ________________ out of nowhere.
    (Truth: She didn’t appear out of nowhere.)

◇ PRACTICE 13. Using wish. (Charts 20-10 and 20-11)
Directions: Using the information in parentheses, complete the sentences.

1. (The sun isn’t shining.) I wish the sun ________________ right now.

2. (I wanted you to go.) I wish you ________________ with us to the concert last night.

3. (Spiro didn’t drive.) I wish Spiro ________________ to work. I’d ask him for a ride home.

4. (I can’t swim.) I wish I ________________ so I would feel safe in a boat.

5. (I want you to stop fighting.) I wish you ________________ fighting and try to work things out.

6. (I wanted to win.) I wish we ________________ the game last night.

7. (Bill didn’t get the promotion.) I wish Bill ________________ the promotion. He feels bad.

8. (I quit my job.) I wish I ________________ my job until I’d found another one.

9. (It isn’t winter.) I wish it ________________ winter so that I could go skiing.

10. (I want Al to sing.) I wish Al ________________ a couple of songs. He has a good voice.

11. (Natasha can’t bring her children.) I wish Natasha ________________ her children
    with her tomorrow. They would be good company for mine.

12. (No one offered to help.) I wish someone ________________ to help us find our way
    when we got lost in the middle of the city.
PRACTICE 14. Using wish. (Charts 20-10 and 20-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. Pedro’s in trouble with the teacher. Now he wishes he (miss, not) _______ hadn’t missed _______ class three times this week.

2. A: It’s raining. I wish it (stop) _______ would stop _______.
   B: Me too. I wish the sun (shine) _______ were shining _______ so that we could go swimming.

3. Heinrich doesn’t like his job as a house painter. He wishes he (go) ________________ to art school when he was younger. He wishes he (can paint) ________________ canvasses instead of houses for a living.

4. I wish I (move, not) ________________ to this town. I can’t seem to make any friends, and everything is so congested. I wish I (take) ________________ the job I was offered in the small town near here.

5. I know I should quit smoking. I wish you (stop) ________________ nagging me about it.

6. A: Did you get your car back from the garage?
   B: Yes, and it still isn’t fixed. I wish I (pay, not) ________________ them in full when I picked up the car. I should have waited to be sure that everything was all right.

7. A: I wish you (hurry) ________________! We’re going to be late.
   B: I wish you (relax) ________________. We’ve got plenty of time.

8. I wish my husband (invite, not) ________________ the neighbors over for dinner when he talked to them this afternoon. I don’t feel like cooking a big dinner.

9. A: How do you like the new president of our association?
   B: Not much. I wish she (elect, not) ________________. I never should have voted for her.
   A: Oh, really? Then you probably wish I (vote, not) ________________ for her. If you recall, she won by only one vote. You and I could have changed the outcome of the election if we’d known then what we know now.

10. A: I wish we (buy) ________________ everything we wanted all the time.
    B: In that case, you probably wish money (grow) ________________ on trees. We’d plant some in the back yard, and just go out and pick a little from the branches every morning.

11. A: My thirteen-year-old daughter wishes she (be, not) ________________ so tall and that her hair (be) ________ black and straight.
    B: Really? My daughter wishes she (be) ________ taller and that her hair (be) ________ blond and curly.
12. A: I wish most world leaders \( \textit{meet} \) \__________ in the near future and reach some agreement on environmental issues. I’m worried the earth is running out of time.

B: I wish I \( \textit{disagree} \) \__________ with you and \( \textit{prove} \) \__________ \__________ your fears groundless, but I’m afraid you might be right.

13. A: I can’t go to the game with you this afternoon.

B: Really? That’s too bad. But I wish you \( \textit{tell} \) \__________ me sooner so that I could have found someone else to go with.

14. A: How long have you been sick?

B: For over a week.

A: I wish you \( \textit{go} \) \__________ to see a doctor today. You should find out what’s wrong with you.

B: Maybe I’ll go tomorrow.

\* PRACTICE 15. Conditionals. (Charts 20-1 → 20-11)

\* Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

TOM: What’s wrong, Bob? You look awful! You look as if you \( 1. \textit{run} \) \__________ over by a truck!

BOB: Well, you \( 2. \textit{look} \) \__________ this bad today, too, if you \( 3. \textit{have} \) \__________ a day like mine yesterday. My car slid into a tree because the roads were icy.

TOM: Oh? I was driving on the icy roads yesterday, and I didn’t slide into a tree. What happened?

BOB: Well, I suppose if I \( 4. \textit{drive}, \not \textit{not} \) \__________ so fast, I \( 5. \textit{slide}, \not \textit{not} \) \__________ into the tree.

TOM: Icy roads and speed don’t mix. If drivers \( 6. \textit{step} \) \__________ on the gas on ice, they’re likely to spin their car in a circle.

BOB: I know! And not only is my car a mess now, but I didn’t have my driver’s license with me, so now I’ll have to pay an extra fine when I go to court next month.

TOM: Why were you driving without your license?

BOB: Well, I lost my wallet a few days ago. It slipped out of my pocket while I was riding the bus to work.

TOM: What a tale of woe! If you \( 7. \textit{take} \not \textit{not} \) \__________ that bus, you \( 8. \textit{lose}, \not \textit{not} \) \__________ \__________ your wallet. If you \( 9. \textit{lose}, \not \textit{not} \) \__________ \__________ your wallet, you \( 10. \textit{have} \) \__________ your driver’s license with you when
you hit a tree. If you (11. have) __________________ your license with you, you (12. have to pay, not) __________________ a big fine when you go to court next week. And of course, if you (13. drive, not) __________________ too fast, you (14. run into, not) __________________ a tree, and you (15. be, not) __________________ in this mess now. If I (16. be) __________________ you, I (17. take) __________________ it easy for a while and just (18. stay) __________________ home where you’re safe and sound.

BOB: Enough about me! How about you?

TOM: Well, things are really looking up for me. I’m planning to take off for Florida as soon as I finish my finals. I’m sick of all this cold, rainy weather we’ve been having. I (19. stay) __________________ here for vacation if the weather (20. be, not) __________________ so bad. But I need some sun!

BOB: I wish I (21. go) __________________ with you. How are you planning on getting there?

TOM: If I have enough money, I (22. fly) __________________. Otherwise, I (23. take) __________________ the bus. I wish I (24. drive) __________________ my own car there because it (25. be) __________________ nice to have it to drive around in once I get there, but it’s such a long trip. I’ve been looking for a friend to go with me and share the driving.

BOB: Hey, I have a super idea! Why don’t I go with you? I can share the driving. I’m a great driver!

TOM: Didn’t you just get through telling me that you’d wrapped your car around a tree?
**PRACTICE 16. TEST A: Conditional sentences. (Chapter 20)**

*Directions: Choose the correct answer.*

*Example:* If I _____ you, I would get some rest before the game tomorrow.
A. am  B. could be  C. were  D. had been

1. When I stopped talking, Sam finished my sentence for me as though he _____ my mind.
A. would read  B. had read  C. reads  D. can read

2. If you _____, I would have brought my friends over to your house this evening to watch TV, but I didn’t want to bother you.
A. had studied  C. hadn’t been studying
B. studied  D. didn’t study

3. I wish I _____ you some money for your rent, but I’m broke myself.
A. can lend  B. would lend  C. could lend  D. will lend

4. If someone _____ into the store, smile and say, “May I help you?”
A. comes  B. came  C. would come  D. could come

5. “Are we lost?”
“*I think so. I wish we _____ a map with us today.*”
A. were bringing  B. brought  C. had brought  D. would bring

6. “Here’s my phone number.”
“Thanks. I’ll give you a call if I _____ some help tomorrow.”
A. will need  B. need  C. would need  D. needed

7. If I weren’t working for an accounting firm, I _____ in a bank.
A. work  B. will work  C. have worked  D. would be working

8. Ed invested a lot of money with a dishonest advisor, and lost nearly all of it. Now he is having serious financial problems. He _____ in this position if he’d listened to some of his friends.
A. will be  B. wouldn’t be  C. will be  D. hadn’t been

9. The world _____ a better place if we had known a hundred years ago what we know today about the earth’s environment.
A. will be  C. should be  D. might be

10. The medicine made me feel dizzy. I felt as though the room _____ around and around.
A. were spinning  B. spins  C. will spin  D. would be spinning

11. “I’m really sorry about what happened during the meeting. I felt I had no choice.”
“It’s okay. I’m sure you wouldn’t have done it if you _____.”
A. should have  B. had to  C. hadn’t had to  D. have to

12. _____ you, I’d think twice about that decision. It could be a bad move.
A. If I had been  B. Were I  C. Should I be  D. If I am

13. “Was Pam seriously injured in the automobile accident?”
“She broke her arm. It _____ much worse if she hadn’t been wearing her seat belt.”
A. will be  B. would have been  C. was  D. were
14. If my candidate had won the election, I ______ happy now.
   A. am      B. would be   C. was      D. can be

15. I wish Janet ______ to the meeting this afternoon.
   A. came     B. will come   C. can come   D. could come

16. I ______ you to the woman I was speaking with, but I couldn't think of her name.
   A. will introduce  C. would have introduced
   B. would introduce D. couldn't have introduced

17. "What ______ today if you hadn't come here this weekend?"
   "I guess I'd be putting in extra hours at my office."
   A. are you doing     C. will you be doing
   B. can you do        D. would you be doing

18. Page 12 of the manual that came with the appliance says, "______ any problem with the
    merchandise, contact your local dealer."
   A. Do you have       C. Had you
   B. Should you have    D. You have

19. Marge walked away from the discussion. Otherwise, she ______ something she would
    regret later.
   A. will say         B. said               C. might say    D. might have said

20. I would never have encouraged you to go into this field ______ it would be so stressful for you.
    I'm sorry it's been so difficult for you.
   A. had I known      C. should I know
   B. and I have known D. but I knew
PRACTICE 17. TEST B: Conditional sentences. (Chapter 20)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

Example: If I ______ you, I would get some rest before the game tomorrow.
A. am  B. could be  C. were  D. had been

1. Please keep your voice down in this section of the library. If you ______ to talk loudly, I will have to ask you to leave.
A. continued  B. could continue  C. will continue  D. continue

2. Gloria never seems to get tired. I sure wish I ______ her energy.
A. would have  B. have  C. have had  D. had

3. “Why didn’t Bill get the promotion he was expecting?”
   “He may not be qualified. If he were, he ______ that promotion last year.”
A. would have been given  C. would be given
B. was given  D. had been given

4. If I could find Rob’s phone number, I ______ him about the change in plans. Maybe somebody else will call him.
A. called  B. had called  C. could call  D. will call

5. “How do you like your new apartment?”
   “The apartment itself is great, but I wish I ______ used to the constant noise from the street below.”
A. got  B. could get  C. had gotten  D. am

6. I was very engrossed in that presentation on Australia. The videotapes were so realistic that it was as though we ______ there, driving through the outback.
A. were  B. have been  C. are  D. will be

7. If I ______ following that other car too closely, I would have been able to stop in time instead of running into it.
A. wasn’t  B. would have been  C. was  D. hadn’t been

8. “Why aren’t you going mountain climbing with the rest of us next weekend?”
   “To be honest with you, I’m lazy. If I weren’t, I ______ with you.”
A. would have gone  C. go
B. would go  D. will go

9. “Will you see Tom at lunch today? I’d like you to give him a message for me.”
   “I’m not going to lunch, but if I ______ him later, I’ll give him your message.”
A. should see  B. will see  C. would see  D. could see

10. I’m really sleepy today. I wish I ______ Bob to the airport late last night.
A. didn’t have to take  C. hadn’t had to take
B. weren’t taking  D. didn’t take

11. Hurry! We’ve got to leave the house immediately. Otherwise, ______ the opening ceremony.
A. we’d miss  C. we miss
B. we’d have missed  D. we’re going to miss
PRACTICE 1. Subjects, verbs, and objects. (Chart A-1)

Directions: Underline and identify the subject (s), verb (v), and object of the verb (o) in each sentence.

1. Airplanes have wings.
2. The teacher explained the problem.
3. Children enjoy games.
5. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat other animals.
6. According to an experienced waitress, you can carry full cups of coffee without spilling them just by never looking at them.

PRACTICE 2. Transitive vs. intransitive verbs. (Chart A-1)

Directions: Underline and identify the verb in each sentence. Write vr if it is transitive. Write vi if it is intransitive.

vi
1. Alice arrived at six o'clock.

vt
2. We drank some tea.
3. I agree with you.
4. I waited for Sam at the airport for two hours.
5. They're staying at a resort hotel in San Antonio, Texas.
6. Chanchai is studying English.
7. The wind is blowing hard today.
8. I walked to the theater, but Janice rode her bicycle.
10. Rivers flow toward the sea.
PRACTICE 3. Identifying prepositions. (Chart A-2)

Directions: Underline the prepositions.

1. Jim came to class without his books.
2. We stayed at home during the storm.
3. Sonya walked across the bridge over the Cedar River.
4. When Alex walked through the door, his little sister ran toward him and put her arms around his neck.
5. The two of us need to talk to Tom, too.
6. Animals live in all parts of the world. Animals walk or crawl on land, fly in the air, and swim in the water.
7. Scientists divide living things into two main groups: the animal kingdom and the plant kingdom.
8. Asia extends from the Pacific Ocean in the east to Africa and Europe in the west.

PRACTICE 4. Sentence elements. (Charts A-1 and A-2)

Directions: Underline and identify the subject (S), verb (V) object (O), and prepositional phrases (PP) in the following sentences.

S V O PP
1. Jack put the letter in the mailbox.
2. The children walked to school.
3. Mary did her homework at the library.
4. Chinese printers created the first paper money in the world.
5. Dark clouds appeared on the horizon.
6. Mary filled the shelves of the cabinet with boxes of old books.

PRACTICE 5. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 and A-4)

Directions: Underline and identify the adjectives (ADJ) and adverbs (ADV) in these sentences.

ADJ ADV
1. Jack opened the heavy door slowly.
2. Chinese jewelers carved beautiful ornaments from jade.
3. The old man carves wooden figures skillfully.
4. A busy executive usually has short conversations on the telephone.
5. The young woman had a very good time at the picnic yesterday.
PRACTICE 6. Adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 and A-4)
Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct adjective or adverb.

1. quick, quickly We ate ______ quickly ______ and ran to the theater.
2. quick, quickly We had a ______ quick ______ dinner and ran to the theater.
3. polite, politely I've always found Fred to be a ______ polite ______ person.
4. polite, politely He responded to my question ______ politely ______.
5. regular, regularly Mr. Thomas comes to the store ______ regularly ______ for cheese and bread.
6. regular, regularly He is a ______ regular ______ customer.
7. usual, usually The teacher arrived at the ______ usual ______ time.
8. usual, usually She ______ usually ______ comes to class five minutes before it begins.
9. good, well Jennifer Cooper paints ______ well ______.
10. good, well She is a ______ good ______ artist.
11. gentle, gently A ______ gently ______ breeze touched my face.
12. gentle, gently A breeze ______ gently ______ touched my face.
13. annual, annually Many birds migrate ______ annually ______ to a warm climate for the winter.
14. annual, annually Many birds fly long distances in their ______ annual ______ migration to a warm climate for the winter.
15. bad, badly The audience booed the actors' ______ badly ______ performance.
16. bad, badly The audience booed and whistled because the actors performed ______ badly ______ throughout the show.

PRACTICE 7. Midsentence adverbs. (Chart A-4)
Directions: Put the adverb in parentheses in its usual midsentence position.

always

1. (always) Sue ______ takes a walk in the morning.
2. (always) Tim is a hard worker.
3. (always) Beth has worked hard.
4. (always) Jack works hard.
5. (always) Do you work hard?
6. (usually) Taxis are available at the airport.
7. (rarely) Youssef takes a taxi to his office.
8. (often) I have thought about quitting my job and sailing to Alaska.
9. (probably) Yuko needs some help.
10. (ever) Have you attended the show at the planetarium?
11. (seldom) Al goes out to eat at a restaurant.
12. (hardly ever) The students are late.
13. (usually) Do you finish your homework before dinner?
14. (generally) In India, the monsoon season begins in April.
15. (usually) During the monsoon season, Mr. Singh's hometown receives around 610 centimeters (240 inches) of rain, which is an unusually large amount.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Linking verbs. (Charts A-1 - A-6)

Directions: Some of the italicized words in the following are used as linking verbs. Identify which ones are linking verbs by underlining them. Also underline the adjective that follows the linking verb.

1. Olga looked at the fruit. (no underline)
2. It looked fresh.
3. Dan noticed a scratch on the door of his car.
4. Morris tasted the candy.
5. It tasted good.
6. The crowd grew quiet as the official began her speech.
7. Felix grows tomatoes in his garden.
8. Sally grew up in Florida.
9. I can smell the chicken in the oven.
10. It smells delicious.
11. Barbara got a package in the mail.
12. Al got sleepy after dinner.
13. During the storm, the sea became rough.
14. Nicole became a doctor after many years of study.
15. Diana sounded her horn to warn the driver of the other car.
16. Helen sounded happy when I talked to her.
17. The weather turns hot in July.
18. When Bob entered the room, I turned around to look at him.
20. It appears certain that Mary Hanson will win the election.
21. Dick's story seems strange. Do you believe it?

◆ PRACTICE 9. Linking verbs; adjectives and adverbs. (Charts A-3 → A-6)
Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct adjective or adverb.

1. clean, cleanly The floor looks ________.
2. slow, slowly The bear climbed ________ up the tree.
3. safe, safely The plane landed ___________ on the runway.
4. anxious, anxiously When the wind started to blow, I grew ___________.
5. complete, completely This list of names appears ___________. No more names need to be added.
6. wild, wildly The crowd yelled ___________ when we scored a goal.
7. honest, honestly The merchant looked ___________, but she wasn't. I discovered when I got home that she had cheated me.
8. thoughtful, thoughtfully Jane looked at her book ___________ before she answered the teacher's question.
9. good, well Most of the students did ___________ on their tests.
10. fair, fairly The contract offer sounded ___________ to me, so I accepted the job.
11. terrible, terribly Jim felt ___________ about forgetting his son's birthday.
12. good, well A rose smells ___________.
13. light, lightly As dawn approached, the sky became ___________.
14. confident, confidently Beth spoke ___________ when she delivered her speech.
15. famous, famously The actor became ___________ throughout much of the world.
16. fine, finely I don't think this milk is spoiled. It tastes ___________ to me.
**PRACTICE 10. Review: basic question forms. (Chart B-1)**

*Directions:* From the underlined sentences, make questions for the given answers. Fill in the blank spaces with the appropriate words. If no word is needed, write Ø.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Question word</th>
<th>Auxiliary verb</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main verb</th>
<th>Rest of question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a.</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b.</td>
<td>Where</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>There.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1c.</td>
<td>Who</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Bob.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a.</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b.</td>
<td>Where</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>There.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2c.</td>
<td>Who</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Don.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3a.</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3b.</td>
<td>Where</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>There.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3c.</td>
<td>Who</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Sue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4a.</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4b.</td>
<td>Where</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>There.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5a.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5b.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>There.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>there ?</td>
<td>Jack.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6a.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6b.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>There.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 11. Yes/no and information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)

Directions: Create questions to fit the dialogues. There are two speakers in each dialogue: A and B. Notice in the examples that in each dialogue there is a short answer and then in parentheses a long answer. Your questions should produce those answers.

1. A: ____________
   B: Tomorrow. (I'm going to the zoo tomorrow.)

2. A: ____________
   B: Yes. (I'm going downtown later today.)

3. A: ____________
   B: Yes. (I live in an apartment.)

4. A: ____________
   B: In a condominium. (Sue lives in a condominium.)

5. A: ____________
   B: Jack. (Jack lives in that house.)

6. A: ____________
   B: Yes. (I can speak French.)

7. A: ____________
   B: Don. (Don can speak Arabic.)

8. A: ____________
   B: Two weeks ago. (Olga arrived two weeks ago.)

9. A: ____________
   B: Ali. (Ali arrived late.)

10. A: ____________
    B: The window. (Ann is opening the window.)

11. A: ____________
    B: Opening the window. (Ann is opening the window.)

12. A: ____________
    B: Her book. (Mary opened her book.)

13. A: ____________
    B: Tom. (Tom opened the door.)

14. A: ____________
    B: Yes. (The mail has arrived.)

15. A: ____________
    B: Yes. (I have a bicycle.)

16. A: ____________
    B: A pen. (Alex has a pen in his hand.)

Supplementary Grammar Units
17. A: ____________________________
    B: Yes. (I like ice cream.)

18. A: ____________________________
    B: Yes. (I would like an ice cream cone.)

19. A: ____________________________
    B: A candy bar. (Joe would like a candy bar.)

20. A: ____________________________
    B: Ann. (Ann would like a soft drink.)

◊ PRACTICE 12. Yes/no and information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)
Directions: Create questions to fit the dialogues. There are two speakers in each dialogue: A and B. Notice in the examples that in each dialogue there is a short answer and then in parentheses a long answer. Your questions should produce those answers.

1. A: ____________________________
    B: Since last September. (Pierre has been living here since last September.)

2. A: I need some information. Maybe you can help me. Which (city) is farther north, London or Paris?
    B: London. (London is farther north than Paris.)

3. A: Is that your umbrella?
    B: No.
    A: ____________________________
    B: Jane's. (It's Jane's.)

4. A: I haven't seen you for weeks. How are you?
    B: Going to school and studying hard. (I've been going to school and studying hard.)

5. A: Did you call Sally?
    B: Yes, but she wasn't in.
    A: ____________________________
    B: Her roommate. (Her roommate answered the phone.)

6. A: Do the villagers have tractors in the rural areas?
    B: No. They don't have any modern farm machinery.
    A: ____________________________
    B: With oxen or water buffaloes. (They plow their fields with oxen or water buffaloes.)

7. A: I really like having my own computer.
    B: ____________________________
    A: Since last December. (I've had it since last December.)
8. A:  
B: A myna. It's common in warm climates. *(That kind of bird is a myna.)*

9. A:  
B: I missed my bus. *(I was late for work this morning because I missed my bus.)*

10. A: Last summer we painted the outside of our house.  
B: That must have been a big job.  
A: About four days. *(It took about four days.)*

11. A: Jack was late last night, wasn't he?  
B: At 11:30. *(He finally got home at 11:30.)*

12. A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  
B: Thanks. That sounds good.  
A:  
B: With cream and sugar. *(I take it with cream and sugar.)*

13. A:  
B: Around 250 million. *(The population of the United States is around 250 million.)*

14. A:  
B: The red one. *(Of those two coats, I like the red one better than the black one.)*

15. A: We spent a relaxing weekend in a small village in the mountains.  
B:  
A: By bus. *(We got there by bus.)*

16. A: I'm sending a letter to the consulate about the problems I'm having with my visa.  
B: Mr. Ho. *(You should address it to Mr. Ho.)*

17. A:  
B: Over 800 miles. *(It's over 800 miles from here to Los Angeles.)*

18. A:  
B: Ann, Susan, and Alice. *(Ann, Susan, and Alice are going to be at the meeting tonight.)*

19. A: In my country, we eat rice every day.  
B: About once a week. *(People in my country have rice about once a week.)*

20. A:  
B: Silly looking hat?! I think it's a great hat! I got it at the shopping mall. *(I got that silly looking hat at the shopping mall.)*

21. A:  
B: To say you're sorry. *(Apologize means "to say you're sorry."
22. A: ____________________________ 
   B: Twelve. *(There are twelve edges on a cube.)*
   A: ____________________________ 
   B: Eight. *(There are eight edges on a pyramid.)*

23. A: I've never met Bob. ____________________________ 
   B: He has dark hair, a mustache, wears glasses, and is about average height.

24. A: You know Ann Green, don't you? ____________________________ 
   B: She's energetic, bright, very friendly. A really nice person.

◇ PRACTICE 13. Information questions. *(Charts B-1 and B-2)*

*Directions:* Create questions from these sentences. The italicized words in parentheses should be the answers to your questions.

1. I take my coffee *(black).* → How do you take your coffee?

2. I have *(an English-Spanish)* dictionary.

3. He *(runs a grocery store)* for a living.

4. Margaret was talking to *(her uncle).*

5. *(Only ten)* people showed up for the meeting.

6. *(Due to heavy fog)*, none of the planes could take off.

7. She was thinking about *(her experiences as a rural doctor).*

8. I was driving *(sixty-five miles per hour)* when the policeman stopped me.

9. I like *(hot and spicy Mexican)* food best.

10. *(The)* apartment *(at the end of the hall on the second floor)* is mine.

11. Oscar is *(friendly, generous, and kindhearted).*

12. Oscar is *(tall and thin and has short black hair).*

13. *(Ann's)* dictionary fell to the floor.

14. Abby isn't here *(because she has a doctor's appointment).*

15. All of the students in the class will be informed of their final grades *(on Friday).*

16. I feel *(awful).*

17. Of those three books, I preferred *(the one by Tolstoy).*

18. I like *(rock)* music.

19. The plane is expected to be *(an hour)* late.

20. The driver of the stalled car lit a flare *(in order to warn oncoming cars).*

21. I want *(the felt-tip)* pen, *(not the ballpoint).*

22. The weather is *(hot and humid)* in July.
23. I like my steak (medium rare).
24. I did (very well) on the test.
25. There are (31,536,000) seconds in a year.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Information questions. (Charts B-1 and B-2)
Directions: Create questions from the following sentences. The words in parentheses should be the answers to your questions.

1. I need (five dollars). → How much money do you need?
2. Roberto was born (in Panama).
3. I go out to eat (at least once a week).
4. I’m waiting for (Maria).
5. (My sister) answered the phone.
6. I called (Benjamin).
7. (Benjamin) called.
8. She bought (twelve gallons of) gas.
10. An abyss is (a bottomless hole).
11. He went (this) way, (not that way).
12. These are (Jim’s) books and papers.
13. They have (four) children.
14. He has been here (for two hours).
15. It is (two hundred miles) to New Orleans.
16. The doctor can see you (at three on Friday).
17. Her roommate is (Jane Peters).
18. Her roommates are (Jane Peters and Sue Lee).
19. My parents have been living there (for three years).
20. This is (Alice’s) book.
21. (Fred and Jack) are coming over for dinner.
22. Ann’s dress is (blue).
23. Anne’s eyes are (brown).
24. (Bob) can’t go on the picnic.
25. Bob can’t go (because he is sick).
26. I didn’t answer the phone (because I didn’t hear it ring).
27. I like (classical) music.
28. I don’t understand (the chart on page 50).
29. Janet is (studying) right now.
30. You spell “sitting” (with two “t’s” S-I-T-T-I-N-G).
31. Tom (is about medium height and has red hair and freckles).
32. Tom is (very serious and hardworking).
33. Ron (works as a civil engineer for the railroad company).
34. Mexico is (eight hundred miles) from here.
35. I take my coffee (black with sugar).
36. Of Stockholm and Moscow, (Stockholm) is farther north.
37. (Fine.) I’m getting along (just fine).

PRACTICE 15. Negative questions. (Chart B-4)

Directions: In these dialogues, make negative questions from the words in parentheses, and determine the expected response.

1. A: Your infected finger looks terrible. (you, see, not) __________________ a doctor yet?
   B: No. But I’m going to. I don’t want the infection to get any worse.

2. A: You look pale. What’s the matter? (you, feel) __________________ well?
   B: __________. I think I might be coming down with something.

3. A: Did you see Mark at the meeting?
   B: No, I didn’t.
   A: Really? (he, be, not) __________________ there?
   B: __________.
   A: That’s funny. I’ve never known him to miss a meeting before.

4. A: Why didn’t you come to the meeting yesterday afternoon?
   B: What meeting? I didn’t know there was a meeting.
   A: (Mary, tell, not) __________________ you about it?
   B: __________. No one said a word to me about it.

5. A: I have a package for Janet. (Janet and you, work, not) __________________
   __________________ in the same building?
   B: __________. I’d be happy to take the package to her tomorrow when I go to work.

6. A: Frank didn’t report all of his income on his tax forms.
   B: (that, be, not) __________________ against the law?
   A: __________. And that’s why he’s in a lot of legal trouble. He might even go to jail.

7. A: Did you give Linda my message when you went to class this morning?
   B: No. I didn’t see her.
   A: Oh? (she, be) __________________ in class?
   B: __________. She didn’t come today.
8. A: Do you see that woman over there, the one in the blue dress? (she, be) ____________
       Mrs. Robbins?
B: ______.
A: I thought so. I wonder what she is doing here.

◊ PRACTICE 16. Tag questions. (Chart B-5)

Directions: Add tag questions to the following.
1. You live in an apartment, ______ don't you? 
2. You've never been in Italy, ______ have you? 
3. Sally turned in her report, ______ ___________?
4. There are more countries north of the equator than south of it, ______ ___________?
5. You've never met Jack Freeman, ______ ___________?
6. You have a ticket to the game, ______ ___________?
7. You'll be there, ______ ___________?
8. Tom knows Alice Reed, ______ ___________?
9. We should call Rita, ______ ___________?
10. Ostriches can't swim, ______ ___________?
11. These books aren't yours, ______ ___________?
12. That's Bob's, ______ ___________?
13. No one died in the accident, ______ ___________?
14. I'm right, ______ ___________?
15. This grammar is easy, ______ ___________?

◊ PRACTICE 17. Contractions. (Chart C)

Directions: Write the contraction of the pronoun and verb if appropriate. Write Ø if the pronoun and verb cannot be contracted.
1. He is (He's) in my class.
2. He was (Ø) in my class.
3. He has (He's) been here since July.
4. He has (Ø) a Volvo.*

* NOTE: has, have and had are NOT contracted when they are used as main verbs. They are contracted only when they are used as helping verbs.
5. She had (__________) been there for a long time before we arrived.
6. She had (__________) a bad cold.
7. She would (__________) like to go to the zoo.
8. I did (__________) well on the test.
9. We will (__________) be there early.
10. They are (__________) in their seats over there.*
11. It is (__________) going to be hot tomorrow.
12. It has (__________) been a long time since I've seen him.
13. A bear is a large animal. It has (__________) four legs and brown hair.
14. We were (__________) on time.
15. We are (__________) always on time.
16. She has (__________) a good job.
17. She has (__________) been working there for a long time.
18. She had (__________) opened the window before class began.
19. She would (__________) have helped us if we had (__________) asked her.
20. He could (__________) have helped us if he had (__________) been there there.

◇ PRACTICE 18. Using not and no. (Chart D-1)
Directions: Change each sentence into the negative in two ways: use not ... any in one sentence and no in the other.

1. I have some problems. → I don't have any problems. I have no problems.
2. There was some food on the shelf.
3. I received some letters from home.
4. I need some help.
5. We have some time to waste.
6. You should have given the beggar some money.
7. I trust someone. → I don't trust anyone. I trust no one.**
8. I saw someone.
9. There was someone in his room.
10. She can find somebody who knows about it.

*They're, their, and there all have the same pronunciation.
**Also spelled with a hyphen in British English: no-one
PRACTICE 19. Avoiding double negatives. (Chart D-2)
Directions: Correct the errors in these sentences, all of which contain double negatives.

1. We don’t have no time to waste.
   → We have no time to waste. OR: We don’t have any time to waste.

2. I didn’t have no problems.

3. I can’t do nothing about it.

4. You can’t hardly ever understand her when she speaks.

5. I don’t know neither Ann nor her husband.

6. Don’t never drink water from that river without boiling it first.

7. Because I had to sit in the back row of the auditorium, I couldn’t barely hear the speaker.

PRACTICE 20. Beginning a sentence with a negative word. (Chart D-3)
Directions: Change each sentence so that it begins with a negative word.

1. I had hardly stepped out of bed when the phone rang.
   → Hardly had I stepped out of bed when the phone rang.

2. I will never say that again.

3. I have scarcely ever enjoyed myself more than I did yesterday.

4. She rarely makes a mistake.

5. I will never trust him again because he lied to me.

6. It is hardly ever possible to get an appointment to see him.

7. I seldom skip breakfast.

8. I have never known a more generous person than Samantha.

PRACTICE 21. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)
Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. There is no excuse for lying to your friends.

2. The children are excited about their upcoming trip to the zoo.

3. I wasn’t aware of any problems with the new design.

4. Are you satisfied with your accommodations?

5. Cubs are protected from danger by the mother bear.

6. Registration for the conference is limited to 300 participants.

7. I’m very fond of my nieces and nephews.

8. Do you regularly contribute to worthwhile causes?

9. We thanked the contributors for their donations.
10. The famous actor gladly answers questions that are relevant ____________ her work.

11. She does not respond ____________ questions about her personal life.

12. I am envious ____________ no one.

13. Did Sara apologize ____________ being late?

14. Lemonade is composed ____________ lemon juice, water, and sugar.

15. Our apartment is furnished ____________ kitchen appliances, but not a washer and dryer.

◇ PRACTICE 22. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. It's important to believe ____________ yourself.

2. Would you be willing to fight ____________ your ideals?

3. The spy was involved ____________ a dangerous conspiracy.

4. For many people it's difficult to distinguish a dolphin ____________ a porpoise.

5. Gandhi was committed ____________ nonviolence.

6. He will be remembered throughout the ages ____________ his commitment to nonviolence.

7. If you're done ____________ your dictionary, could I borrow it for a minute?

8. Usually people will be polite ____________ you if you are polite ____________ them.

9. Oliver is grateful ____________ his parents ____________ giving him the opportunity for a good education.

10. Many people are very concerned ____________ global warming.

11. It took Natasha almost a year to recover ____________ her automobile accident.

12. The driver of the other car was accused ____________ reckless driving.

13. I do not agree ____________ your political views.


15. My mother introduced me ____________ classical music when I was quite young.

◇ PRACTICE 23. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Susan took advantage ____________ having a roommate from Chile by practicing speaking Spanish with her as often as she could.

2. The president is innocent ____________ the charges leveled against him by his political opponents.
3. Under what circumstances, if any, would you be capable ____________ killing another human being?

4. There is no substitute ____________ good home cooking.

5. Showing that he was faithful ____________ his campaign promises, the governor approved the building of ten new schools.

6. After studying the evidence, I am convinced ____________ his innocence.

7. So you subscribe ____________ the theory that the universe began as a Big Bang?

8. I'd like to get a high-paying job, but I'm not qualified ____________ much of anything. Maybe I'd better go back to school.

9. If you need me, I'll be there. You can count ____________ me.

10. The brave firefighter rescued two small children ____________ a burning building.

11. A locked gate prevented us ____________ entering the park.

12. The bride wore white, and the bridesmaids were dressed ____________ yellow silk.

13. Ms. Fields' office is cluttered ____________ stacks and stacks of papers.

14. New computers are equipped ____________ all sorts of things I don't understand and never use.

15. Professor Armsley was invited to participate ____________ a panel discussion on the role of business in protecting the environment.

◊ **PRACTICE 24. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Would you approve ____________ a law allowing 13-year-olds to drive?

2. I myself would be opposed ____________ such a law.

3. Olga's heart was filled ____________ happiness on her wedding day.

4. Please don't be upset ____________ me. I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.

5. Would you be interested ____________ joining a hiking club?

6. I know little about the ancient Greek philosophers. I'm not acquainted ____________ the works of Plato.

7. Anna, who works twelve-hour days, is dedicated ____________ her research into possible cures for cancer.

8. While we're all hoping ____________ better weather, we don't expect it.

9. The nightly news on TV exposes watchers ____________ acts of violence that leave them fearful and horrified.
10. Sam can’t keep any secrets ____________ his wife. Sometimes he even feels that she knows what he’s thinking.

11. My uncle stopped my cousin ____________ marrying the man she loves.

12. Larry started with one small store and now has twenty stores. He has succeeded ____________ business.

13. Are you complaining ____________ the neighbors’ children again? Maybe we should move to another apartment.

14. Are you related ____________ anyone famous?

15. Mr. Adams tried to hide his gambling losses ____________ his wife, but she found out.

◇ PRACTICE 25. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Would you vote ____________ a woman to lead your country?

2. Stop staring ____________ me! What are you doing? Is something wrong?

3. Mrs. Jefferson is known ____________ her sharp intellect.

4. I look forward ____________ meeting your parents.

5. The city of Kigali is located ____________ Ruwanda.

6. This sentence consists ____________ six words.

7. We are blessed ____________ three healthy, happy, rambunctious children.

8. If you can’t depend ____________ your family to help you in times of trouble, who can you rely ____________?

9. Don’t blame other people ____________ your own failures in life.

10. We have a date for tomorrow evening. You haven’t forgotten ____________ it, have you?

11. I think it’s important to become familiar ____________ cultures and customs different from our own.

12. We barely escaped ____________ the war-torn country with our lives.

13. Do you believe that children should never be allowed to argue ____________ adults ____________ anything?

14. Your doctor can provide you ____________ information about any health concerns you might have. Be sure to ask questions.

15. Some countries try to prohibit their citizens ____________ traveling abroad.
PRACTICE 26. Preposition combinations. (Chart E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. My boss demanded to know why I was absent ______ work last Friday.
2. My neighbor takes care ______ my two children while I'm at work.
3. At first it was hard to leave my children with a babysitter, but now I'm used ______ it.
4. As a last resort, I covered my face ______ a scarf to keep the flies away.
5. I applied ______ several companies ______ positions in their accounting department.
6. As soon as I was finished ______ my dessert, we paid the bill and left the restaurant.
7. Please forgive me ______ not getting back to you sooner.
8. Who is responsible ______ ordering supplies in the mail room?
9. We arrived ______ Paris around noon, but we didn't arrive ______ our friends' apartment until well after three.
10. I'm not accustomed ______ drinking coffee. I'm a tea drinker.
11. Siblings are often jealous ______ each other, but these jealousies usually decrease as the children mature.
12. I'm exhausted ______ all the hard work of the past week.
13. Would you object ______ watching a different station for the news tonight?
14. Please be patient ______ me. I'm trying very hard to understand what you're saying, but your meaning isn't clear to me yet.
15. It is good to be pleased ______ ourselves and proud ______ ourselves when we have done a good job.
PHRASAL VERBS (TWO-WORD AND THREE-WORD VERBS)

The term *phrasal verb* refers to a verb and particle which together have a special meaning. For example, *put + off* means “postpone.” Sometimes a phrasal verb consists of three parts. For example, *put + up + with* means “tolerate.” Phrasal verbs are also called *two-word verbs* or *three-word verbs.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS</th>
<th>NONSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) <em>I handed my paper in</em> yesterday.</td>
<td>(d) <em>I ran into an old friend</em> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) <em>I handed in my paper</em> yesterday.</td>
<td>(e) <em>I ran into her</em> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) <em>I handed it in</em> yesterday.</td>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I ran an old friend into,)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I handed in it yesterday.)</em></td>
<td><em>(INCORRECT: I ran her into yesterday.)</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A phrasal verb may be either *separable* or *nonseparable.* With a separable phrasal verb, a noun may come either between the verb and the preposition or after the preposition, as in (a) and (b). A pronoun comes between the verb and the preposition if the phrasal verb is separable, as in (c).

With a nonseparable phrasal verb, a noun or pronoun must follow the preposition, as in (d) and (e).

Phrasal verbs are especially common in informal English. Following is a list of common phrasal verbs and their usual meanings. This list contains only those phrasal verbs used in the exercises in the text. The phrasal verbs marked with an asterisk (*) are nonseparable.

- **A**
  - ask out: ask someone to go on a date

- **B**
  - bring about, bring on: cause
  - bring up: (1) rear children; (2) mention or introduce a topic

- **C**
  - call back: return a telephone call
  - call in: ask to come to an official place for a specific purpose
  - call off: cancel
  - call on: (1) ask to speak in class; (2) visit
  - call up: call on the telephone
  - catch up (with): reach the same position or level
  - check in, check into: register at a hotel
  - check into: investigate
  - check out: (1) take a book from the library; (2) investigate
  - check out (of): leave a hotel
  - cheer up: make (someone) feel happier
  - clean up: make clean and orderly
  - come across: meet/find by chance
  - cross out: draw a line through
  - cut out: stop an annoying activity
D  
do over ..........................  do again  
*drop by, drop in (on) ................ visit informally  
drop off ..........................  leave something/someone at a place  
*drop out of ........................ stop going to school, to a class, to a club, etc.

F  
figure out ........................ find the answer by reasoning  
fill out ..........................  write the answers to a questionnaire or complete an official form  
find out ..........................  discover information

G  
*get along with ........................ exist satisfactorily  
get back (from) ......................... (1) return from a place; (2) receive again  
*get in, get into ........................ (1) enter a car; (2) arrive  
*get off ..........................  leave an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle  
*get on ..........................  enter an airplane, a bus, a train, a subway, a bicycle  
*get out of ........................ (1) leave a car; (2) avoid work or an unpleasant activity  
*get over ..........................  recover from an illness  
*get through with ........................ finish  
*get up (from) ........................ arise from a bed, a chair  
give back ..........................  return an item to someone  
give up ..........................  stop trying  
*go over ..........................  review or check carefully  
*grow up ..........................  become an adult

H  
hand in ..........................  submit an assignment  
hang up .......................... (1) conclude a telephone conversation; (2) put clothes on a hanger or a hook  
have on ..........................  wear

K  
keep out of ........................ not enter  
*keep up with ........................ stay at the same position or level  
kick out of ........................ force (someone) to leave

L  
*look after ........................ take care of  
*look into ........................ investigate  
*look out for ........................ be careful  
look over .......................... review or check carefully  
look up ..........................  look for information in a reference book

M  
make up .......................... (1) invent; (2) do past due work

N  
name after, name for ........................ give a baby the name of someone else

P  
*pass away, *pass on ........................ die  
pass out .......................... distribute  
*pass out .......................... lose consciousness  
pick out of ........................ select  
pick up .......................... (1) go to get someone (e.g., in a car); (2) take in one's hand  
point out .......................... call attention to  
put away .......................... remove to a proper place  
put back .......................... return to original place  
put off .......................... postpone  
put on .......................... put clothes on one's body  
put out .......................... extinguish a cigarette, cigar, or fire  
*put up with ........................ tolerate

R  
*run into, *run across ........................ meet by chance  
*run out of ........................ finish a supply of something

S  
*show up ........................ appear, come  
shut off .......................... stop a machine, light, faucet
T  *take after                      resemble  
take off                      (1) remove clothing; (2) leave on a trip  
take out                      (1) take someone on a date; (2) remove  
take over                      take control  
take up                      begin a new activity or topic  
tear down                      demolish, reduce to nothing  
tear up                      tear into many little pieces  
think over                      consider carefully  
throw away, throw out              discard, get rid of  
throw up                      vomit, regurgitate food  
try on                      put on clothing to see if it fits  
turn down                      decrease volume or intensity  
turn in                      (1) submit an assignment; (2) go to bed  
turn off                      stop a machine, light, faucet  
turn on                      start a machine, light, faucet  
turn out                      extinguish a light  
turn up                      increase volume or intensity

◊ PRACTICE 1. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

1. A: Where did you grow ___________?
   B: In Seattle, Washington.

2. A: I’m trying to find yesterday’s newspaper. Have you seen it?
   B: I’m afraid I threw it ___________. I thought you had finished reading it.

3. A: Don’t forget to turn the lights ___________ before you go to bed.
   B: I won’t.

4. A: I have a car, so I can drive us to the festival.
   B: Good.
   A: What time should I pick you ___________?
   B: Any time after five would be fine.

5. A: We couldn’t see the show at the outdoor theater last night.
   B: Why not?
   A: It was called ___________ on account of rain.
   B: Did you get a raincheck?

   B: I think he misses his girlfriend. Let’s try to cheer him ___________.

7. A: I would like to check this book ___________. What should I do?
   B: Take the book to the circulation desk and give the librarian your student I.D.

8. A: What brought ___________ your decision to quit your present job?
   B: I was offered a better job.

9. A: How many people showed ___________ for the meeting yesterday?
   B: About twenty.
10. A: How was your vacation?
   B: I had a great time.
   A: When did you get ____________ home?
   B: A couple of days ago. I had planned to stay a little longer, but I ran ____________ ____________ money.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Phrasal verbs.
Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

1. A: When do we have to turn ____________ our assignments?
   B: They're due next Tuesday.

2. A: How does this tape recorder work?
   B: Push this button to turn it ____________, and push that button to shut it ____________.

3. A: May I borrow your dictionary?
   B: Sure. But please be sure to put it ____________ on the shelf when you're finished.

4. A: I'm going to be in your neighborhood tomorrow.
   B: Oh? If you have time, why don't you drop ____________ to see us?

5. A: Look ____________! A car is coming!

6. A: I got very irritated at one of my dinner guests last night.
   B: Why?
   A: There was an ashtray on the table, but she put her cigarette ____________ on one of my good plates!

7. A: I need to talk to Karen.
   B: Why don't you call her ____________? She's probably at home now.

   B: Don't try to correct the mistake. Just tear ____________ the check and throw it ____________.

9. A: Are you here to apply for a job?
   B: Yes.
   A: Here is an application form. Fill it ____________ and then give it ____________ to me when you are finished.

    B: Where?
    A: At the other end of the block, walking toward the administration building. If we run, we can catch ____________ with him.
11. A: Is your roommate here?
B: Yes. She decided to come to the party after all. Have you ever met her?
A: No, but I'd like to.
B: She's the one standing over there by the far window. She has a blue dress
___________. Come on. I'll introduce you.

12. A: Do you have a date for Saturday night?
B: Yes. Jim Brock asked me _____________. We're going bowling.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

1. A: I think we should increase the membership dues from one dollar to two.
B: That might solve some of our financial problems. Why don't you bring that
__________ at the next meeting?

2. A: Did you hand ____________ your composition?
B: No. I didn't like it, so I decided to do it ____________.

3. A: What time did you get ____________ this morning?
B: I slept late. I didn't drag myself out of bed until after nine.

4. A: What's the baby's name?
B: Helen. She was named ____________ her paternal grandmother.

5. A: I need to get more exercise.
B: Why don't you take ____________ tennis?

6. A: You can't go in there.
B: Why not?
A: Look at that sign. It says, "Keep ____________. No trespassing."

7. A: I can't reach Fred. There's a busy signal.
B: Then hang ____________ and try again later.

8. A: The radio is too loud. Would you mind if I turned it ____________ a little?
B: No.

9. A: I can't hear the radio. Could you turn it ____________ a little?
B: Sure.

10. A: What are you doing Saturday night, Bob?
B: I'm taking Virginia ____________ for dinner and a show.
PRACTICE 4. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

1. A: Omar, would you please pass these papers ____________ to the rest of the class?
   B: I'd be happy to.

2. A: When are we expected to be at the hotel?
   B: According to our reservation, we are supposed to check ____________ the hotel before 6 P.M. Monday and check ____________ before noon Tuesday.

3. A: How do you get ____________ with your roommate?
   B: Fine. He's a nice guy.

   B: Where should I drop you ____________?
   A: The next corner would be fine.

5. A: I'm going to be out of town for a couple of days. Would you mind looking ____________ my cat?
   B: Not at all. I'd be happy to. Just tell me what I'm supposed to do.

6. A: I think I'm going to turn ____________ now. Good night.
   B: 'Night. See you in the morning. Sleep well.

7. A: Don't you think it's hot in here?
   B: Not especially. If you're hot, why don't you take your sweater ____________?

8. A: How do you spell "occasionally"?
   B: I'm not sure. You'd better look it ____________ in your dictionary.

9. A: How much lettuce should we get?
   B: I think we could use two heads. Pick ____________ two that feel fresh and firm.

10. A: Why are you sniffling?
    B: I had a cold last week, and I can't seem to get ____________ it.

PRACTICE 5. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

1. A: Are you ready to leave?
   B: Almost. I'll be ready to go just as soon as I get ____________ putting the clean dishes away.

2. A: I'm going crazy! I've been trying to solve this math problem for the last hour, and I still can't get it.
   B: Why don't you give ____________ for a while? Take a break and then go back to it.
3. A: I hear you had a frightening experience yesterday. What happened?
   B: Ed suddenly got dizzy and then passed ______________. I tried to revive him, but he
   was out cold. Luckily there was a doctor in the building.

4. A: What happened when the pilot of the plane passed out during the flight?
   B: The co-pilot took ______________.

5. A: Cindy is only three. She likes to play with the older kids, but when they’re running and
   playing, she can’t keep ______________ with them.
   B: Does she mind?
   A: She doesn’t seem to.

6. A: I made a mistake in my composition. What should I do?
   B: Since it’s an in-class composition, just cross it ______________.

7. A: I need my dictionary, but I lent it to Jose.
   B: Why don’t you get it ______________ from him?

8. A: I wish the teacher wouldn’t call ______________ me in class.
   B: Why not?
   A: I get nervous.
   B: Why?
   A: I don’t know.

9. I took a plane from Atlanta to Miami. I got ______________ the plane in Atlanta. I got
   ______________ the plane in Miami.

10. It was a snowy winter day, but I still had to drive to work. First I got ______________ the
    car to start the engine. Then I got ______________ of the car to scrape the snow and ice
    from the windows.

11. Last year I took a train trip. I got ______________ the train in Chicago. I got ______________
    the train in Des Moines.

12. Phyllis takes the bus to work. She gets ______________ the bus at Lindbergh Boulevard and
    gets ______________ the bus about two blocks from her office on Tower Street.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Phrasal verbs.
   Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word and three-word verbs.

   1. A: Why don’t we try to call ______________ the O’Briens sometime this weekend?
      We haven’t seen them for a long time.
   B: Good idea. I’d like to see them again.
2. A: Did you go __________ your paper carefully before you handed it ____________?
   B: Yes. I looked it ____________ carefully.

3. A: Do you believe his story about being late because he had a flat tire?
   B: No. I think he made it ____________.

4. A: Could you pick ______________ a newspaper on your way home from work tonight?
   B: Sure.

5. A: Did you hear the bad news?
   B: About what?
   A: Gary's grandmother passed ____________. Gary went home to be with his family and
      attend the funeral.

6. A: I like your new shoes.
   B: Thanks. I had to try ______________ almost a dozen pairs before I decided to get these.

7. A: Have you decided to accept that new job?
   B: Not yet. I'm still thinking it ______________.

8. A: I'm tired. I wish I could get ______________ of going to the meeting tonight.
   B: Do you have to go?

9. A: Why hasn't Mary been in class for the last two weeks?
   B: She dropped ______________ ____________ school.

10. A: What time does your plane take ______________?
    B: 10:40.
    A: How long does the flight take?
    B: I think we get ______________ around 12:30.

11. A: Do you like living in the dorm?
    B: It's okay. I've learned to put ______________ with all the noise.

12. A: What brought ______________ your decision to quit your job?
    B: I couldn't get ______________ ____________ my boss.

◊ PRACTICE 7: Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for each of these two-word verbs.

1. A: Guess who I ran ____________ today as I was walking across campus.
   B: Who?
   A: Ann Keefe.
   B: You're kidding!

2. A: There will be a test on Chapters Eight and Nine next Friday.
   B: (Growl.) Couldn't you put it ____________ until Monday?
3. A: You’d better put _______ your coat before you leave. It’s chilly out.
   B: What’s the temperature?

4. A: I smell something burning in the kitchen. Can I call you _______ in a minute?
   B: Sure. I hope your dinner hasn’t burned.
   A: So do I! Bye.
   B: Good-bye.

5. A: I think that if I learn enough vocabulary I won’t have any trouble using English.
   B: That’s not necessarily so. I’d like to point _______ that language consists of much
   more than just vocabulary.

6. A: One billion seconds ago, World War II was being fought. One billion minutes ago, Jesus
   Christ was living. One billion hours ago, the human race had not yet discovered
   agriculture.
   B: How did you figure that _______?
   A: I didn’t. I came _______ that information while I was reading the newspaper.

7. A: Your children certainly love the outdoors.
   B: Yes, they do. We brought them _______ to appreciate nature.

8. A: What forms do I have to fill out to change my tourist visa to a student visa?
   B: I don’t know, but I’ll look _______ it first thing tomorrow and try to find _______.
   I’ll let you know.

9. A: How long were you in the hospital?
   B: About a week. But I’ve missed almost two weeks of classes.
   A: It’s going to be hard for you to make _______ all the work you’ve missed, isn’t it?
   B: Very.

10. A: Would you mind turning _______ the light?
    B: Not at all.
PRACTICE 8. Phrasal verbs.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions for these two-word verbs.

1. A: Who do you take ___________ the most, your father or your mother?
   B: My mother, I think. I can see many similarities between the two of us.

2. A: Hey, cut it ___________, you guys! I'm trying to sleep.
   B: What's the matter? Are we making too much noise?

3. A: Could I help you clean ___________?
   B: Sure. Would you mind taking ___________ the garbage?

4. A: Miss Ward, what seems to be the problem?
   B: Well, Doctor, for the last two days I haven't been able to keep any food down. Every
time I try to eat something, I throw ___________ soon afterward.

5. A: Where's my jacket?
   B: I hung it ___________ the closet.

6. A: Why are you going to see Professor Kelly?
   B: He called me ___________ to talk about my research project.

7. A: Is that man's story true?
   B: Yes. A newspaper reporter checked ___________ his story and found that it was true.

8. A: The city government is planning to redevelop a large section of the inner city.
   B: What's going to happen to the buildings that are there now?
   A: They are going to be torn ___________.

9. A: Some people tried to crash our party last night.
   B: What did you do?
   A: We kicked them ___________.

10. The test is about to begin. Please put ___________ all of your books and notebooks.
Index

A

Alan, 53
Able to, 84
Accustomed to, 152
Active verbs, 92, 94, 109
Adjective(s), defined, A2–A3
  following being (e.g., being foolish), 6
  followed by infinitive (e.g., happy to meet), 165
  with linking verbs (e.g., taste good), A4–A5
    with get (e.g., get hungry), A4–A5
  nouns used as (e.g., vegetable soup), 49–50
  participial (e.g., amusing/amused), 107–108
  passive verbs (stative), used as, 101–102
  possessive (my, your, etc.), 59
  preposition combinations with, A15–A19
Adjective clauses:
  expressions of quantity in, 143
  object pronouns (whom, which, that), 135–139
  punctuation of, 140–143
  reduction to adjective phrases, 143–145
  subject pronouns (who, which, that), 135–140
    with when, 139
    with where, 139
    with whose, 138
Adjective phrases, 143–145
Adverb(s), A2–A3
  conjunctive (e.g., therefore), 208
  mid-sentence, A3
Adverb clauses, 191
  cause and effect (because, etc.), 193, 212
  condition (if, unless, etc.), 196
  contrast (although, etc.), 213
  direct contrast (whereas, while), 194
  punctuation of, 191
  purpose (so that), 211
  reduction to modifying phrases, 199–201
  summary (cause and effect, contrast, condition), 197
  time (after, before, etc.), 31–32
A few, 56
After, 31–32

Agreement:
  pronoun with noun, 60
  subject–verb, 42–44
  verb with paired conjunctions, 187–188
A little, 56
All (of), 57
A lot of, 51
Although, 213, 215–216
Am, is, are being + adjective, 6–7
And, but, or, nor, 185–187
Any, 57, A15
Apostrophe:
  in contractions with not, A14
  in contractions with pronouns and nouns, 48–49
  with possessive nouns, 49
Appositives (SEE Adjective phrases)
Articles, 53
As, 32
As if/as though, 230
As soon as, 32
Auxiliary verbs (SEE Be; Contraction of verbs;
  Do/does/did; Have/has/had; Modal auxiliaries; Questions)

B

Be, A4
  auxiliary, 1–3, 88–91
Be able to, 84–86
Be going to, 26
Be supposed to, 74
Be used to, 152
Because, 193, 208, 216
Because of, 208, 216
Before, 32
Being + adjective, 6
Both . . . and, 187–188
Both (of), 56
But, 185–187, 213
By:
  with passive (the by-phrase), 92–93
  with reflexive pronouns, 60
C
Can, 84–86
ability/possibility, 81
degree of certainty, 79–80
in polite requests, 70
Causative verbs (make, have, get), 173
Clauses (see Adjective clauses;
   Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Collective nouns, 60
Commands (see Imperative sentences)
Commas:
   with adjective clauses, 140–143
   with adjective phrases, 143–145
   with adverb clauses, 191
   in combining independent clauses, 189–190
   in parallel structure, 185
   with transitions, 209
Complex sentences (see Adjective clauses;
   Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Compound sentences, 189–190
Conjunctions:
   combining independent clauses with, 189–190
   coordinating, 185, 189–190
   paired (correlative), 187–188
   punctuation with, 189–190, 209
Conjunctive adverbs, 208–209 (see also
   Transitions)
Consequently, 209
Contractions of verbs:
   auxiliaries with not, A13
   auxiliaries with pronouns and nouns, A13
Contrary-to-fact (see Conditional sentences)
Coordinating conjunctions, 185, 189–190
Could, 84–86
degree of certainty, 78–80
past ability, 81
in polite requests, 70
in reported speech, 126–127
for suggestions, 76
after wish, 231–232
Count/noncount nouns, 51
   use of expressions of quantity with, 55

D
Dangling modifiers (see Modifying phrases,
   reduction of adverb clauses)
Dependent clauses (see Adjective clauses;
   Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Definite nouns, article use, 53
Despite, 213, 215–216
Direct object, 94
Do/does/did, in negatives, 71, A15
Double negatives, A15
Due to, 209, 216

E
Each/every, 58
Each of, 43
-Ed forms, 4
   pronunciation, 8
   spelling, 4
Either . . . or, 187–188
Enough, 166
Even if, 194, 218
-Ever words, 130
Every one of, 58
Even though, 193, 213, 215–216
Expressions:
   of place, 15
   of quantity, 43, 55–56, 143
   (see also Past participle; Verb tenses, simple past)

F
(A) Few/(a)little, 56
For:
   meaning because, 189
   vs. since, 19
Forget/remember, 156
Frequency adverbs, A3
Future time, 26
   using present tenses to express, 29
   expressing in time clauses, 27
   (see also Be going to; Verb tenses; Will)

G
Generic noun, 53
Gerunds:
   vs. infinitives, 153, 156–162
   as objects of prepositions, 151
   passive/past, 167, 169
   possessive modifier with, 170
   preposition combinations followed by, 152
   as subjects, 163
   verbs followed by, 152
Get:
   causative (e.g., get them to do it), 173
   linking (e.g., get hungry), A4
   passive (e.g., get worried), 105–106
Go + gerund (e.g., go shopping), 152
Going to, 26–27
verbs of perception + -ing (e.g., see her walking), 172
(see also Gerunds; Present participles)
In order to, 164
In spite of, 213, 215–216
In the event that, 195
Intransitive verbs, A1
Inverted word order:
  after negative, A15
  after only if, 196
Irregular plural nouns, 47
Irregular verbs, 9, 11–14
It:
  with infinitives, 163
  its vs. it’s, 59
  with noun clauses, 123
  personal pronouns, 59

L
Lay, lie, 14
Let + simple form, 173
Let’s, 75
Linking verbs, A4–A5
(A) Little(a) few, 56
-Ly, adverb form, A2–A3

M
Main clauses (see Independent clauses)
Many/much, 55
May:
  degree of certainty, 78
  permission, 70
  in polite requests, 70
Mid-sentence adverbs, A3
Might:
  degree of certainty, 78
  in polite requests, 70
  in reported speech, 126
Modal auxiliaries, 69, 79
  passive, 97–99
  progressive, 80
  in reported speech, 126–127
Modifying phrases:
  reduction of adjective clauses, 143–145
  reduction of adverb clauses, 199–202
Most (of), 42, 56
Much/many, 55
Must:
  degree of certainty, 78, 80
  necessity, 71
  lack of, 71
  prohibition, 71
N
Negative(s):
  beginning a sentence, A15
  in contractions, A14
  double, A15
  questions, A12
Neither . . . nor, 187–188
Nevertheless/nonetheless, 213, 216
No, A14
Noncount nouns, 48/fn., 51
None (of), 43
Nor, 187
Not, A14
Not only . . . but also, 186–188
Noun(s):
  used as adjectives (e.g., vegetable soup), 49–50
  collective, 60
  count and noncount, 48/fn., 51
  definite/indefinite/generic, 53
  possessive, 48
  pronoun agreement with, 64
  regular and irregular plurals, 47
Noun clauses:
  with the fact that, 123
  with it, 123
  with question words, 116–119
  reported speech, sequence of tenses, 126–127
  subjunctive in, 129
  with that, 123
  with whetheriff, 120
  after wish, 231–232
Now that, 193, 216
O
Objects:
  of a preposition, 152
  of a verb, direct/indirect, 94
Of, in expressions of quantity, 56
Once, 32
One, impersonal pronoun, 62
One of (+ plural noun), 58
Only if, 197, 218
On the other hand, 216
Or, 187
Other, forms of, 62
Otherwise, 217
Ought to, 73
P
Paired conjunctions (e.g., both . . . and), 186–188
Parallel structure, 185–187
Participial adjectives (e.g., confusing vs. confused), 107–108
Participial phrases (see Modifying phrases)
Participles (see Modifying phrases; Past participle; Present participle)
Passive, form, 88–91, 94, 109
by-phrase, 93
with causative verbs (e.g., have it done), 173, 175, 178
gerunds, (e.g., being done), 167, 169
with get (e.g., get worried), 105–106
infinitives (e.g., to be done), 166–167, 169
modal auxiliaries, 97–99
participial adjective (e.g., amused children), 107–108
stative (e.g., the door is locked), 101–103
Past participle, 9
  as adjective (e.g., amused children), 107–108
  irregular, 9
  in passive, 97–99, 104
  in verb tenses, 1
  (see also -Ed forms)
Past time (see Verb tenses)
Perfect/perfect progressive verbs, 3, 5 (see also Verb tenses)
Periods, 189–190, 209
Personal pronouns, 59
  agreement with nouns, 60, 62
Phrasal modals, 69
Phrasal verbs, A20–A29
Phrases:
  prepositional, A2
  reduction of adjective clauses, 143–145
  reduction of adverb clauses, 199–201
Place expressions with progressive verbs, 15–17
Polite requests, 70
Possessive:
  in adjective clauses (whose), 138
  with gerunds, 170
  nouns (e.g., John's book), 48
  pronouns/adjectives (mine, my, etc.), 59–60
  in questions (which), A7–A8
Preposition(s), A2
  combinations with adjectives and verbs, 15–19
  combinations followed by gerunds, 152
  following stative passive verbs, 103
Prepositional phrases, A2
Present participle:
  as adjective (e.g., amusing story), 107–108
  vs. past participle, 96, 104
  in reduction of adjective clauses, 143–145
  in reduction of adverb clauses, 199–201
  special expressions followed by (e.g., have fun doing), 153
spelling of -ing forms, 4
with verbs of perception (e.g., watch someone doing), 172
in verb tenses, 1–3
Present time (see Verb tenses)
Progressive verbs, 2, 225–226 (see also Verb tenses)
vs. stative, 6
Pronouns:
impersonal, 62
definite, 60
object, 59
personal, 59
agreement with nouns, 60, 62, 64
possessive, 59
reflexive, 60
relative (see Adjective clauses)
subject, 59
Pronunciation:
-ed, 8
-s/es, 42
Punctuation:
adjective clauses, 140–143
adjective phrases, 144
adverb clauses, 191
independent clauses, 189–190
parallel structure, 185
quoted speech, 124
transitions, 209
(see also Apostrophe; Commas; Hyphens; Periods; Quotation marks; Semicolon)

Q
Quantity (see Expressions of quantity)
Questions:
information, A7–A11
negative, A12
tag, A13
word order in, A6
yes/no, A7–A8
Question words:
with infinitives, 122
in noun clauses, 116–119
in questions, A7–A11
Quotation marks, 124
Quoted speech, 124

R
Raise/rise, 14
Reduction:
of adjective clauses, 143–145
of adverb clauses, 199–201
Reflexive pronouns, 60
Regular plural nouns, 47
Remember/forget, 156
Repeated action in the past (would), 82
Reported speech, 126–127

S
-S/es, 42–43, 46–47, 51
-Self/selves, 60
Semicolon, 209fn.
Sentences:
complex (see Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
compound (see Conjunctions, combining independent clauses with)
conditional, 223–226, 228–229, 233
inverted word order in, 227
interrogative (see Questions)
negative, A14–A15
simple (see Subjects, verbs, objects)
Sequence of tenses in noun clauses, 126–127
Set, sit, 14
Shall, for suggestions, 75
Should:
  advisability, 73
  in conditional sentences, 223–225
degree of certainty, 79
past form, 73
in reported speech, 126
for suggestions, 76
Simple form of a verb:
with causative verbs, 173
in imperative sentences, 126
following let and help, 173
with modal auxiliaries, 69, 79
subjunctive, 129
with verbs of perception, 172
Simple tenses, 2, 5, 7, 11–17 (see also Verb tenses)
Since:
  meaning because, 209, 216
duration of time, 31–32
Since vs. for, 19
Singular/plural (see Agreement; Count/noncount nouns; Irregular plural nouns; Nouns used as adjectives; -s/-es)
So, conjunction, 189
Some (of), 51
So that, 211
So...that/such...that, 210
Spelling:
-ed/-ing, 4
-s/es, 42, 46

INDEX 5
Stative passive, 101–102
   followed by prepositions, 103
Stative verbs, 6
Subjects, verbs, objects, A1–A2
Subject–verb agreement, 42–44
Subjunctive, 129
Subordinate clauses (see Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
   Such . . . that, 210–211
Supposed to, 74

T
Tag questions, A13
   in imperative sentences, 126
Tenses (see Verb tenses)
   That:
      in adjective clauses, 135–138
      in noun clauses, 123
   The, 53
   There + be, 44
   Therefore, 208
   They, impersonal pronoun, 62
   Though, 215
Time clauses, 199–200
   future, tense use in, 27
   Too, 165–166
Transitions, 216
Transitive/intransitive:
   in passive, 88–91
   troublesome (e.g., lay/lie), 14
Try, 156

U
Uncountable nouns (see Noncount nouns)
   Unless, 196, 218
   Upon + -ing, 202
   Used to, 152fn.

V
Verbals (see Gerunds; Infinitives)
Verb tenses:
   in adverb clauses of time, 32, 192
   future perfect, 3, 30
   future perfect progressive, 3, 30
   future progressive, 2, 29
   overview, 1
   in passive, 88–91, 94, 109
   past perfect, 3, 22
   past perfect progressive, 3, 25
   past progressive, 2, 15–17
   present perfect, 3, 18, 20–21
   present perfect progressive, 3, 20–21, 25
   present progressive, 2, 5, 7, 29
   review of, 33–41
   sequence of in noun clauses, 126–127
   simple future, 2
   simple past, 2, 11–17, 20, 22–23
   simple present, 2, 5, 7
Very/too, 165
   Voiced and voiceless sounds, 8

W
Was/were in conditional sentences, 223
What, A7–A11
What + a form of do, A8, A10–A11
What kind, A10–A11
When, 31–32, 139, A7, A9–A11
Whenever, 31
Where, 139, A7–A8, A11
Whereas, 194, 216
Whether, 120–121
Whether or not, 194
Which, 135–138, A8–A11
While, 194, 216
Why, A8–A11
Will:
   conditional, 223
   future, 26
Who/whom, 135, A7–A11
Whose, 135–138
Why don’t, 75
Wish, 231–232
Would:
   in conditional sentences, 223
   in polite requests, 70
   repeated action in the past, 82
   in reported speech, 126
   with wish, 231–232
Would rather, 83
Would you mind, 70

Y
-Y, final, spelling:
   with -ed, -ing, 4
   with -s/-es, 42
Yes/no questions, A7–A8
Yet, conjunction, 189, 213
You, impersonal pronoun, 62
To the student: To make it easy to correct your own answers, remove this answer key along the perforations and make a separate answer key booklet for yourself.

Chapter 1: OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 1.
1. do you do ... eat
2. did you do ... ate ... visited ... wrote
3. are you doing ... am talking ... am answering
4. was looking
5. have I asked ... have asked
6. have you been doing ... have been talking
7. will you be (or: are you going to be) ... will be
   (or: am going to be)
8. will you be doing ... will be sitting
9. had you done ... had eaten
10. will you have done ... will have eaten

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 2.
1. eats
2. ate
3. will eat (or: is going to eat)
4. am eating
5. was eating
6. will be eating
7. have already eaten
8. had already eaten
9. will have already eaten (or: will already have eaten)
10. has been eating
11. had been eating
12. will have been eating

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 4.

PART A.
1. shouting, shouted
2. sloping, sloped
3. stopping, stopped
4. stooping, stooped
5. answering, answered
6. referring, referred
7. returning, returned
8. enjoying, enjoyed
9. copying, copied
10. dying, died

PART B.
11. pointing
12. beating

PART C.
13. betting
14. exciting
15. exiting
16. regretting
17. attempting
18. shouting
19. flitting
20. interesting

PART D.
21. bothered
22. blurred
23. scared
24. scarred
25. feared
26. starred
27. started
28. ordered
29. suffered
30. occurred

PART E.
31. dreaming
32. filing
33. filling
34. failing
35. annoying
36. denying
37. scrubbing
38. draining
39. fanning
40. interrupting

41. combed
42. wrapped
43. groaned
44. occupied
45. sprayed
46. wiped
47. whipped
48. accepted
49. permitted
50. merited
51. whispered
52. inferred
Chapter 2: PRESENT AND PAST, SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 5.
1. isn’t shining
2. own
3. am trying
4. belongs
5. is sleeping
6. is bleeding
7. am failing
8. shrinks
9. is biting
10. isn’t blowing
11. are always fighting
12. is he screaming
13. means
14. are you whispering
15. is tapping

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 6.
1. has
2. is having
3. weighs
4. is weighing . . . needs
5. am doing . . . consists
6. am thinking . . . think
7. is looking . . . look
8. is currently appearing
9. appears
10. are seeing
11. doesn’t see
12. am imagining
13. imagine
14. Aren’t you forgetting
15. forget
16. is costing/costs
17. costs
18. am smelling . . . smells
19. Are you being
20. is
21. am being . . . am not

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 7.
1. usually drinks . . . is drinking
2. takes . . . usually waits
3. is raining . . . is standing . . . is holding . . . is waiting
4. is taking . . . studies . . . has . . . is also taking . . . likes . . . has
5. are you doing . . . am tasting . . . tastes
6. are you writing . . . am making . . . Do you always prepare . . . always try
7. are the children being . . . are cleaning . . . (are) picking
8. am preparing . . . don’t need

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 8.
1. /ad/
2. /h/
3. /d/
4. /d/
5. /ad/
6. /d/
7. /ad/
8. /u/
9. /d/
10. /ad/
11. /ad/
12. /u/
13. /h/
14. /d/
15. /h/
16. /d/

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 9.

Group 1A:
- begin
- drink
- ring
- shrink
- sing
- sink
- spring
- stink
- swim
- blow
- draw
- grow
- know
- throw
- fly
- break
- choose
- drive
- freeze
- ride
- rise
- speak
- steal
- swear
- tear
- wear
- weave
- write

- began
- drank
- rang
- shrank
- sang
- sank
- sprang
- stank
- swam
- blew
- drew
- grown
- known
- thrown
- flew
- broken
- chosen
- driven
- frozen
- ridden
- risen
- spoken
- stolen
- sworn
- torn
- worn
- woven
- written

Group 1B:
- get
- forget
- mistake
- shake
- take
- bite
- hide
- bc
- eat
- fall
- forgive
- give
- lie
- see
- do
- go

- got
- forgot
- mistaken
- shaken
- taken
- bitten
- hidden
- been
- eaten
- fallen
- forgiven
- given
- lain
- seen
- done
- gone

Group 2A:
- sell
- tell
- face
- bleed
- breed
- feed
- lead
- read
- speed

- sold
- told
- fled
- bled
- bred
- fed
- led
- read
- sped

- laid
- paid
- said
- found
- ground
- wound

2 ANSWER KEY Chapter 2
Group 2B:

creep  crept  crept
deal  dealt  dealt
feel  felt  felt
keep  kept  kept
kneel  knelt  knelt
leave  left  left
mean  meant  meant
meet  met  met
sleep  slept  slept
weep  wept  wept
lose  lost  lost
bring  brought  brought
buy  bought  bought
catch  caught  caught
fight  fought  fought
seek  sought  sought
teach  taught  taught
think  thought  thought
bend  bent  bent
build  built  built
lend  lent  lent
send  sent  sent
spend  spent  spent

Group 2C:

cling  clung  clung
dig  dug  dug
hang  hung  hung
spin  spun  spun
stick  stuck  stuck
sting  stung  stung
strike  struck  struck/striken
swing  swung  swung
hold  held  held
shoot  shot  shot
sit  sat  sat
stand  stood  stood
understand  understood  understood
win  won  won

Group 2D:

become  became  become
come  came  come
run  ran  run

Group 3:

bet  bet  bet
bid  bid  bid
broadcast  broadcast  broadcast
burst  burst  burst
cost  cost  cost
cut  cut  cut
hit  hit  hit
hurt  hurt  hurt
let  let  let
put  put  put
quit  quit  quit
shed  shed  shed
shut  shut  shut
slit  slit  slit

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 11.
1. swore  5. hid  9. spread
2. shook  6. stuck  10. won
3. drew  7. slit  11. dug
4. burst  8. slid  12. bought

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 12.
1. bit  5. quit  9. paid
2. clung  6. felt  10. caught
3. meant  7. stung  11. shed
4. blew  8. swam  12. wove

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 13.
1. spent  5. upset  9. spun
2. led  6. split  10. rang
3. bet  7. sank  11. chose
4. wept  8. flew  12. froze

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 14.
1. fell  5. lost  9. cost
2. struck  6. dealt  10. swept
3. broadcast  7. held  11. stole
4. sought  8. shot  12. fled

1. raises  6. lying
2. rose  7. lay
3. set  8. laid
4. sat  9. hung
5. lays  10. lies

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 15.
1. had
2. were at home having
3. was in his garage working... exploded... caused... lit/lighted
4. didn't see... was thinking... were you thinking
5. didn't want... was waiting
6. didn't hear... was in her room listening
7. stopped... fell... spilled
8. came... didn't hear... was in her room drying
9. served... went
10. looked... was sleeping... was dreaming... was smiling

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 16.
1. was crossing... turned... hit
2. was... was humming
3. were in our living room watching... went... went... got... turned... listened... was
4. outwitted [= outsmarted, were more clever]... surrounded... was still inside stuffing
5. rang... came... were still playing... was pulling... ran... told
6. was looking... Did you find... took
7. is always interrupting... is always asking
8. was trying... interrupted... asked... refused
Chapter 3: PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 18.
1. have already eaten
2. have won
3. haven't written
4. has improved
5. hasn't started
6. have already swept
7. have you known
8. have made
9. have never ridden
10. Have you ever swum
11. has grown
12. have driven
13. has forgotten
14. has cost - have saved

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 19.
1. for - since
2. since
3. for
4. for - since
5. for
6. since
7. for
8. since
9. for - for
10. since
11. since - since
12. since

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 20.
1. knew - have known
2. agreed - have agreed
3. took - has taken
4. has played - played
5. wrote - has written
6. sent - have sent
7. has flown - flew
8. overslept - has overslept

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 20.
1. have been playing
2. has played
3. has been sleeping
4. has slept
5. haven't flown
6. have been flying
7. have been searching
8. has raised
9. has been lecturing
10. has never missed
11. have finally made - have chosen

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 21.
1. have never understood
2. have met
3. has been standing
4. have always wanted
5. has been painting
6. have been travelling
7. has grown
8. have already spent
9. has been cooking
10. have never heard
11. have been waiting
12. has been digging

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 22.
1. had already finished
2. turned on
3. had already invented
4. had burned
5. had never spent
6. stung
7. had never designed
8. helped
9. had never been
10. had flown
11. had never taught
12. had already left

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 23.
1. went - had never been - didn't take - was
2. ate - had never eaten
3. saw - did - Had you ever acted - started
4. went - moved - took - had arrived - laughed - invited - was
5. was - studied - had never had - spoke - enjoyed
6. traveled - had never lived - had - became - had never lived

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 25.
1. had been listening to - have been dancing - singing
2. have been waiting
3. had been waiting
4. has been training
5. had been running
6. had been trying - has been teaching
7. has been performing
8. have been working - had been building

Chapter 4: FUTURE TIME

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 26.
1. will
2. are going to
3. will
4. Are you going to - are going to
5. am going to

4 ANSWER KEY Chapter 3
6. will
7. will/am going to
8. am going to
9. will
10. am going to
11. is going to . . . is he going to/will he
12. will
13. am going to . . . will
14. am going to

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 27.
1. will not/are not going to return . . . get
2. hear . . . will let
3. will lend . . . finish
4. gets . . . will be/is going to be
5. isn't going to be/won't be . . . learns . . . comes . . . asks
6. returns . . . will start/is going to start
7. is going to build/will build . . . will be/is going to be . . . complete
8. will be/is going to be . . . is

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 29.
1. I'm sending
2. (no change)
3. I'm having
4. are you doing . . . am studying
5. (no change) [I'm getting it would have a present, not future, meaning.]
6. are . . . getting
7. (no change)
8. are moving
9. Is . . . teaching
10. am not sending . . . are coming

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 29.
1. heals . . . will be playing
2. clear . . . will be standing
3. start . . . will be attending
4. have . . . will be shopping
5. will be attending . . . return

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 30.
1. will already have risen (or: will have already risen)
2. will have been riding
3. will already have arrived (or: will have already arrived)
4. will have been listening
5. will have smoked
6. will have been flying
7. will have saved
8. will have taught

Chapter 5: ADVERB CLAUSES OF TIME
AND SUMMARY OF VERB TENSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 31.
1. When I reached my 21st birthday, I didn't feel any older.
2. I had a cup of tea before I left for work.
   Before I left for work, I had a cup of tea.
3. After I get home from work, I like to read the evening newspaper.
   I like to read the evening newspaper after I get home from work.
4. Since my watch broke, I have been late to work three times.
   I have been late to work three times since my watch broke.
5. My cat hides under the house whenever it rains.
   Whenever it rains, my cat hides under the house.
6. I'm going to get a job once I finish school.
   Once I finish school, I'm going to get a job.
7. While I was waiting for my bus, I heard a gunshot.
   I heard a gunshot while I was waiting for my bus.
8. The village will have no electric power until a new generator is installed.
   Until a new generator is installed, the village will have no electric power.
9. The last time I was in Taipei, I saw Mr. Wu.
   I saw Mr. Wu the last time I was in Taipei.
10. As soon as we saw the tornado heading toward our town, we ran to the basement of the town hall.
    We ran to the basement of the town hall as soon as we saw the tornado heading toward our town.

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 32.
1. As soon as our taxi gets here, we can leave.
2. I turned off the TV before I left the room.
3. The first time I parachuted from a plane, I was both terrified and exhilarated.
4. My boss stormed into my office while I was talking on the phone to an important client.
5. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, its name was changed to Sri Lanka.
6. Since Jack fell off his bicycle, he's had to use crutches to walk.
7. Ms. Johnson will return your call as soon as she has some free time.
8. Once John learns how to use a computer, he'll be able to work more efficiently.
9. I won't return this book to the library until I finish my research project.
10. Sue dropped a carton of eggs as she was leaving the store.
11. The next time Anna goes to class, she'll remember to take her grammar book.
12. When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path.
13. Just as soon as the rice is done, we can eat.
14. When I go to bed at night, I like to read until I get sleepy.

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 32.
1. C
2. C
3. D
4. C
5. C
6. D
7. B
8. B
9. C
10. A
11. A
12. A
13. A
14. C
15. B

ANSWER KEY Chapter 5
Part I.
1. has never flown
2. have been waiting ... hasn't arrived
3. are ... reach
4. will have already left (or: will already have left) ...
5. are having ... has been
6. went ... got ... were dancing ... were talking ...
7. was lying ... heard ... got ... looked ... had just
8. am planning ... am going/am going to go/will go ...
9. was sitting ... got ... was sitting ... tried ... was
10. has been raining ... has dropped ... is ... was
   shining ... was ... changes ... wake ... will be

Part II.
1. haven't seen
2. is at home recuperating/is recuperating at home
3. is she recuperating
4. hurt
5. was playing
6. did she hurt
7. was trying
8. collided
9. fell
10. landed
11. twisted
12. has been wearing
13. hasn't been
14. will not/won't be
15. Will her doctor allow/Is her doctor going to allow
16. will have had

Part III.
1. Did you enjoy
2. I've never gone
3. had never gone
4. didn't know
5. were still trying
6. appeared
7. started
8. was singing
9. was

Part IV.
1. grew up
2. greatly admired/had greatly admired
3. had become
4. became
5. contained
6. died
7. had been working
8. never finished
9. has become

Part V.
10. was wearing
11. had changed
12. was still
13. asked
14. had gained
15. had turned
16. looked
17. were

Part VI.
1. will have been
2. will meet
3. will have missed
4. will be
5. get
6. will take
7. will no longer be
8. will have grown
9. will be
10. will probably be wearing
11. will have changed
12. will still be
13. will ask
14. will probably have gained
15. will have turned
16. will look
17. will be

Part VII.
1. seems
2. sent
3. haven't received
4. is not functioning
5. are working
6. will start

Part VIII.
1. C
2. C
3. A
4. A
5. B
6. C
7. C
8. C
9. B
10. C

Part IX.
1. A
2. A
3. B
4. C
5. C
6. A
7. B
8. B
9. C
10. B

6 ANSWER KEY Chapter 5
Chapter 6: SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 42.
1. My mother wears glasses.
2. Elephants are large animals. OR: An elephant is a large animal.
3. Your heart beats faster when you exercise.
4. Healthy hearts need regular exercise.
5. Every child in the class knows the alphabet.
6. Some of the magazines at the dentist’s office are two years old.
7. A number of the students in my class are from Mexico.
8. One of my favorite subjects in school is algebra.
9. There are many different kinds of insects in the world.
10. Writing compositions is difficult for me.
11. The United States has a population of more than 250 million.
12. Most of the people in my factory division like and get along with one another, but a few of the workers don’t fit in with the rest of us very well.

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 42.
1. s /z/ 2. es /az/ 3. s /s/ 4. s /z/ 5. s /s/ 6. es /az/ 7. s /s/ 8. s /z/

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 43.
1. is 2. are 3. barks 4. bark 5. is 6. are 7. is 8. are 9. is 10. are 11. is 12. is 13. are 14. is 15. is

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 43.
1. is 2. are 3. is 4. are 5. has 6. have 7. were 8. was 9. was 10. is 11. is 12. has 13. has 14. has/have 15. is 16. is/are 17. is 18. are

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 44.
1. is 2. are 3. aren’t 4. isn’t 5. are 6. is 7. is 8. is 9. is . . . is . . . is 10. isn’t 11. isn’t 12. is 13. are 14. is 15. are 16. are

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 44.
1. vote 2. have 3. was 4. knows 5. Isn’t 6. speak and understand 7. are 8. do 9. are 10. have 11. has . . . have 12. confirms 13. is . . . is 14. are 15. is 16. Aren’t 17. Is 18. begin [Answer: 4 (Alabama, Alaska, Arizona, Arkansas)]
19. consists 20. have 21. is 22. Was

Chapter 7: NOUNS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 46.

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 47.

ANSWER KEY Chapter 7
**PRACTICE 3**, p. 47.

1. theses
2. phenomena
3. hypotheses
4. crises
5. memoranda
6. media
7. criteria
8. curricula
9. stimuli
10. bacteria
11. oases
12. data

**PRACTICE 4**, p. 48.

1. secretary’s
2. secretaries’
3. cats’
4. cat’s
5. child’s
6. children’s
7. supervisors’
8. supervisor’s
9. people’s
10. month’s
11. actors’
12. actor’s

**PRACTICE 5**, p. 49.

1. Mary’s father . . . He’s a dentist.
2. Jack’s parents live . . . His parents’ home . . .
3. Our teacher’s last name . . . She’s one of the best teachers . . .
4. Our teachers' last names . . . They’re all good teachers.
5. Ms Wells’ (or: Wells’s) husband . . . Ms. Hunt’s husband . . .
6. It’s well known that a bear likes . . .
7. Ann’s telephone number . . . [Note: No apostrophes are used with possessive pronouns, e.g., hers, ours]. See Chart 8–1.]
8. Although it’s found . . . our children’s and grandchildren’s lives . . .

**PRACTICE 6**, p. 49.

**Part I.**

1. toys . . . toy
2. tomato . . . tomatoes
3. vegetable . . . vegetables
4. drugs . . . drug
5. two lanes . . . two-lane
6. five-minute . . . five minutes
7. sixty-year-old . . . sixty years old

**Part II.**

8. student handbook
9. ten-month-old baby
10. three-day trip
11. child psychologist
12. fifty-dollar check
13. three-credit course
14. nine-room house
15. dog food
16. guest room
17. five-page paper
18. ten-year-old sister and a twelve-year-old brother

**PRACTICE 7**, p. 50.

1. a bank robber
2. a bullfighter
3. a stamp collector
4. an animal trainer
5. a storyteller
6. a tax collector
7. a can opener
8. a windshield wiper
9. a wage earner
10. an office manager
11. a computer programmer
12. a bookkeeper
13. a spot remover
14. a pot holder
15. a troublemaker
16. a mind reader
17. a hair dryer (or: hair drier)
18. a potato peeler
19. a tennis player
20. a firefigher
21. a mail carrier

**PRACTICE 8**, p. 51.

1. (no change) . . . eyes
2. (no change)
3. (no change)
4. sandwiches
5. (no change)
6. (no change)
7. photographs
8. (no change)
9. ideas
10. (no change)
11. (no change)
12. (no change)
13. words
14. (no change)
15. (no change)
16. gloves
17. cars . . . minutes . . . (no change)
18. (no change) . . . rings . . . bracelets . . . (no change)
19. (no change) . . . (no change) . . . vegetables . . . (no change)
20. Butterflies . . . caterpillars . . . insects . . . wings
21. (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change)
22. (no change) . . . (no change)
23. (no change) . . . products . . . vegetables . . . (no change) . . . sardines . . . vitamins . . . (no change) . . . pills
24. (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change) . . . facts . . . (no change)
25. (no change) . . . (no change) . . . (no change)

**PRACTICE 9**, p. 53.

1. Ø . . . a . . . Ø
2. a . . . the
3. Ø . . . Ø
4. A . . . a . . . the . . . the
5. The . . . the
6. Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø
7. Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø
8. the
9. The . . . the . . . the
10. an
**PRACTICE 10, p. 55.**
1. many watches
2. much... Ø
3. many teeth
4. much... Ø
5. much... Ø
6. much... Ø
7. many videos
8. is much... Ø
9. many witnesses
10. much... Ø
11. many villages
12. much... Ø
13. much... Ø
14. many mice
15. isn't much... Ø
16. many adventures
17. was... much... Ø
18. much... Ø... many... textbooks
19. are... many... thieves, muggers, pickpockets
20. isn't much... Ø... much
21. many... volcanoes are
22. many speeches

**PRACTICE 11, p. 56.**
1. a little
2. (very) few
3. a little
4. a few
5. (Very) Few
6. (very) few
7. a few
8. (very) little
9. a few
10. a little
11. A few
12. a little... a little
13. (very) little
14. (very) few

**PRACTICE 12, p. 56.**
1. Ø
2. of
3. Ø
4. of
5. Ø
6. of
7. of
8. Ø

**PRACTICE 13, p. 58.**
1. student
2. students
3. rooms
4. room
5. window
6. windows
7. item
8. items
9. countries
10. country
11. person
12. question
13. children... child
14. problems
15. applicants

Chapter 8: PRONOUNS

**PRACTICE 1, p. 59.**
1. them
2. me
3. I
4. me... his
5. his... her
6. its... them
7. They... it
8. your... them
9. I... him... me
10. My... I... She... her... mine
11. its
12. it... it
13. them
14. me... them... us... our
15. she... me... us... his

**PRACTICE 2, p. 60.**
1. his/her; his or her; his; her
2. their
3. their
4. his/her; his or her; his; her
5. his/her; his or her; his; her
6. their
7. them; him or her; him; her
8. their; his/her; his or her; his; her
9. Their
10. They have . . . they
11. They
12. It was

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 60.
1. himself
2. myself
3. himself
4. yourself
5. yourselves
6. themselves
7. myself
8. themselves
9. myself
10. herself
11. himself
12. yourself
13. ourselves
14. myself
15. himself
16. yourself
17. herself
18. myself
19. ourselves
20. themselves
21. yourself
22. yourselves
23. himself . . . himself

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 62.
1. ourselves . . . we are . . . our
2. yourself . . . you are . . . your
3. yourselves . . . you are . . . your
4. themselves . . . they are . . . their
5. and 6. INFORMAL: themselves . . . they are . . . their
   FORMAL: himself . . . he is . . . his or: herself . . . she is
   . . . her (also possible: him/herself . . . s/he is . . . his/her)

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 62.
1. another
2. Others
3. The other
4. another
5. the others
6. the other (Answer: The other states are Oregon, California, Hawaii, and Alaska.)
7. other
8. others . . . others . . . Other
9. another
10. another
11. the others
12. other
13. The others
14. the other
15. The others . . . another
16. Others . . . other . . . others
17. other . . . the other
18. Another . . . Others
19. The others

20. other
21. other
22. another
23. another
24. others

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 64.

Potatoes are grown in most countries. They are one of the most widely grown vegetables in the world. They are very versatile; they can be prepared in many different ways. French fries are popular almost everywhere. Besides frying them, potatoes can be baked or boiled. Another way people use potatoes is to make potato flour for making bread and other kinds of dishes. It's also possible to make alcoholic beverages from potatoes. There are still other ways potatoes are used by commercial food processors to make products such as potato chips and freeze-dried potatoes.

Potatoes originated in South America, where they were cultivated by the Incas as early as 5000 years ago. It is believed that potatoes were the world's first freeze-dried food. Over 4000 years ago the Incas carried their harvested potatoes up into the mountains and spread them on the ground to freeze overnight. After the sun came up and heated the potatoes the next day, the Incas squeezed the water out of the potatoes by stepping on them. This process was repeated for four or five days until almost all the moisture was gone from the potatoes. The Incas then dried the potatoes and stored them in pots. Some Indians of South America still do this today.

1. C 11. A
2. D 12. A
3. A 13. D
4. C 14. A
5. C 15. A
7. B 17. C
8. C 18. D
10. C 20. B

◊ PRACTICE 8. Test B, p. 67.
1. C 11. C
2. B 12. D
3. A 13. B
5. B 15. C
6. C 16. D
7. D 17. A
8. A 18. C
Chapter 9: MODALS, PART 1

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 69.
1. C 7. C
2. C 8. C
3. C 9. C
4. B 10. C
5. C 11. C
6. C 12. C

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 70.
1. Would you (please) hand me that book?
2. Could you (please) give me some advice about buying a computer?
3. Could I (please) borrow your wheelbarrow?
4. May I (please) have a cup of coffee?
5. Can I (please) use your bicycle tomorrow?
6. Would you (please) read over my composition for spelling errors?
7. Would you mind opening the door for me?
8. Would you mind if I left early?

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 70.
1. closing
2. if I closed
3. taking
4. if I showed
5. drying
6. finishing
7. if I used
8. waiting
9. if I borrowed
10. if I gave

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 71.
1. B 6. C
2. A 7. B
3. A 8. C
4. B 9. A
5. A 10. B

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 72.
1. Do you have to... have to
2. had to... Did you have to
3. doesn’t have to
4. don’t have to / won’t have to
5. have had to
6. did Tom have to
7. don’t have to / won’t have to
8. Did John have to
9. has had to
10. will have had to
11. Don’t you have to
12. will have to / is going to have to... Does she have to / Will she have to
13. didn’t have to
14. haven’t had to

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 73.
Expected completions:
1. I think she should/ought to join some clubs to meet people with similar interests.
2. She'd better find a chemistry major to tutor her.
3. You should have stopped for gas.
4. They'd better clean it up right away.
5. I should have taken it back sooner.
6. He'd better change clothes before he goes.
7. She should/ought to make her own decision about her career and go to architecture school.
8. Richard should/ought to get his roommate a pair of earphones.
9. He should/ought to call home and talk to his family.
10. I shouldn't have eaten so much.
11. He should have listened to Tom before he fired him.
12. He shouldn’t have left the room. He should have apologized immediately and signaled to a waiter for help.

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 74.
1. The students are supposed to write a composition.
2. The are supposed to write it about a person they admire.
3. They’re supposed to write it in ink.
4. They aren’t supposed to write it in pencil.
5. When are they supposed to hand it in?

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 74.
1. You are not supposed to smoke.
2. You are supposed to keep off the grass.
3. You are not supposed to eat or drink in this room.
4. You are supposed to move to the rear of the bus.
5. You are not supposed to joke with airport personnel while your hand luggage is being inspected.
6. You are supposed to use the stairs in case of fire.
You are not supposed to use the elevator.
7. You are not supposed to litter.
8. Slower traffic is supposed to keep right.

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 75.
1. A: we
   B: Ø
2. A: we
   B: I
3. A: you
   B: Ø
4. A: we/you
   B: I
5. A: I/we
   B: you
6. A: I/we
   B: you

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 76.
Possible completions:
1. He could hide under his bed.
   He could pick up his baseball bat and go looking for the intruder.
   He should leave the house and go to his neighbor’s to call the police.
2. He could jump from the moving train.
   He could stay on the train, but hide from the conductor.
   He should buy a ticket from the conductor to the next stop, get off, then take the next train back home.
3. She could take a warm bath to relax her before she goes to bed.  
She could take sleeping pills.  
She should see a doctor and find out if there is a physical reason for her insomnia.

4. I could have called the police and asked for help in getting gas.  
I could have continued driving to see if I could make it to the next town without running out of gas.  
I should have found a place to stay overnight and waited until the gas station opened in the morning.

Chapter 10: MODALS, PART 2

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 78.
2. B  6. A  10. A  

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 79.
1. could be visiting  
2. should watch  
3. must have thrown  
4. should be working . . . shouldn't be wasting  
5. must be playing  
6. might be taking  
7. should have bought . . . shouldn't have waited  
8. must have been driving  
9. must not have planned  
10. may have borrowed . . . couldn't have borrowed  
11. could not have been listening  
12. couldn't have told  
13. must not have . . . must have been sleeping  
14. must be making

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 80.  
Possible logical conclusions:
1. They must not be at home.  
2. He must have studied for the test.  
3. He must have seen the movie before.  
4. She must be asleep.  
5. She must not have heard them.  
6. He must like to listen to classical music when he's in the car.  
7. She must not like classical music.  
8. She must not have paid her phone bill.  
9. The mushrooms must have been poisonous.  
10. The cat must have knocked it over.

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 81.  
1. can't  
2. could  
3. can't  
4. could . . . can't  
5. couldn't  
6. can  
7. couldn't  
8. couldn't

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 82.
1. would always yell . . . would come  
2. would fall . . . would throw  
3. would never call . . . wouldn't even knock  
4. would always bring  
5. would take  
6. would always wipe  
7. would tell . . . would listen  
8. would drive

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 83.  
1. have gone to an opera  
2. have studied Chinese  
3. be an environmental lawyer  
4. not tell you  
5. go out with their friends . . . stay home with their parents  
6. not have gone out . . . have stayed home

◊ PRACTICE 7. Test A, p. 84.
1. B  11. D  
2. D  12. C  
3. D  13. C  
4. A  14. D  
5. B  15. C  
6. C  16. A  
7. D  17. D  
8. C  18. C  
10. A  20. A

◊ PRACTICE 8. Test B, p. 86.
1. A  11. D  
2. B  12. C  
3. A  13. A  
5. D  15. C  
6. C  16. A  
7. D  17. B  
8. B  18. D  
10. C  20. A

Chapter 11: THE PASSIVE

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 88.  
1. are  
2. is being  
3. has been  
4. was  
5. was being  
6. had been  
7. will be  
8. is going to be  
9. will have been  
10. has been  
11. was  
12. are being  
13. will be  
14. had been  
15. will have been  
16. are  
17. is going to be  
18. were being
**PRACTICE 2, p. 89.**

1. a. Was that report written by Tom?
   b. No, it wasn’t written by him.
   c. It was written by Alice.

2. a. Is your house being painted by Mr. Brown?
   b. No, it isn’t being painted by him.
   c. It’s being painted by my uncle.

3. a. Will the dishes be washed by Steve?
   b. No, they won’t be washed by him.
   c. They’ll be washed by the children.

4. a. Has the meeting been planned by Sue?
   b. No, it hasn’t been planned by her.
   c. It has been planned by the committee.

5. a. Is that violin played by Mr. Parr?
   b. No, it isn’t played by him.
   c. It is played by his son.

6. a. Are the books going to be returned to the library by Jack?
   b. No, they aren’t going to be returned by him.
   c. They’re going to be returned by his sister.

7. a. Was the ancient skeleton discovered by the archeologists?
   b. No, it wasn’t discovered by them.
   c. It was discovered by a farmer.

8. a. Was the food being prepared by Sally?
   b. No, it wasn’t being prepared by her.
   c. It was being prepared by her mother.

9. a. Will the letters have been typed by Ms. Anderson?
   b. No, they won’t have been typed by her.
   c. They will have been typed by the secretary.

**PRACTICE 3, p. 89.**

1. was . . . discovered
2. was written
3. won’t be paid
4. was refilled
5. was . . . knocked
6. wasn’t broken
7. am not impressed
8. is being taped
9. Is . . . being flown
10. will be won
11. won’t be influenced
12. is going to be decided
13. has been discovered
14. hasn’t been taught
15. Had . . . been delivered
16. was being affected

**PRACTICE 4, p. 91.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object of Verb</th>
<th>Passive Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>will pay</td>
<td>the bill</td>
<td>The bill will be paid by Al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will come</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplies</td>
<td>towels</td>
<td>Towels are supplied by the hotel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happen</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noticed</td>
<td>my mistake</td>
<td>My mistake was noticed by everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrived</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>I wasn’t surprised by the news.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrupt</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>did . . . exist</td>
<td>my story</td>
<td>Were you surprised by the news?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will . . . come</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did . . . throw</td>
<td>the ball</td>
<td>Was the ball thrown by Bob?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>told</td>
<td>the story</td>
<td>The story was told by an old man.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rain</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ø</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 5, p. 91.**

1. You will be met at the airport by my uncle.
2. (no change)
3. (no change)
4. (no change)
5. The food will be prepared by the chef.
6. (no change)
7. (no change)
8. The subway is ridden by thousands of people every day.
9. (no change)
10. (no change)
11. (no change)
12. The phone was answered by the office manager.

**PRACTICE 6, p. 92.**

1. will be notified
2. didn’t remember
3. is being restored
4. was built
5. was ruled . . . walked . . . stood
6. is visited
7. do not use
8. do not agree
9. will be invaded / are going to be invaded
10. live . . . lives
11. Had you already been accepted
12. was being followed . . . felt
13. was felt
14. died
15. is influenced
16. was stolen . . . was caught
**PRACTICE 8, p. 94.**
1. (I.o. = Jack) Jack is going to be served breakfast in bed on his birthday.
2. (I.o. = Mike) Mike had been offered the opportunity to study abroad.
3. (I.o. = babysitters) Babysitters aren’t paid a lot of money.
4. (I.o. = me) When I was living in Kuwait, I was taught Arabic by my neighbor.
5. (I.o. = Jason) Jason was awarded a medal for distinguished service in the military.
6. (I.o. = you) You will be sent a copy of the sales contract by the real estate office.
7. (I.o. = me) I was handed a telegram when I answered the door.
8. (I.o. = the schoolchildren) The schoolchildren are going to be given a special tour of the modern art exhibit by the director of the museum, Ms. Cynthia Hall.
9. (I.o. = Mr. French) Mr. French was given a gold watch upon his retirement from the company.

**PRACTICE 9, p. 94.**
1. will be told
2. completed
3. was assisted
4. applied . . . was hired
5. lie . . . are fed
6. will probably be eroded or: is probably going to be eroded
7. were introduced . . . were eaten . . . are exported . . . are enjoyed
8. is going to be interviewed (or: will be interviewed) . . . has collected
9. have complained . . . has been done [so far = until now]
10. went . . . had piled . . . had been shoved
11. are intimidated . . . buy
12. put . . . sold . . . was bought . . . was/had been looking . . . had already been sold
13. was invented . . . has assisted
14. occurred . . . were crossing . . . were swept . . . left . . . were found . . . were/had been seriously injured . . . took

**PRACTICE 10, p. 96.**
1. redecorated
2. threading
3. smuggled
4. dragged
5. exposed
6. scrubbing
7. wound
8. broadcast
9. shoved
10. financed
11. leaning
12. mixed
13. stretched
14. bred

**PRACTICE 11, p. 97.**
1. memorized
2. photographing
3. equipped
4. destroyed
5. rubbing
6. whispering
7. erased
8. performed
9. predicting
10. vaccinated
11. rehearsing
12. billed (= The dentist will send him a bill.)

**PRACTICE 12, p. 97.**
1. Pandas should be saved from extinction.
2. All traffic laws must be obeyed.
3. This broken window ought to be repaired.
4. The hotel guests should have been supplied with clean towels.
5. This garbage had better be taken to the dump soon.
6. Tomatoes can be picked before they are completely ripe.
7. The profits are supposed to be divided among the shareholders.
8. Bob’s feelings must have been hurt.
9. This work has to be finished today.
10. The accident ought to have been reported to the police.
11. Fresh bananas shouldn’t be put in the freezer.

**PRACTICE 13, p. 98.**
1. be told
2. repeated
3. be wrapped
4. forgotten
5. been discovered
6. been replaced
7. been replaced
8. cost
9. whisper
10. be polluted
11. be considered
12. be worn
13. be signed
14. read
◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 99.
1. be obtained
2. been won
3. scrub
4. be taught
5. been vaccinated
6. replied
7. been stopped
8. be revised
9. trade
10. participate
11. be established
12. eat
13. be distinguished
14. be killed

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 101.
1. are excited
2. are covered
3. is cracked
4. are exhausted
5. Are ... finished
6. was insured
7. is polluted
8. is closed
9. is stuck
10. is dressed
11. am ... confused
12. are buried

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 102.
1. is located
2. are summarized
3. isn't listed
4. is forbidden
5. am ... acquainted
6. is scheduled
7. is overdrawn
8. is cancel(l)ed [canceled; = American; cancelled = British]
9. is wrinkled [iron = press]
10. are equipped [automobile = American; motor car = British]
11. is made
12. is clogged

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 103.
1. with 11. for
2. for 12. to
3. in 13. at/with
4. with 14. with
5. to 15. of
6. with 16. to
7. against 17. with ... about
8. of 18. to
9. with 19. from
10. in/with ... with 20. of

◇ PRACTICE 18, p. 104.
1. concerned about
2. explaining
3. known for
4. provided with
5. laughing
6. satisfied with
7. connected to
8. crossing
9. involved in
10. composed of
11. accompanying
12. blessed with
13. limited to
14. annoyed at/with
15. blowing

◇ PRACTICE 19, p. 105.
1. got torn
2. get broken
3. got lost
4. got hired
5. get hurt
6. was getting worried
7. got ... soaked
8. get started
9. got buried
10. got stuck

◇ PRACTICE 20, p. 106.
1. got hit
2. get accepted
3. got cheated
4. got fired
5. got mugged [to mug = to rob; scruffy = unkempt, dirty]
6. get invited
7. get dressed
8. got caught
9. got elected
10. get electrocuted
11. got ruined
12. got embarrassed

◇ PRACTICE 21, p. 107.
1. (a) interesting (b) interested
2. (a) irritating (b) irritated
3. (a) tired (b) tiring
4. (a) boiling (b) boiled
5. (a) upset (b) upsetting
6. (a) confusing (b) confused
7. (a) disappointing (b) disappointed
8. (a) reassuring (b) re assured
9. (a) frustrating (b) frustrated
10. (a) disturbing (b) disturbed
11. (a) convincing (b) convinced
12. (a) moving (b) moved
13. (a) shocking (b) shocked
14. (a) depressed (b) depressing
15. (a) humiliated (b) humiliating
16. (a) intriguing (b) intrigued

◇ PRACTICE 22, p. 108.
1. running
2. invited
3. suggested
4. written
5. exhausting
6. stimulating
7. spoken
Chapter 12: NOUN CLAUSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 116.
1. Q (?)
2. N.Cl. ( )
3. Q (?)
4. N.Cl. ( )
5. Q (?)
6. N.Cl. ( )
7. N.Cl. ( )
8. Q (?)
9. Q (?)
10. N.Cl. (?) [Note: who she is is a noun clause; the whole sentence is a question.]
11. Q (?)
12. N.Cl. ( )

1. Where (?)
2. I don't know ( )
3. I don't know ( )
4. What (?)
5. How (?)
6. I don't know ( )
7. Where (?)
8. I don't know ( )
9. I don't know ( )
10. Why (?)
11. I don't know ( )
12. Who (?)
13. When (?)
14. I don't know ( )
15. Who (?)
16. I don't know ( )

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 117.
1. Who is that man? ... who that man is.
2. Where does George live? ... where George lives.
4. How far is it to Denver from here? ... how far it is to Denver from here.
5. Why was Jack late to class? ... why Jack was late to class.
6. Whose pen is that? ... whose pen that is.
7. Who(m) did Alex see at the meeting? ... who(m) Alex saw at the meeting.
8. Who saw Ms. Frost at the meeting? ... who saw Ms. Frost at the meeting.
10. When/What time is the plane supposed to land? ... when/what time the plane is supposed to land.

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 118.
1. A: Where does Fred live?
   B: ( . . . ) wants to know where Fred lives.
2. A: What time is it?
   B: ( . . . ) wants to know what time it is.
3. A: What does Tom want for his birthday?
   B: ( . . . ) wants to know what Tom wants for his birthday.
   C: He wants a watch.
4. A: How does Jane get to school?
   B: ( . . . ) wants to know how Jane gets to school.
   C: By bus.
5. A: When does vacation start?
B: . . . wants to know when vacation starts.
C: On June 3rd [= third].
6. A: Why did Sue leave class early?
B: . . . wants to know why Sue left class early.
C: Because she didn’t feel well.
7. A: How long is the movie going to last?
B: . . . wants to know how long the movie is going to last.
C: Two hours and ten minutes
8. A: Who(m) did Mary call?
B: . . . wants to know who(m) Mary called.
C: Jim.
9. A: Who called Jim?
B: . . . wants to know who called Jim.
C: Mary.
10. A: What did Alice talk to the teacher about?
B: . . . wants to know what Alice talked to the teacher about.
C: The test.
11. A: Who(m) did Alice talk to about the test?
   (Formal: To whom did Alice talk about the test?)
   B: ( . . . ) wants to know who(m) Alice talked to about the test.
   (Formal: ( . . . ) wants to know to whom Alice talked about the test.)
C: The teacher.
12. A: Who talked to the teacher about the test?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know who talked to the teacher about the test.
C: Alice.
13. A: When/At what time will Sue’s plane arrive?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know when/at what time Sue’s plane will arrive.
C: At 8:05.
14. A: How many students will be absent from class tomorrow?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know how many students will be absent from class tomorrow.
C: Two.
15. A: How many lakes are there in Minnesota?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know how many lakes there are in Minnesota.
C: 10,000.
16. A: How far/How many miles is it to Springfield from here?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know how far/many miles it is to Springfield from here.
C: 25.
17. A: What did Jane do last night?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know what Jane did last night.
C: Studied.
18. A: Which book are we supposed to buy?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know which book we’re supposed to buy.
C: This book.
19. A: What kind of ice cream does Ann like the best?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know what kind of ice cream Ann likes the best.
C: Chocolate.
20. A: What color is a robin’s egg?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know what color a robin’s egg is.
C: Turquoise blue. [TURQUOISE is pronounced /tärkwis/]
21. A: Who is that woman?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know who that woman is.
C: Mrs. Anderson.
22. A: Who is talking on the telephone?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know who is talking on the telephone.
C: Mr. Anderson.
23. A: Whose notebook is that?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know whose notebook that is.
C: Sam’s.
24. A: Whose car was stolen?
B: ( . . . ) wants to know whose car was stolen.
C: Jessica’s.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 119.
1. A: he’s looking for
B: are you looking for
2. A: did he decide
B: he decided
3. A: is this
B: it is
4. A: did he buy
B: he bought
5. A: John’s tutor is
B: is John’s tutor
6. A: didn’t you study
B: I didn’t study

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 120.
1. if/whether it will rain
2. when it will rain
3. if/whether Sam is
4. where Sam is
5. if/whether Jane called
6. what time she called
7. why the earth is called
8. how far it is
9. if/whether Susan has ever been
10. if/whether she speaks
11. who Ann played
12. who won
13. if/whether Ann won
14. if/whether all creatures, including fish and insects, feel
15. if/whether birds can communicate
16. how birds communicate
17. where the nearest post office is
18. if/whether there is a post office

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 122.
1. where to buy
2. whether to stay . . . go
3. how to fix
4. whether (or not) to look
5. where to get
6. whether (or not) to go
7. what time to pick
8. who to talk
9. whether to take . . . to do
10. how to solve
11. where to tell
12. how long to cook
13. what to wear
14. how much coffee to make
15. which essay to use
16. whether to take . . . travel . . . (to) keep . . . save
PRACTICE 8, p. 123.

1. It is surprising that no one stopped to help Sam when he had car trouble.
   That no one stopped to help Sam when he had car trouble is surprising.
2. It is unfortunate that people in modern cities are distrustful of each other.
   That people in modern cities are distrustful of each other is unfortunate.
3. It is still true that people in my village always help each other.
   That people in my village always help each other is still true.
4. It is undeniably true that people need each other and need to help each other.
   That people need each other and need to help each other is undeniably true.
5. It seems obvious to me that people have a moral duty to help others in need.
   That people have a moral duty to help others in need seems obvious to me.
6. It is a pity that people today are afraid to help strangers.
   That people today are afraid to help strangers is a pity.
7. It seems strange to me that people in cities live in densely populated areas but don't know their neighbors.
   That people in cities live in densely populated areas but don't know their neighbors seems strange to me.

PRACTICE 9, p. 123.

1. Regardless of the fact that I studied for three months for the examination, I barely passed.
2. There's nothing we can do about the fact that Jim lost our tickets to the concert.
3. The fact that we are going to miss one of the best concerts of the year because of Jim's carelessness makes me a little angry.
4. In view of the fact that we can't go to the concert, let's plan to go to a movie.
5. Except for the fact that I couldn't speak a word of Italian and understood very little, I had a wonderful time visiting my Italian cousins in Rome.
6. When I first visited Florida, I was surprised by the fact that many people living in Miami speak only Spanish.
7. The fact that Bobby broke my grandmother's antique flower vase isn't important.
8. The fact that he lied about it is what bothers me.
9. At first, some of us objected to the fact that Prof. Brown, who had almost no teaching experience, was hired to teach the advanced physics course, but she has proven herself to be one of the best.
10. I am impressed by the fact that automobile has the best safety record of any car manufactured this year and would definitely recommend that you buy that make.

PRACTICE 10, p. 124.

1. The athlete said, “Where is my uniform?”
2. “I can't remember,” Margaret said, “where I put my purse.”
3. Sandy asked her sister, “How can I help you get through this difficulty?”
4. “I'll answer your question later,” he whispered.
   “I'm trying to hear what the speaker is saying.”
5. As the students entered the room, the teacher said, “Please take your seats quickly.”
6. “Why did I ever take this job?” Barry wondered aloud.
7. After crashing into me and knocking all of my packages to the ground, the man stopped abruptly, turned to me, and said softly, “Excuse me.”
8. “Do we want four more years of corruption and debt?” the candidate shouted into the microphone.
   “No!” the crowd screamed.
9. The woman behind the fast-food counter shouted, “Who's next?”
   “I am,” three people replied at the same time.
   “Which one of you is really next?” she asked impatiently.
   “I was here first,” said a young woman elbowing her way up to the counter. “I want a hamburger.”
   “You were not!” hollered an older man standing next to her. “I was here before you were. Give me a chicken sandwich and a cup of coffee.”
   “Wait a minute! I was in line first,” said a young man. “Give me a cheesburger and a chocolate shake.”
   The woman behind the restaurant counter spotted a little boy politely waiting his turn. She turned to him and said, “Hi, Sonny. What can I get for you?”

PRACTICE 11, p. 126.

1. was
2. needed
3. was having
4. had finished
5. had finished
6. would arrive
7. was going to be/would be
8. could solve
9. might come
10. might come
11. had to leave
12. had to leave
13. should go
14. ought to go
15. to stay
16. not to move
17. was
18. had arrived

PRACTICE 12, p. 126.

1. if/whether she was planning
2. what time the movie begins
3. if/whether we could still get
4. how he can help
5. if/whether he could help
6. when the final decision would be made
7. where she had been
8. what Kim's native language is
9. what the problem was
10. if/whether I was doing
11. when this terrible drought is going
12. what time he had
13. who(m) she should give the message to
14. (that) we would be leaving
15. why we hadn't called
Chapter 13: ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

◇ PRACTICE 1, p. 135.
1. a. that are marked with a small red dot
   b. which are marked with a small red dot
2. a. who sits at the first desk on the right
   b. that sits at the first desk on the right
3. a. that I bought
   b. which I bought
   c. I bought
4. a. that I met at the meeting
   b. who(m) I met at the meeting
   c. I met at the meeting
5. a. we listened to last night
   b. that we listened to last night
   c. which we listened to last night
   d. to which we listened last night
6. a. I told you about
   b. who(m) I told you about
   c. that I told you about
   d. about whom I told you
7. whose parents you just met
8. who played at the concert last night
9. a waiter has to serve
10. Bob recommended
11. whose book on time and space has been translated into dozens of languages
12. who lives next door to us

◇ PRACTICE 2, p. 136.
1. who(m)/that/Ø
2. who/that
3. which/that/Ø
4. which
5. who(m)/that/Ø
6. who/that
7. whose
8. whom
9. which/that

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 137.
1. which/that
2. who/that
3. which/that
4. which/that
5. who/that
6. which/that/Ø
7. who(m)/that/Ø
8. which/that/Ø
9. which
10. which/that/Ø
11. whom
12. who(m)/that/Ø

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 138.
1. Louis knows the woman who/that is meeting us at the airport.
2. The chair which/that/Ø Sally inherited from her grandmother is an antique.
3. The bench which/that/Ø I sat on was wet. OR: The bench on which I sat was wet.
4. The man who(m)/that/Ø I hired to paint my house finished the job in four days.

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 129.
1. organize 6. take
2. be divided 7. be
3. call 8. be mailed
4. be told 9. obey
5. open 10. be given

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 130.
1. whenever 6. who(m)ever
2. wherever 7. whichever
3. whatever 8. Whoever
4. whichever 9. whatever
5. whatever 10. wherever

2. C 12. A
5. A 15. D
6. A 16. B
7. D 17. C
8. D 18. C
9. A 19. A

◇ PRACTICE 17. Test B, p. 133.
1. A 11. D
2. C 12. D
5. C 15. A
7. B 17. B
8. C 18. C
9. C 19. A
10. A 20. C

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 127.
1. knew ... had known ... wanted
2. still smoked ... had tried ... didn't seem
3. what the capital of Australia was/is ... wasn't ... thought it was
4. would be ... would ... left
5. was pouring ... had better take ... would stop ... didn't need
6. was going ... was ... asked/invited ... would like ... had ... had ... was ... could ... were
7. The passenger sitting next to me on the plane asked me where I was from. I told her I was from Chicago. She said that she was from Mapleton, a small town in northern Michigan. She wondered if I had heard of it, and I told her that I had. [British: had done] I went on to say that I thought Michigan was a beautiful state and explained that I had been there on vacation many times. She asked me if I had been in Michigan on vacation this year. I replied that I hadn't (been) and told her that I had gone far away, to India. Then she asked me if it was a long drive ...

www.ez-english.narod.ru
5. I miss seeing the old woman who/that used to sell flowers on that street corner.
6. The architect who(m)/that/whom Mario works with is brilliant. OR: The architect with whom Mario works is brilliant.
7. Mary tutors students who/that need extra help in geometry.
8. I took a picture of the rainbow which/that appeared in the sky after the shower.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 138.
1. Do you know the man whose car is parked over there?
2. I know a woman whose name is May Day.
3. The people whose home we visited were very hospitable.
4. The school principal walked down the hallway to find the boy whose parents had been injured in an automobile accident.
5. Mrs. Lake is the teacher whose class I enjoy the most.
6. Any company whose employees are in constant fear of losing their jobs is stifling the creativity of its workforce.

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 139.
1. That is the room where we have class.
2. That is the restaurant where we ate dinner.
3. That is the building where Anna works.
4. That is the year when I was born.
5. That is the cafeteria where you eat lunch.
6. That is the month when the monsoons arrive.
7. That is the street where Alex lives.
8. That is the island where you spent your vacation.
9. That is the lake where you went swimming.
10. That is the town where you grew up.
11. That is the day when the space flight to Mars is scheduled to leave.
12. That is the country where the earthquake occurred.
13. That is the room where the examination will be given.
14. That is the city where you lived until you were ten years old.
15. That is the time when you felt the happiest.

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 139.
1. A, D
2. B, C, D
3. C, D
4. B
5. D
6. B, C, D
7. A
8. C, D
9. B, C, D
10. B
11. A, D
12. A
13. A

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 140.
1. speak
2. speaks
3. are...don't
4. offers are
5. measures...walks
6. suffer
7. have
8. have
9. are
10. state...wish

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 140.
1. NO
2. YES...I made an appointment with Dr. Raven, who is considered an expert on eye disorders.
3. NO
4. NO
5. YES...Bogota, which is the capital of Colombia, is a cosmopolitan city.
6. YES...They climbed Mount Rainier, which is in the state of Washington, twice last year.
7. YES...Emeralds, which are valuable gemstones, are mined in Colombia.
8. YES...The company offered the position to John, whose department performed best this year.
9. YES...On our trip to Africa we visited Nairobi, which is near several fascinating game reserves, and then traveled to Egypt to see the pyramids.
10. NO
11. NO
12. YES...Larry was very close to his only brother, who was a famous social historian.
13. NO
14. NO
15. YES...A typhoon, which is a violent tropical storm, can cause great destruction.
16. NO

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 141.
1. A
2. A, D
3. C
4. A
5. A, B, D, E
6. B
7. A
8. C
9. A, D
10. A

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 142.
1. a
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. b
6. a
7. b
8. a

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 143.
1. YES...Thirty people, two of whom were members of the crew, were killed in the ferry accident.
2. NO
3. YES...Over 500 students took the entrance examination, the results of which will be posted in the administration building at the end of the month.
4. NO
5. NO
6. YES...The new supervisor was not happy with his work crew, none of whom seemed interested in doing quality work.
7. YES...My oldest brother, in whose house I lived for six months when I was ten, has been a father to me in many ways.
8. YES...Tom is always interrupting me, which makes me mad.
9. YES...To express the uselessness of worrying, Mark Twain once said, "I've had a lot of problems in my life, most of which never happened."

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 143.
1. . . . offers, neither of which I accepted.
2. . . . three brothers, two of whom are professional athletes.
3. . . . business ventures, only one of which is profitable.
4. . . . fifty states, the majority of which are located . . . .
5. The two women, both of whom are changing careers, have already dissolved . . . .
6. . . . success, much of which has been due to hard work, but some of which has been due to good luck.

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 143.
1. Only a few of the movies shown at the Grey Theater are suitable for children.
2. We visited Madrid, the capital of Spain.
3. The couple living in the house next door are both college professors.
4. Astronomy, the study of planets and stars, is one of the world’s oldest sciences.
5. Only a small fraction of the eggs laid by a fish actually hatch and survive to adulthood.
6. Jasmine, a viviparous plant with fragrant flowers, grows only in warm places.
7. Arizona, once thought to be a useless desert, is today a rapidly growing industrial and agricultural state.
8. Simon Bolivar, a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.
9. In hot weather, many people enjoy lemonade, a drink made from lemon juice, water, and sugar.
10. I was awakened by the sound of laughter coming from the room next to mine at the motel.
11. Few tourists ever see a jaguar, a spotted cat native to tropical America.

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 144.
1. A national holiday has been established in memory of Martin Luther King, Jr., the leader of the civil rights movement in the United States in the 1950s and 1960s.
2. Neil Armstrong, the first person to set foot on the moon, reported that the surface was fine and powdery.
3. Mark Twain is an author known far and wide as one of the greatest American humorists. (no commas)
4. Susan B. Anthony, one of the first leaders of the campaign for women’s rights, worked tirelessly during her lifetime to gain the right to vote for women.

◊ PRACTICE 16, p. 144.
1. Louisville, the largest city in Kentucky, was founded in 1778.
2. John Quincy Adams, the sixth president of the United States, was born on July 11, 1767.
3. Two languages, Finnish and Swedish, are used in Helsinki, the capital of Finland.
4. The Washington National Monument, a towering obelisk made of white marble, is a famous landmark in the nation’s capital.
5. Honolulu, best known to the traveler for Waikiki Beach, has consistently pleasant weather.
6. Libya, a country in North Africa, is a leading producer of oil.

◊ PRACTICE 17, p. 145.
1. None of the pedestrians walking up and down the busy street stopped to help or even inquire about the elderly man stumped in the doorway of an apparently unoccupied building.
2. Food passing from the mouth to the stomach goes through a tube called the esophagus.
3. Animals born in a zoo generally adjust to captivity better than those captured in the wild.
4. The children attended a special movie program consisting of cartoons featuring Donald Duck and Mickey Mouse.
5. One of the most important foodstuffs in the world is flour, a fine powder made by grinding wheat or other grains.
6. Nero, Emperor of Rome from A.D. 54 to 68, is believed to have murdered both his mother and his wife.
7. The conclusion presented in that book states that most of the automobiles produced by American industry in the 1960s and ’70s had some defect.
8. Pictures showing the brutality of war entered the living rooms of millions of TV watchers on the nightly news.
9. The Indians living in Peru before the discovery of the New World by Europeans belonged to the Incan culture.
10. My uncle Elias, a restaurant owner, often buys fish and shellfish from boats docked at the local pier.
11. Customers come from miles around to dine on a seafood feast considered to be the best in all of the northeastern United States.
12. Researchers have developed a way to mark genes so that they glow in the dark, a technique that scientists can use to follow specific genetic activity of cells within plants and animals. This development, announced by the National Science Foundation, the sponsor of the research, should prove useful to scientists studying the basic functions of organisms.

◊ PRACTICE 18, p. 146.
1. . . . a lot of people waiting in a long line . . . .
2. Students who live on campus . . . . OR: Students (omit who) living on campus . . . .
3. . . . the librarian who/that sits at . . . . OR: the librarian sitting at . . . .
4. . . . sister is Anna, who is 21 years old. OR: sister, Anna, is 21 years old.
5. . . . in Sapporo, which is a city . . . . OR: . . . in Sapporo, (omit that is) a city . . . .
6. Patrick, who is my oldest brother, is married and . . . . OR: Patrick, my oldest brother, is married and . . . .
7. The person who sits/sitting next to me is someone who(m)/that/I’ve never met (omit him).
8. . . . a small city (omit is) located . . . . OR: . . . a small city which/that is located . . . .
9. Last Saturday, I attended a party given by one of my friends. My friend, whose apartment is in another town, was very glad that I could come.
10. Dr. Darnell was the only person who(m)/that/I wanted to see.
11. There are eighty students from all over the world studying English at this school. OR: . . . students from all over the world who study . . . . (no commas)
12. The people who(m)/that/I we met on our trip last May are going to visit us in October.

ANSWER KEY Chapter 13  21
PRACTICE 5, p. 153.
2. B 12. A
3. A 13. A
4. A 14. A
5. B 15. B
7. A 17. B
9. B 19. A
10. A 20. A

PRACTICE 6, p. 154.
1. asked Jim to give
2. were warned not to park
3. reminded him to brush
4. are required to wear
5. advised me to consult
6. was ordered to leave
7. were expected to complete
8. reminded my husband to buy
9. advised me to get
10. were warned not to be
11. is permitted to use
12. asked her father to buy
13. encouraged our grandfather to write
14. was ordered not to shout

PRACTICE 7, p. 155.
1. During the water shortage, the public was asked to curtail its use of water as much as possible.
2. Laura reminded her roommate not to forget to set her alarm clock for 6:00.
3. Mrs. Jones allowed each of the children to have one piece of candy.
4. The doctors advised my father to limit his sugar consumption.
5. My parents often encouraged me to be independent.
6. The children were warned not to swim in the lake without an adult present.
7. The police officer ordered the reckless driver to pull over.
8. Rose invited Jerry to come to her house Sunday night to meet her parents.

PRACTICE 8, p. 156.
2. A, B 15. B
3. A, B 16. A
4. A, B 17. B
5. A, B 18. A
7. A, B 20. A
8. B 21. A
10. A, B 23. A
11. A 24. B

PRACTICE 9, p. 157.
(The answers are included in the Practice.)

PRACTICE 10, p. 158.
1. to refund 14. singing
2. to be 15. avoiding
3. to buy 16. to count
4. throwing 17. painting
5. to get 18. to get
6. to wear 19. paying
7. to visit 20. to keep
8. to be 21. taking
9. thinking 22. to know
10. to attend 23. moving
11. to leave 24. to watch
12. to cut 25. to keep
13. to ignore

PRACTICE 11, p. 160.
1. to operate 14. to see
2. to shoot 15. to go
3. having 16. taking
4. to go 17. to speak
5. getting 18. receiving
6. to attend 19. to meet
7. to come 20. getting
8. to turn 21. staying
9. to tell 22. to apologize
10. practicing 23. to obey
11. to clean 24. seeing
12. reading 25. to take
13. sending

PRACTICE 12, p. 161.
5. B 10. A 15. B

PRACTICE 13, p. 162.
1. playing
2. (someone) to save
3. telling
4. to get
5. someone to take
6. staying
7. (someone) not to buy
8. giving
9. going
10. travel((ing
11. taking
12. (someone) to go swimming
13. being
14. hearing
15. to tell
16. being
17. eating
18. to know
19. to get
20. saying
21. seeing
22. (someone) to give
23. to hire someone to work

ANSWER KEY Chapter 14 23
24. to tell someone to be/telling someone to be [with different meanings]
25. (someone) to practice speaking
26. (someone) to keep trying to call

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 163.
1. It is cruel to tease animals.
2. Finding their house wasn't difficult.
3. It is important to vote in every election.
4. Meeting the king and queen was exciting.
5. It would be interesting to hear the other side of the story.
6. Seeing Joan awake early in the morning is unusual.
7. If you know how, floating in the water for a long time is easy.
8. It takes time and patience to master a second language.
9. It will take us ten hours to drive to Atlanta.
10. Diving into the sea from a high cliff takes courage.

Chapter 15: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES,
PART 2

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 164.
1. Ø
2. in order
3. in order
4. in order
5. Ø
6. Ø
7. in order
8. in order
9. Ø
10. in order
11. in order
12. Ø . . . Ø

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 165.
Possible completions:
1. to get
2. to find out
3. to be
4. to fight
5. to go
6. to stay . . . (to) read
7. to help
8. to learn
9. to slip
10. to walk
11. to walk
12. to be
13. to see
14. to hear

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 165.
1. very
2. too
3. too
4. very
5. too
6. too
7. very
8. too
9. very
10. very
11. very . . . too
12. too
13. very
14. too
15. too

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 166.
1. I didn't have enough time to finish my work yesterday.
2. Linda isn't well enough to go back to work.
3. Scissors are too sharp for very young children to use.
4. The streets in the old part of the city are too narrow for two-way traffic.
5. Jimmy isn't old enough to ride on the bus by himself.
6. Jules had to rewrite his composition because he made too many careless mistakes in grammar and spelling in the first one.
7. There aren't enough seats in the classroom for everyone assigned to this class.
8. We couldn't go to the musical because we waited too long to call the box office for tickets.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 166.
1. B
2. A
3. B
4. B

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 167.
1. B
2. A
3. B
4. B
5. A

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 167.
1. B
2. D
3. A
4. C
5. B
6. A
7. B
8. A
9. C
10. D
11. A
12. A
13. B
14. B
15. D

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 169.
1. B
2. D
3. D
4. C
5. B
6. A
7. A

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 169.
1. to be told
2. having written (also possible: writing)
3. being asked/having been asked
4. to have been given
5. being photographed
6. to have had
7. to be sent
8. to be told
9. to have recovered . . . to be
10. having had
◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 170.
1. My mother was angry about my losing (or: having lost) my new watch.
2. We look forward to their spending their vacation with us.
3. No one can understand Tony’s failing (or: having failed) the economics test even though . . .
4. I am upset about the students being required to pay an extra fee to use the laboratory.
5. The supervisor appreciated Mary’s working (or: having worked) late to finish the project.

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 170.
1. D
2. A
3. C
4. A
5. A
6. D
7. B
8. C
9. D
10. B

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 172.
1. practice
2. prevent
3. win
4. arrive
5. emerge (also possible: emerging)
6. perform (also possible: performing)
7. climb (also possible: climbing)
8. chirp (also possible: chirping)
9. explain
10. melt

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 173.
1. C
2. A, B
3. A
4. A
5. C
6. B
7. A
8. A, B
9. A
10. A

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 173.
1. B
2. A
3. B
4. C
5. C
6. D
7. D
8. B
9. B
10. C
11. B
12. A
13. A
14. C
15. D
16. D
17. D
18. B
19. D
20. C

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 175.
1. to buy
2. opening
3. being asked
4. having
5. to wear . . . dressing
6. jumping . . . falling
7. being taken
8. to stop delivering . . . to fill
9. gazing . . . (in order) to cheer
10. having
11. being
12. to move
13. to help . . . resolve/to resolve . . . not to interfere
14. to apply
15. to learn . . . to discover . . . promoting
16. reminding . . . to lock . . . trying to remember
17. asking . . . forgetting
18. not to sign
19. notifying . . . to call
20. play
21. burning . . . coming
22. to be . . . (to) listen
23. thinking
24. tear
25. doing
26. going
27. to be admitted
28. take
29. translate
30. to say . . . understand
31. to begin
32. to be done
33. to discover
34. put
35. feel . . . to be intimidated
36. failing
37. twiddling
38. draw
39. laugh
40. open
41. sleeping
42. to pay
43. being . . . to expect
44. lying

◊ PRACTICE 16, p. 178.
1. to have . . . built . . . to do
2. watch . . . practice . . . finding
3. hearing . . . play . . . forgetting . . . making . . . to relax . . . enjoy
4. wasting . . . to fail . . . doing
5. Attending . . . embarrassing . . . to hide . . . get [parallel infinitives] . . . leave
6. recalling . . . being chosen . . . looking . . . laughing . . . acting . . . playing . . . being . . . achieving
7. cleaning/to be cleaned . . . sweeping/to be swept . . . washing/to be washed . . . dusting/to be dusted . . . Reading . . . doing
8. having been given . . . forming . . . to accept . . . going . . . being . . . having been exposed
9. Finding . . . to be . . . being exposed . . . staying . . . to avoid . . . to minimize . . . getting . . . to get . . . eat [parallel infinitives] . . . taking . . . to prevent catching
10. being inconvenienced or hurt [parallel passive gerunds] . . . to remind . . . to remove . . . to turn . . . to buckle [*buckle up* = connect one’s seat belt] . . . to shut . . . to fill . . . to forget to do . . . driving . . . (to) avoid making . . . being instructed . . . to perform . . . being reminded to carry
Chapter 16: COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Practical Exercise 1, p. 185.
1. fresh and sweet
2. apples and pears
3. washed and dried
4. am washing and drying
5. happily and quickly
6. hiring and tasting
7. to bite and (to) taste
8. delicious but expensive
9. apples, pears, and bananas
10. red, ripe, and juicy

Practical Exercise 2, p. 185.
1. (no commas)
2. Jack was calm, quiet,* and serene.
3. (no commas)
4. The children sang, danced,* and played games.
5. (no commas)
6. Tom, Taria,* and Francisco joined in the soccer game.
7. I told the children to sit down, be quiet,* and open their reading books.
8. (no commas)
9. (no commas)
10. Our waitress's tray held two cups of coffee, three glasses of water,* and one glass of orange juice.
11. (no commas)
12. (no commas)[Answer to question: larger]

Practical Exercise 3, p. 186.
1. I: for his intelligence, cheerful disposition, and honesty
2. C: was a lawyer and a politician
3. I: smoothly and quietly

Practical Exercise 4, p. 187.
1. C: Barb studies . . . and works
2. C: is plentiful and relatively inexpensive
3. I: enjoy visiting Disneyland and touring movie studios
4. C: are usually interested in but a little frightened by
5. I: Painting can result from either a lack of oxygen or a loss of blood
6. I: how to write . . . organize . . . , and summarize
7. C: not coffee but chocolate
8. I: Not only universities but also many government agencies support medical research.
9. C: explains why water freezes and how the sun produces heat
10. C: need light, a suitable climate, and an ample supply (also possible: of water and minerals)
11. G: With their keen sight, fine hearing, and refined sense of smell (also possible: of elk, deer, moose, or caribou) (also possible: of elk, deer, moose, or caribou)
12. C: is always understanding, patient, and sensitive
13. C: Not only the post office but also all banks close
14. I: Walking briskly for 30 minutes or running for 15 minutes

Practical Exercise 5, p. 187.
1. knows
2. know
3. knows
4. know
5. know
6. wants
7. like
8. has
9. agrees
10. are
11. realizes
12. think

Practical Exercise 6, p. 188.
1. Many people drink neither coffee nor alcohol.
2. Barbara is fluent in not only Chinese but also Japanese. OR: . . . not only in Chinese but also in Japanese.
3. I'm sorry to say that Paul has neither patience nor sensitivity to others.
4. She can both sing and dance.
5. . . . you should talk to either your teacher or your academic counselor. OR: . . . talk either to your teacher or to your academic counselor.
6. Diana is both intelligent and very creative.
7. You may begin working either tomorrow or next week.
8. Michael told neither his mother nor his father . . . .
9. . . . requires not only balance and skill but also concentration and mental alertness.

Practical Exercise 7, p. 189.
1. . . . cooking. My wife . . . .
2. . . . cooking, (optional comma) but my wife . . . .
3. . . . that book. It's very good.
4. . . . that book, but I didn't like it.

* The comma before and in a series is optional.
5. (Add no punctuation.)
6. . . . the door. My sister answered . . . .
7. . . . the door, (optional comma)
8. . . . materials. They are found in rocks and soil.
9. . . . are minerals. They are found in rocks, soil, and water.
10. . . . by plane, (optional comma) or you can go . . . .
11. (Add no punctuation.)
12. . . . all night, so he declined . . . .
13. . . . invitation to dinner. He needed to . . . .
14. . . . howling outside, yet it was warm . . . .
15. . . . answer the phone, for I didn’t want . . . .
16. . . . went camping. It rained the entire time.
17. . . . under construction, so we had to take . . . .
18. . . . win the championship, yet our team won . . . .
19. . . . at the theater late, but the play had not yet begun. We were quite surprised.
20. . . . from one central place. Most central heating systems service only one building, but some systems heat a group of buildings, such as those at a military base, a campus, or an apartment complex.

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 189.

I spent yesterday with my brother. We had a really good time. He’s visiting me for a couple of days, so I decided not to go to work yesterday. We spent the day in the city. First I took him to the waterfront. We went to the aquarium, where we saw fearsome sharks, some wonderfully funny marine mammals, (optional comma) and all kinds of tropical fish. After the aquarium, we went downtown to a big mall and went shopping. My brother doesn’t like to shop as much as I do, so we didn’t stay there long.

I had trouble thinking of a place to take him for lunch, for he’s a strict vegetarian. Luckily I finally remembered a restaurant that has vegan food, so we went there and had a wonderful lunch of fresh vegetables and whole grains. I’m not a vegetarian, yet I must say that I really enjoyed the meal.

In the afternoon, (optional comma) it started raining, so we went to a movie. It was pretty good but had too much violence for me. I felt tense when we left the theater. I prefer comedies or dramas. My brother loved the movie.

We ended the day with a good homecooked meal and some good talk in my living room. It was a good day. I like spending time with my brother.

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 190.

Some of the most interesting working women of the American West in the nineteenth century were African-American women. Mary Fields was one of them. She had been born a slave in the mid-1800s in the South but moved west to the Rocky Mountains as a free woman in 1884. Her first job was hauling freight. She drove a wagon and delivered freight in the valleys and mountains of Montana. She was tall, strong, (optional comma) and fast on the draw. She didn’t hesitate to protect her wagon of goods with her gun.

She drove a freight wagon for many years. Then in her late fifties, (optional comma) she opened a restaurant, but her business failed. In her sixties, (optional comma) she became a stagecoach driver carrying the U.S. mail. Because of outlaws, driving a mailcoach was dangerous, yet her mailcoach always arrived safely. In her seventies, (optional comma) she opened her own laundry business. She continued successfully in that business until her death in 1914.

Mary Fields deserves our respect and can be seen as a role model for young women, for she rose above unfortunate circumstances and became a determined, hardworking, (optional comma) and successful businesswoman.

Chapter 17: ADVERB CLAUSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 191.

1. We’ll all take a walk in the park after Dad finishes working on the car.
   After Dad finishes working on the car, we’ll all take a walk in the park.
2. Since Douglas fell off his bicycle last week, he has had to use crutches to walk.
   Douglas has had to use crutches to walk since he fell off his bicycle last week.
3. Because I already had my boarding pass, I didn’t have to stand in line at the airline counter.
   I didn’t have to stand in line at the airline counter because I already had my boarding pass.
4. Productivity in a factory increases if the workplace is made pleasant.
   If the workplace is made pleasant, productivity in a factory increases.
5. After Ceylon had been independent for 24 years, the country’s name was changed to Sri Lanka.
   Ceylon’s name was changed to Sri Lanka after the country had been independent for 24 years.
6. Ms. Johnson regularly returns her e-mail messages as soon as she has some free time from her principal duties.
   As soon as Ms. Johnson has some free time from her principal duties, she regularly returns her e-mail messages.
7. Tariq will be able to work more efficiently once he becomes familiar with the new computer program.
   Once Tariq becomes familiar with the new computer program, he will be able to work more efficiently.
8. When the flooding river raced down the valley, it destroyed everything in its path.
   The flooding river destroyed everything in its path when it raced down the valley.
PRACTICE 2, p. 191.
1. The lake was calm, Tom went fishing.
2. Because the lake was calm, Tom went fishing.
3. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm. He caught two fish.
4. Tom went fishing because the lake was calm and caught two fish.
5. When Tom went fishing, the lake was calm. He caught two fish.
6. The lake was calm, so Tom went fishing. He caught two fish.
7. Because the lake was calm and quiet, Tom went fishing.
8. The lake was calm, quiet, and clear when Tom went fishing.
9. Mr. Hood is admired because he dedicated his life to helping the poor. He is well known for his work on behalf of homeless people.
10. Microscopes, automobile dashboards, and cameras are awkward for left-handed people to use. They are designed for right-handed people. When "lefties" use these items, they have to use their right hand to do the things that they would normally do with their left hand.

PRACTICE 3, p. 192.

PRACTICE 4, p. 193.
1. My registration was canceled because I didn't pay my fees on time. Because I didn't pay my fees on time, my registration was canceled.
2. Now that Erica has qualified for the Olympics in speedskating, she must train even more vigorously. Erica must train even more vigorously now that she has qualified for the Olympics in speedskating.
3. We decided not to buy the house on Fourth Street since it's directly below flight patterns from the nearby international airport. Since the house on Fourth Street is directly below flight patterns from the nearby international airport, we decided not to buy it.

PRACTICE 5, p. 193.
1. even though
2. because
3. Because
4. Even though
5. Even though
6. Because
7. even though
8. because
9. even though
10. because
11. Even though
12. because
13. Even though... because
14. even though... because

PRACTICE 6, p. 194.

PRACTICE 7, p. 194.
1. Let's not go to the park if it will rain tomorrow.
2. (no change)
3. (no change)
4. I'll send you an e-mail if I will have have some free time tomorrow.
5. If we don't leave within the next ten minutes, we will be late to the theater.
6. If we will leave within the next two minutes, we will make it to the theater on time.

PRACTICE 8, p. 194.
1. doesn't approve... approves
2. can afford... can't afford
3. is raining... isn't raining
4. don't understand... understand

PRACTICE 9, p. 195.
1. In case... with me, I'll .
2. We'll... in case you need to call us.
3. In case you find that you need help with it, she'll be .
4. My boss... in case the company .
5. In case I'm not back... dinner, I put the .
6. In the event that Janet... tomorrow she will .
7. You'd better... in the event that you run out of cash.
8. My family... the country in the event that there is civil war.
9. . . . safe side, I always... carry-on bag in the event that the airline loses my luggage.
10. She has already... speech in the event that she wins it tonight.

PRACTICE 10, p. 196.

PRACTICE 11, p. 196.
1. pass
2. not going to go
3. rains
4. only if
5. always eat
6. even if
7. won't
8. don't wake
9. if
10. Don't borrow
Diamond PRACTICE 12, p. 197.
1. Only if you help me can I finish this work on time.
2. If you help me, I can finish this work on time.
3. Only if I am invited will I go.
4. If I am invited, I will go.
5. Only if I am hungry do I eat.
6. If I am hungry during the morning, I usually eat some fruit.
7. Only if you know both Arabic and Spanish will you be considered for that job.
8. Only if the refrigerator is empty does John go to the market.
9. Only if you promise not to get angry will I tell you the truth about what happened.
10. If you can't learn to communicate your feelings, I won't marry you.

Diamond PRACTICE 13, p. 197.
1. B
2. C
3. D
4. A
5. B
6. C
7. D
8. C
9. B
10. A

Chapter 18: REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES

Diamond PRACTICE 1, p. 199.
1. Since opening . . .
2. . . . before leaving the room.
3. While herding his goats . . .
4. Before marching into battle . . .
5. After meeting/having met the movie star . . .
6. . . . keys after searching through . . .
7. When first brought . . .
8. Since (being) imported into Australia many years ago, the rabbit . . .

Diamond PRACTICE 2, p. 199.
1. While Sam was driving to work in the rain, his car got a flat tire.
   → (no change)
2. While Sam was driving to work, he had a flat tire.
   → While driving to work, Sam had a flat tire.
3. Before Nick left on his trip, his son gave him a big hug and a kiss.
   → (no change)
4. Before Nick left on his trip, he gave his itinerary to his secretary.
   → Before leaving on his trip, Nick gave . . .
5. After Tom had worked hard in the garden all afternoon, he took a shower and then went to the movies with his friends.
   → After having worked hard in the garden all afternoon, Tom took . . .
6. After Sunita had made a delicious chicken curry for her friends, they wanted the recipe.
   → (no change)
7. Before a friend tries to do something hard, an American may say “Break a leg!” to wish him or her good luck.
   → (no change)
8. Emily always straightens her desk before she leaves the office at the end of the day.
   → Emily always straightens her desk before leaving the office at the end of the day.

Diamond PRACTICE 3, p. 200.
1. a. leaving . . . b. left
2. a. invented/had invented . . . b. inventing/having invented
3. a. working . . . b. was working
4. a. flies . . . b. flying
5. a. studied/had studied . . . b. studying/having studied
6. a. learning . . . b. learned
7. a. is taken . . . b. taken
8. a. taking . . . b. take
9. a. was driving . . . b. driving

Diamond PRACTICE 4, p. 201.
1. Not wanting to disturb his sleeping wife, Larry tiptoed out of the room.
2. (no change)
3. Misunderstanding the directions to the hotel, I arrived one hour late for the dinner party.
4. (no change)
5. Misunderstanding my directions to the hotel, the taxi driver took me to the wrong place.
6. Remembering that she hadn’t turned off the oven, Ann went directly home.
7. (no change)
8. Living in the Pacific Northwest, where it rains a great deal, my family and I are accustomed to cool, damp weather.

Diamond PRACTICE 5, p. 201.
1. E
2. J
3. A
4. G
5. B
6. L
7. I
8. H
9. C
10. K
11. F
12. D

1. arriving at the airport
2. reaching the other side of the lake
3. investigating the cause
4. learning the problem was not at all serious
5. being told she got it

1. I
2. C
3. I
4. C
5. I

ANSWER KEY Chapter 18  29
1. B 11. A
2. D 12. D
3. C 13. C
4. C 14. A
5. C 15. B
6. A 16. D
7. D 17. B
8. B 18. A
10. D 20. C

Chapter 19: CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST, AND CONDITION

- Practice 1, p. 208.
  1. because of
  2. because
  3. because of
  4. because
  5. because of
  6. because
  7. because
  8. because of

- Practice 2, p. 208.
  1. because
  2. Therefore
  3. Therefore
  4. because
  5. Because
  6. therefore

- Practice 3, p. 209.
  Part I.
  1. Because
  2. ... rained. Therefore, we ...
  3. because of
  4. ... town. Therefore, all ...
  5. because of
  6. Because the hurricane ... town, all ...
  7. because of

  Part II.
  8. Due to his poor eyesight, John ...
  9. Since John has poor eyesight, he ...
  10. ... eyesight. Consequently, he ...
  11. ... heights. Consequently, she ...

  12. due to
  13. ... overweight. Consequently, his doctor ....
  14. Since a diamond ... hard, it can ...

- Practice 4, p. 209.
  1. Edward missed the final exam. Therefore, he failed the course. (also possible: ... exam; therefore, he failed ...)
  2. (no change)
  3. Edward missed the final exam. He simply forgot to go to it. (also possible: ... exam; he simply ...)
  4. Because we forgot to make a reservation, we couldn't get a table at our favorite restaurant last night.
  5. The waitress kept dropping trays full of dishes. Therefore, she was fired. (also possible: ... dishes; therefore, she was ...)
  6. The waiter kept forgetting customers' orders, so he was fired.
  7. (no change)
  8. The needle has been around since prehistoric times. The button was invented about 2000 years ago. The zipper wasn't invented until 1890.
  9. It is possible for wildlife observers to identify individual zebras because the patterns of stripes on each zebra are unique. No two zebras are alike. (also possible: ... are unique; no two zebras ...)
  10. (no change)

  1. such
  2. so
  3. so
  4. such
  5. such
  6. so
  7. so
  8. such
  9. so
  10. so

  1. It was such a nice day that we took a walk.
  2. The weather was so hot that you could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
  3. She talked so fast that I couldn't understand her.
  4. It was such an expensive car that we couldn't afford to buy it.
  5. We're having such beautiful weather that I don't feel like going to class.
  6. Grandpa held me so tightly when he hugged me that I couldn't breathe for a moment.
  7. There were so few people at the meeting that it was canceled.
  8. The classroom has such comfortable chairs that the students find it easy to fall asleep.
  9. Ted was so worried about the exam that he couldn't get to sleep last night.
  10. Jerry got so angry that he put his fist through the wall.
  11. I have so many problems that I can use all the help you can give me.
12. The tornado struck with such great force that it lifted automobiles off the ground.
13. His handwriting is so illegible that I can't figure out what this sentence says.
14. David has so many girlfriends that he can't remember all of their names.
15. So many people came to the meeting that there were not enough seats for everyone.

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 211.
1. Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.
2. Alex wrote down the time and date of his appointment so that he wouldn't forget to go.
3. Nancy is carrying extra courses every semester so that she can graduate early.
4. Jason is tired of work and school and is planning to take a semester off so that he can travel in Europe.
5. Suzanne lowered the volume on the TV set so that she wouldn't disturb her roommate.
6. Whenever we are planning a vacation, we call a travel agent so that we can get expert advice on our itinerary.
7. It's a good idea for you to learn how to type so that you can type your own papers when you go to the university.
8. Lynn tied a string around her finger so that she wouldn't forget to take her book back to the library.
9. Ed took some change from his pocket so that he could buy a newspaper.
10. I turned on the TV so that I could listen to the news while I was making dinner.
11. I unplugged the phone so that I wouldn't be interrupted while I was working.
12. Yesterday Linda was driving on the highway when her car started making strange noises. After she pulled over to the side of the road, she raised the hood of her car so that other drivers would know that she had car trouble.

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 212.
1. D  
6. C  
11. A
2. A  
7. A  
12. B
3. C  
8. C  
13. B
4. D  
9. B  
14. C
5. D  
10. C  
15. D

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 213.
1. Annie told the truth, but no one believed her.
2. Annie told the truth. However, no one believed her. (also possible: ... the truth; however, no one ...)
3. Even though Annie told the truth, no one believed her.
4. (no change)
5. Annie told the truth, yet no one believed her.
6. Annie told the truth. Nevertheless, no one believed her. (also possible: ... the truth; nevertheless, no one ...)
7. In spite of the fact that Annie told the truth, no one believed her.
8. (no change)

9. Even though all of my family friends have advised me not to travel abroad during this time of political turmoil, I'm leaving next week to begin a trip around the world.
10. Some people think great strides have been made in cleaning up the environment in much of the world. However, others think the situation is much worse than it was twenty years ago. (also possible: of the world; however, others think . . . .)

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 213.
1. a. Even though  
b. Despite  
c. Despite  
d. Despite  
e. Even though
2. a. In spite of  
b. Although  
c. Although  
d. In spite of  
e. In spite of
3. a. Despite  
b. Although  
c. Despite  
d. Although  
e. Despite
4. a. In spite of  
b. Even though  
c. in spite of  
d. even though  
e. in spite of
f. even though  
g. even though  
h. in spite of

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 215.
1. B  
6. H
2. E  
7. A
3. J  
8. G
4. F  
9. I
5. C  
10. D

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 216.
1. Red is bright and lively, while gray is a dull color. OR While red is bright and lively, gray is a dull color.
2. Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. Her sister, on the other hand, is full of self-confidence. (also possible: ... of herself; her sister, on the other hand, is . . . .) OR Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. On the other hand, her sister is full of self-confidence, or Jane is insecure and unsure of herself. Her sister is full of self-confidence, on the other hand.
3. A rock is heavy, while a feather is light. OR While a rock is heavy, a feather is light.
4. Some children are unruly, whereas others are quiet and obedient. OR Whereas some children are unruly, others are quiet and obedient.
5. Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. Math and science courses, on the other hand, are difficult for him. (also possible: ... for Alex; math and science courses, on the other hand, are difficult I ...) OR Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. On the other hand, math and science courses are difficult for him. OR Language and literature classes are easy and enjoyable for Alex. Math and science courses are difficult for him, on the other hand.

6. Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. However, strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy. (also possible: ... conditions; however, strikes can ... OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also, however, cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy. OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy, however. OR Strikes can bring improvements in wages and working conditions. Strikes can also cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy, however, cause loss of jobs and bankruptcy.

7. Therefore
8. on the other hand/however
9. because of/due to
10. Although/Even though
11. because/since
12. Even though/Although
13. because of/due to
14. Therefore
15. Although/Even though (also possible: While)
16. Because/Since

8. Maria had better (should/has to/must) find a way to convince the boss that the error was unavoidable. Otherwise, she'll probably lose her job.

◆ PRACTICE 15, p. 218.
1. passes
2. doesn't pass
3. passes
4. passes
5. doesn't pass
6. passes
7. doesn't pass
8. doesn't pass
9. must/has to pass
10. had better (must/has to) pass

1. C
2. A
3. C
4. C
5. A
6. C
7. C
8. B
9. D
10. A
11. B
12. C
13. B

◆ PRACTICE 17. Test B, p. 221.
1. B
2. A
3. D
4. B
5. C
6. D
7. C
8. C
9. C
10. B
11. C
12. B
13. B

Chapter 20: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES

◆ PRACTICE 1, p. 223.
1. were ... would take
2. would accept ... were
3. will explode/explodes ... throw
4. were ... would call ... (would) talk
5. is ... will be canceled
6. consisted ... would be

◆ PRACTICE 2, p. 223.
1. had told ... would have given
2. wouldn't have gotten/got ... had remembered
3. had known ... wouldn't have voted
4. would have gotten/got ... had used
5. had written . . . wouldn’t have lost
6. would you have taken . . . had known

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 224.
1. had . . . wouldn’t have to
2. Would people be . . . had
3. send . . . will arrive
4. had brought . . . wouldn’t have had
5. felt . . . would drop
6. have . . . will always rise . . . flood or; always rises . . . floods
7. discover . . . will call
8. had known . . . would have stayed up . . . (would have) finished

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 225.
1. If I hadn’t been sick yesterday, I would have gone to class.
2. If Alan ate breakfast, he wouldn’t overeat at lunch.
3. Kostas wouldn’t have been late to his own wedding if his watch hadn’t been slow.
4. I would ride the bus to work every morning if it weren’t always so crowded.
5. If Sara had known that highway 57 was closed, she would have taken an alternative route.
6. Camille could have finished unloading the truck if someone had been there to help her.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 225.
1. weren’t raining . . . would finish
2. had eaten . . . wouldn’t be
3. hadn’t left . . . would have
4. would have answered . . . hadn’t been studying
5. hadn’t been shining . . . wouldn’t have gone
6. wouldn’t ache . . . hadn’t played
7. wouldn’t stop . . . weren’t running
8. had eaten . . . wouldn’t have to have
9. hadn’t been playing . . . would have heard
10. weren’t closing . . . wouldn’t have to leave

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 226.
1. If the wind weren’t blowing hard, I would take the boat out for a ride.
2. I wouldn’t feel better now if you hadn’t talked to me about my problems last night.
3. If Ann hadn’t carried heavy furniture when she helped her friend move, her back wouldn’t hurt now.
4. If Paulo weren’t working on two jobs right now, he would have time to help you with your remodeling.
5. If I hadn been working at the restaurant last night, I would have waited on your table.
6. If Diane hadn’t asked questions every time she didn’t understand a problem, she wouldn’t have a good understanding of geometry now.
7. If a fallen tree hadn’t been blocking the road, we would have arrived on time.
8. Rita wouldn’t be exhausted today if she had gotten some sleep last night.
9. If Olga and Ivan had been paying attention, they would have seen the sign marking their exit from the highway.
10. If the doctor really cared about his patients, he would have explained the medical procedure to me before surgery.

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 227.
1. Should you need
2. Were I you
3. Had I been offered
4. Should anyone call
5. Were I
6. had they known
7. were she
8. Had I not opened

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 227.
1. Were I your age, I’d do things differently.
2. Should Bob show up while I’m away, please give him my message.
3. Had my uncle stood up to sing, I’d have been embarrassed.
4. Were she ever in trouble, I’d do anything I could to help her.
5. Should the manager question these figures, have her talk to the bookkeeper.
6. I wouldn’t have known about your new job had I not talked to your mother. [Had and not are not contracted in the omitted-if pattern.]

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 227.
1. . . . I hadn’t forgotten to tell him that she needed a ride.
2. . . . I hadn’t had your help.
3. If I hadn’t opened the door slowly . . .
4. . . . he could have gotten/got time off from work.
5. . . . he had told his boss about the problem.

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 228.

1. D 11. C
2. B 12. A
5. C 15. C
6. A 16. B
7. C 17. B
9. C 19. A
10. D 20. C

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 229.
1. would have . . . hadn’t spent
2. would have been hat . . . hadn’t pulled
3. would have been (also possible: could have been)
4. would think
5. would have done (also possible: could have done)
6. wouldn’t say . . . meant
7. would have graduated (also possible: could have graduated)
8. had been driving fast . . . would have been
9. travels . . . always spends

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 230.
1. were
2. had been made
3. had . . . met
4. were
5. hadn’t heard
6. didn’t have/hadn’t
7. didn't exist
8. had happened
9. were
10. were
11. had stopped
12. had appeared

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 231.
1. were shining
2. had gone
3. had driven
4. could swim
5. would stop
6. had won
7. had gotten
8. hadn't quit
9. were
10. would sing
11. could bring
12. had offered

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 232.
1. had not missed
2. A: would stop  B: were shining
3. had gone . . . could paint
4. hadn't moved . . . had taken
5. would stop
6. hadn't paid
7. A: would hurry  B: would relax
8. hadn't invited
9. B: hadn't been elected  A: hadn't voted
10. A: could buy  B: grew
11. A: weren't . . . were  B: were . . . were
12. A: would meet  B: disagreed . . . could prove
13. had cold
14. would go

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 233.
1. had been run
2. would look
3. had had
4. hadn't been driving
5. wouldn't have slid
6. "step on the gas" = accelerate the car
7. hadn't taken
8. wouldn't have lost
9. hadn't lost
10. would have had
11. had had
12. wouldn't have to pay
13. hadn't been driving
14. wouldn't have run into
15. wouldn't be
16. were/was
17. would take
18. stay
19. would stay
20. weren't/wasn't
21. could go
22. I'll fly
23. I'll take
24. could drive
25. would be

1. B 11. C
2. C 12. B
5. C 15. D
7. D 17. D
10. A 20. A

1. D 11. D
2. D 12. B
3. A 13. D
5. B 15. B
6. A 16. A
7. D 17. B
8. B 18. D
10. C 20. A

Appendix: SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR UNITS


s v o
1. Airplanes have wings.

s v o
2. The teacher explained the problem.

s v o
3. Children enjoy games.

s v o

s v o
5. Some animals eat plants. Some animals eat other animals.

s v o
6. According to an experienced waitress, you can carry full cups of coffee without spilling them just by never looking at them.


vi
1. Alice arrived at six o'clock.

vt
2. We drank some tea.

vi
3. I agree with you.

vi
4. I waited for Sam at the airport for two hours.
5. They’re staying at a resort hotel in San Antonio, Texas.

6. Chanchai is studying English.

7. The wind is blowing hard today.

8. I walked to the theater, but Janice rode her bicycle.


10. Rivers flow toward the sea.

1. Jim came to class without his books.
2. We stayed at home during the storm.
3. Sonya walked across the bridge over the Cedar River.
4. When Alex walked through the door, his little sister ran toward him and put her arms around his neck.
5. The two of us need to talk to Tom, too.
6. Animals live in all parts of the world. Animals walk or crawl on land, fly in the air, and swim in the water.
7. Scientists divide living things into two main groups: the animal kingdom and the plant kingdom.
8. Asia extends from the Pacific Ocean in the east to Africa and Europe in the west.

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. A2.
1. Jack put the letter in the mailbox.
2. The children walked to school.
3. Mary did her homework at the library.
4. Chinese printers created the first paper money in the world.
5. Dark clouds appeared on the horizon.
6. Mary filled the shelves of the cabinet with boxes of old books.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. A2.
1. Jack opened the heavy door slowly.
2. Chinese jewelers carved beautiful ornaments from jade.

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. A3.
1. quickly 9. well
2. quick 10. good
3. polite 11. gentle
4. politely 12. gently
5. regularly 13. annually
6. regular 14. annual
7. usual 15. bad
8. usually 16. badly

1. Sue always takes a walk in the morning.
2. Tim is always a hard worker.
3. Beth has always worked hard.
5. Do you always work hard?
6. Taxis are usually available . . . .
7. Youssef rarely takes a taxi . . . .
8. I have often thought about . . . .
9. Yuko probably needs some help.
10. Have you ever attended the show . . . ?
11. Al seldom goes out.
12. The students are hardly ever late.
13. Do you usually finish your . . . ?
14. In India, the monsoon season generally begins in April.
15. . . . Mr. Singh’s hometown usually receives around . . . .

1. Ø (no linking verb in the sentence)
2. looked fresh
3. Ø
4. Ø
5. tasted good
6. grew quiet
7. Ø
8. Ø
9. Ø
10. smells delicious
11. Ø
12. got sleepy
13. became rough
14. Ø
15. Ø
16. sounded happy
17. turns hot

ANSWER KEY Appendix: Supplementary Grammar Units 35
L. VERB + ADJ
18. Ø
19. Ø
20. appears certain
21. seems strange

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. A5.
1. clean 9. well
2. slowly 10. fair
3. safely 11. terrible
4. anxious 12. good
5. complete 13. light
6. wildly 14. confidently
7. honest 15. famous
8. thoughtfully 16. fine


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Auxiliary word</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main verb</th>
<th>Rest of question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1a. Ø</td>
<td>Can</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1b. Where</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>Bob</td>
<td>live Ø</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1c. Who</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>live there</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a. Ø</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Don</td>
<td>living</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2b. Where</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Don</td>
<td>living Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2c. Who</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>living there</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3a. Ø</td>
<td>Does</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3b. Where</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>live Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3c. Who</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>lives there</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4a. Ø</td>
<td>Will</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4b. Where</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>Ann</td>
<td>live Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4c. Who</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>live there</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5a. Ø</td>
<td>Did</td>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>live</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5b. Where</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>Jack</td>
<td>live Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5c. Who</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>lived there</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6a. Ø</td>
<td>Has</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>lived</td>
<td>there?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6b. Where</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>Mary</td>
<td>lived Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6c. Who</td>
<td>has</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>lived there</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When are you going to the zoo?
2. Are you going downtown later today?
3. Do you live in an apartment?
4. Where does Sue live?
5. Who lives in that house?
6. Can you speak French?
7. Who can speak Arabic?
8. When did Olya arrive?
9. Who arrived late?
10. What is Ann opening?
11. What is Ann doing?
12. What did Mary open?
13. Who opened the door?
14. Has the mail arrived?
15. Do you have a bicycle?
16. What does Alex have in his hand?
17. Do you like ice cream?
18. Would you like an ice cream cone?
19. What would Joe like?
20. Who would like a soft drink?

1. How long has Pierre been living here?
2. Which (city) is farther north, London or Paris?
3. Whose is it?
4. What have you been doing?
5. Who answered the phone?
6. How do they plow their fields?
7. How long have you had it?
8. What kind of bird is that?
9. Why were you late for work this morning? (OR: How come you were late for work this morning?)
10. How long did it take you?
11. What time/When did he finally get home?
12. How do you take it?
13. What is the population of the United States?
14. Which (coat/one) do you like better, the red one or the black one?
15. How did you get there?
16. Who(m) should I address it to? (formal: To whom should I address it?)
17. How far (How many miles) is it from here to Los Angeles?
18. Who is going to be at the meeting tonight?
19. How often (How many times a week) do people in your country have rice?
20. Where did you get that silly looking hat?
21. What does “apologize” mean?
22. How many edges are there on a cube? . . . . How many edges are there on a pyramid?
23. What does he look like?
24. What is she like?

1. How do you take your coffee?
2. What kind of dictionary do you have? (have you/have you got?)
3. What does he do for a living?
4. Who was Margaret talking to? (to whom was Margaret talking?)
5. How many people showed up for the meeting?
6. Why could none of the planes take off?
7. What was she thinking about? (About what was she thinking?)
8. How fast/How many miles per hour (OR: an hour) were you driving when the policeman stopped you?
9. What kind of food do you like best?
10. Which apartment is yours/Where is your apartment?
11. What is Oscar like? (also possible: What kind of person/man is Oscar?)
12. What does Oscar look like?
13. Whose dictionary fell to the floor?
14. Why isn’t Abby here?
15. When will all of the students in the class be informed of their final grades?
16. How do you feel?
17. Which book did you prefer?
18. What kind of music do you like?
19. How late is the plane expected to be?
20. Why did the driver of the stalled car light a flare?
21. Which pen do you want?
22. What’s the weather like in July?
23. How do you like your steak?
24. How did you do on the test?
25. How many seconds are there in a year?

1. How much money do you need?
2. Where was Roberto born? / In what country/city was . . .? / What country/city was Roberto born in?
3. How often do you go out to eat?
4. Who(m) are you waiting for? (very formal and seldom used: For whom are you waiting?)
5. Who answered the phone?
6. Who(m) did you call?
7. Who called?
8. How much gas / How many gallons of gas did she buy?
9. What does “deceitful” mean?
10. What is an abyss?
11. Which way did he go?
12. Whose books and papers are these?
13. How many children do they have? [British or regional American: How many children have they?]
14. How long has he been here?
15. How far is it? / How many miles is it to New Orleans? [“New Orleans” has at least two commonly used pronunciations. Whatever pronunciation your students are familiar with is correct.]
16. When / At what time can the doctor see me?
17. Who is her roommate?
18. Who are her roommates?
19. How long / How many years have your parents been living there?
20. Whose book is this?
21. Who’s coming over for dinner?
22. What color is Ann’s dress?
23. What color are Ann’s eyes?
24. Who can’t go . . . ?
25. Why can’t Bob go? / How come Bob can’t go?
26. Why didn’t you? / How come you didn’t answer . . . ? (formal and rare: Why did you not answer the phone?)
27. What kind of music do you like?
28. What don’t you understand?
29. What is Janet doing right now?
30. How do you spell “sitting”? [you = impersonal pronoun]
31. What does Tom look like?
32. What is Tom like?
33. What does Ron do (for a living)?
34. How far / How many miles is Mexico from here?
35. How do you take / like your coffee?
36. Which (city) is farther north, Stockholm or Moscow? / Of Stockholm and Moscow, which (city / one) is farther north?
37. How are you getting along?

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. A12.
1. Haven’t you seen . . . ? No.
2. Don’t you feel . . . ? No.
3. Wasn’t he . . . ? No.
4. Didn’t Mary tell . . . ? No.
5. Don’t Janet and you work . . . ? Yes.
6. Isn’t that . . . ? Yes.
7. Wasn’t she . . . ? No.
8. Isn’t she . . . ? Yes.

1. don’t you
2. have you
3. didn’t she
4. aren’t there
5. have you
6. don’t you (also possible but less common: haven’t you)
7. won’t you
8. doesn’t he
9. shouldn’t we
10. can they
11. are they
12. isn’t it
13. did they
14. aren’t I / am I not
15. isn’t it

1. He’s
2. Ø
3. He’s
4. Ø
5. She’d
6. Ø
7. She’d
8. Ø
9. We’ll
10. They’re
11. It’s
12. It’s
13. Ø
14. Ø
15. We’re
16. Ø
17. She’s
18. She’d
19. She’d . . . we’d
20. Ø . . . he’d

◊ PRACTICE 18, p. A14.
1. I don’t have any problems. I have no problems.
2. There wasn’t any food on the shelf. There was no food on the shelf.
3. I didn’t receive any letters from home. I received no letters from home.
4. I don’t need any help. I need no help.
5. We don’t have any time to waste. We have no time to waste.
6. You shouldn’t have given the beggar any money. You should have given the beggar no money.
7. I don’t trust anyone. I trust no one/no-one.
8. I didn’t see anyone. I saw no one/no-one.
9. There wasn’t anyone in his room. There was no one/no-one in his room.
10. She can’t find anybody who knows about it. She can find nobody who knows about it.

◊ PRACTICE 19, p. A15.
1. We have no time to waste. OR: We don’t have any time to waste.
2. I didn’t have any problems. OR: I had no problems.
3. I can’t do anything about it. OR: I can do nothing about it.
4. You can hardly ever understand her when she speaks.
5. I know neither Ann nor her husband. OR: I don’t know either Ann or her husband.
6. Don’t ever drink water from . . . . OR: Never drink water from . . . .
7. . . . I could barely hear the speaker.

◊ PRACTICE 20, p. A15.
1. Hardly had I stepped out of bed . . . .
2. Never will I say that again.
3. Sarcely ever have I enjoyed myself more . . . .
4. Rarely does she make a mistake.
5. Never will I trust him again because . . . .
6. Hardly ever is it possible to get . . . .
7. Seldom do I skip breakfast.
8. Never have I known a more . . . .

◊ PRACTICE 21, p. A15.
1. for 6. to 11. to
2. about 7. of 12. of
3. of 8. to 13. for
4. with 9. for 14. of
5. from 10. to 15. with

◊ PRACTICE 22, p. A16.
1. in 9. to . . . for
2. for 10. about
3. in 11. from
4. from 12. of
5. to 13. with
6. for 14. with . . . about
7. with 15. to
8. to . . . to

1. of 6. of 11. from
2. of 7. to 12. in
3. of 8. for 13. with
4. for 9. (up)on 14. with
5. to 10. from 15. in

◊ PRACTICE 24, p. A17.
1. of 6. with 11. from
2. to 7. to 12. in
3. with 8. for 13. about
4. with 9. to 14. to
5. in 10. from 15. from

1. for 7. with 12. from
2. at 8. (up)on . . . 13. with . .
3. for (up)on 14. about
4. to 9. for 15. with
5. in 10. about 16. from
6. of 11. with

1. from 6. with 11. of
2. of 7. for 12. from
3. to 8. for 13. to
4. with 9. in . . . at 14. with
5. to . . . for 10. to 15. with . . . of

Special Workbook Section: PHRASAL VERBS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. A22.
1. up
2. away/out
3. out/off
4. up
5. off [A “raincheck” is a ticket that admits you to the theater another time without additional payment.]
6. up
7. out [from a library; “I.D.” is an abbreviation for identification card.]
8. about
9. up
10. back . . . out of

1. in
2. on . . . off
3. back
4. in/by (also possible: over)
5. out
6. out
7. up
8. up . . . away/out
9. out . . back [Note: One “fills out” a large item such as an application form, but “fills in” a small space such as a blank in an exercise. Also: “fill up” (British) = “fill in” (American.)]
10. up [“catch up with him” (American) = “catch him up” (British)]]
11. on
12. out

38 ANSWER KEY Phrasal Verbs
1. up
2. in ... over
3. up
4. after/for
5. up
6. out
7. up
8. down
9. up
10. out

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. A25.
1. out/around
2. in/into...
3. along
4. off
5. after
6. in
7. off
8. up
9. out
10. over

1. through [ = finish a task]
2. up
3. out ["got dizzy" = had a whirling sensation in the head; revive = return to normal breathing; "out cold" = unconscious, in a faint]
4. over ["passed out" = fainted, became suddenly unconscious]
5. up
6. out [ = make a line through it with pen or pencil]
7. back
8. on
9. on ... off
10. into ... out
11. on ... off
12. on ... off

1. on/up
2. over ... in ... over
3. up
4. up
5. away/on
6. on
7. over
8. out
9. out of
10. off ... in
11. up
12. about ... along with

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. A27
1. into
2. off
3. on
4. back [They are talking on the telephone.]
5. out
6. out ... across/upon
7. up
8. into ... out
9. up
10. on/off/out

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. A29.
1. after
2. out
3. up ... out
4. up [ = get ill or sick]
5. up
6. in [ = into his office for an appointment]
7. out/into
8. down
9. out ["crash a party" = come without being invited, an impolite act]
10. away
UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR – WORKBOOK
Third Edition
Betty Schrampfer Azar

*Understanding and Using English Grammar* is a classic developmental skills text for students of English as a second or foreign language.

This *Workbook* consists solely of self-study exercises, providing students the opportunity to explore and practice grammar independently. It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts in both the *Student Book* and the *Chartbook*.

The components of *UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Third Edition*, are:

**Student Book**, a comprehensive reference grammar and classroom teaching text

**Answer Key**, with answers to the exercises in the *Student Book*
   - ISBN 0-13-020552-4

**Workbook**, an independent study text, with all answers included

**Chartbook**, a reference text consisting only of the grammar charts

**Teacher’s Guide**, with teaching suggestions, grammar notes, and answers

Pearson Education